

МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ  
ХАРКІВСЬКИЙ НАЦІОНАЛЬНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ  
імені В. Н. Каразіна

# **АНГЛІЙСЬКА МОВА**

Підручник для студентів  
першого та другого курсів факультетів іноземних мов

Харків – 2016

УДК 811.111(076.5)  
ББК 81.2 Англ-923  
А 64

**Рецензенти:**

**Л. В. Герман** – кандидат філологічних наук, професор, завідувач кафедри іноземних мов Харківського національного аграрного університету імені В. В. Докучаєва;  
**І. Ю. Скрипнік** – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри методики та практики викладання іноземної мови Харківського національного університету імені В. Н. Каразіна.

*Рекомендовано до друку Вченою радою  
Харківського національного університету імені В. Н. Каразіна  
( протокол № ...від ...09.2015 р.)*

А 64 Англійська мова : підручник для студентів першого та другого курсів факультетів іноземних мов / М. В. Рябих, А. В. Дудолодова, О. І. Гридасова. – Х. : ХНУ імені В. Н. Каразіна, 2016. – 272 с.

Підручник призначений для формування граматичної та лексичної компетенції у студентів першого та другого курсів факультетів іноземних мов заочної форми навчання. Посібник створено у відповідності до Робочої програми навчання.

**УДК 811.111(076.5)**  
**ББК 81.2 Англ-923**

© Харківський національний університет імені В. Н. Каразіна, 2016  
© Гридасова О. І., Дудолодова А. В.,  
Рябих М. В., 2016  
© Дончик І. М., макет обкладинки, 2016

## ЗМІСТ

Lesson 1..... Text: A letter to a friend Grammar: 1) Спонукальні речення (усі особи) 2) Поняття про додаток, означення
Lesson 2..... Text: Meals Grammar: 1) Поняття про інфінітив 2) Загальні відомості про побудову англійського речення 3) The Present Indefinite
Lesson 3..... Text: Pros and cons of social networking sites Grammar: 1) Поняття про артикль. Головні значення артикля 2) The Present Continuous 3) Participle 1
Lesson 4..... Text: British Holidays Grammar: 1) Займенник (особовий, вказівний) 2) Множина іменника 3) Конструкція <i>there/ to be</i>
Lesson 5..... Text: A visit to the dentist Grammar: 1) The Past Indefinite 2) Прийменник (місця, напряму, часу (основні))
Lesson 6..... Text: Free time activities Grammar: 1) The Future Indefinite 2) Придаточне часу та умови 3) Займенник (присвійний) 4) Присвійний відмінок іменника
Lesson 7..... Text: University friends Grammar: 1) The Past Continuous / The Future Continuous 2) Поняття про прикметник і прислівник 3) Поняття про числівник 4) Займенник (невизначений)
Lesson 8..... Text: Books Grammar: 1) The Present Perfect/ The Present Perfect Continuous 2) Абсолютна форма присвійного займенника

Lesson 9.....
Text: The importance of foreign language study
Grammar: 1) Модальні дієслова (can, may, must, should) 2) Напівмодальні дієслова ( have, need)
Lesson 10.....
Text: Great Britain
Grammar: 1) The Past Perfect 2) Ступені порівняння прийменників та прислівників
Lesson 11.....
Text: The climate of Great Britain
Grammar: 1) The Future Perfect / The Future Perfect Continuous 2) Питально-негативні речення. Расчлененні питання
Lesson 12.....
Text: London
Grammar: 1) The Passive voice 2) Прохання та наказ у непрякій мові
Lesson 13.....
Text: British royal family
Grammar: 1) Безособові речення 2) Артикль з власними іменами
Lesson 14.....
Text: Family
Grammar: 1) Конструкція «складне доповнення» 2) Артикль (з речовими та абстрактними іменниками)
Lesson 15.....
Text: Manners and etiquettes are key to success
Grammar: 1) Дієприкметникові звороти (Participle 1, 2) 2) Сполучники all, both, either... or, neither ... nor
Lesson 16.....
Text: Sports
Grammar: 1) The Gerund (основні поняття)
Lesson 17.....
Text: Education in the United Kingdom
Grammar: 1) Revision
Grammar commentary.....
Bibliography .....

# LESSON 1

Text: A Letter to a Friend

Grammar: 1. Imperative Sentences

2. The Object, The Attribute

## A LETTER TO A FRIEND

Dear John,

Thank you very much for your **letter**! I'm always very glad to **hear from** you. Please, **send** me some pictures of London on a fine summer day, because I like this city very much. Tell your **wife** Bess "Hello!" for me. I **enjoy** her wonderful **present** – a grey-and-brown **tie** – and I **wear** it almost every day. Don't send me any more pictures of your flat or garden. Find me, **instead**, a **nice map** of London where I can see names of the city streets.

Now **let me** tell you about my life and study. I **take lessons** of English every day and I learn a lot of new words. My English teacher often tells me: "**Repeat** after me! Copy out the words! Do this exercise at home! Read Text 5! Close your book! Don't look through the window, **look at** the blackboard! Write down these nine long sentences!" etc.

I read many English books, journals and magazines and I copy out new words into my vocabulary. I also like to read **interesting** stories in English with unexpected endings. Then I retell these stories to my teacher and we have **regular** discussions. I study in a group with five more students whose native language is not English.

You learn a foreign language, too, and this is a long, but very interesting process. Don't let your wife help you with difficult texts, but let her study with you! Although your **relatives** can help you – just let them **take part** and **be proud of** you.

Let me thank you once again for your present – a book in English and a yellow brief-case. If you have time, **visit** Ukraine at any **season**! It is a beautiful and **friendly** country, so don't **waste** your time and buy a ticket **as soon as possible**. Don't you think Ukraine and Great Britain **have much in common**? Let's meet in October, **shall we**? **Let it be** a marvelous autumn **holiday**!

Best wishes,  
Victor

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

hear from, a picture of, on a fine summer day, tell “Hello!”, present, tie, instead, map, lessons of English, repeat after, copy out, look through, a long and interesting process, relatives, take part, be proud of, brief-case, season, a friendly country, waste time, ticket, holiday, have much in common

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words and word combinations from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the essential vocabulary.**

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Send** (verb) *past tense and past participle sent* [transitive] 1) to arrange for something to go or be taken to another place, especially by post: e. g. *Jane sent some pictures from the wedding. Monday is the last day to send cards by post to arrive by Christmas.* 2) to make someone or something start to be in a particular state: e. g. *His lectures always send me to sleep.*

Phrases with “send”:

**Send somebody something** – e. g. *We sent Mom flowers for Mother's Day.*

**Send something to somebody/something** – e. g. *I'll send a copy to you.*

**Send something by post/sea/air, etc** e. g. *Most companies send their products worldwide by sea.*

**Send your love/regards/best wishes etc** – to ask someone to give your greetings, good wishes etc to someone else: e. g. *Mother sends her love.*

**Send shivers/chills up (and down) your spine** – to make you feel very frightened or excited: e. g. *The eerie howl of the siren sent chills up her spine.*

**Send for** – to ask or tell someone to come to you by sending them a message: e. g. *Get back into bed. I'll send for the doctor.*

**Send something on** (*phrasal verb*) – to send someone's letters or possessions to their new address from their old address: e. g. *My former flatmate said she'd send on all my post.*

**2. Let** (verb) *past tense and past participle let* [transitive not in passive]

1) to allow someone to do something: *e. g. I can't come out tonight – my dad won't let me;* 2) to not stop something happening, or to make it possible for it to happen: *e. g. Jenny let the note fall to the ground. Don't let anyone know it was me who told you. Let the cookies cool down before you try them;* 3) suggest or offer, used to make a suggestion or to offer help: *e. g. Let's do something. Let's make a start, shall we? Let's all get together over Christmas. Let's not jump to conclusions. He might have been delayed.*

**Let somebody do something** *e. g. Some people seem to let their kids do whatever they like.*

**NB!** The verb “let” has no passive form. Use the active form, or use “be allowed to do”: *e. g. They let me leave OR I was allowed to leave.*

**Let go** – to stop holding something or someone: *e. g. Let go! You're hurting me.*

**Let alone** – used after a negative statement to say that the next thing you mention is even more unlikely: *e. g. The baby can't even sit up yet, let alone walk!*

**3. Nice** (adjective) 1) good, pleasant, attractive, or enjoyable: *e. g. It's such a nice day (= good weather), why not go for a swim? What a nice surprise!* 2) friendly, kind, or polite: *e. g. Dave's a really nice guy. That's not a very nice thing to say about your sister!*

**Look/taste/smell nice** – *e. g. You look nice in that suit. Mm, something smells nice!*

**Nice and warm/clean/easy/quiet etc** – *e. g. The house seemed nice and tidy. One of the nice things about Christmas is having all the family together.*

**NB!** You can use “nice and” followed by another adjective after be: *e. g. The weather was nice and warm.* But before a noun you must leave out ‘and’: *e. g. a nice hot (NOT nice and hot) drink.*

**Nice about** – *e. g. Tim spilt wine all over the sofa, but Martha was very nice about it.*

**Nice to** – *e. g. They were very nice to me while I was ill.*

**It is nice of somebody (to do something)** – *e. g. It was nice of you to help.*

**Nice try** (*spoken*) – used when someone has made a guess or suggestion, or has attempted to do something, to say that it is good, but not quite correct or successful: *e. g. 'We could phone Mark to come and pick us up.' 'Nice try, Clive, but we haven't got his number.'*

**Be (as) nice as pie** (*BE*) – if someone is as nice as pie, they are not angry with you when you were expecting them to be.

**Nice** *n* – a city on the Mediterranean coast of France. It is a fashionable place for tourists to stay, and also a port and industrial area.

**4. Look** (verb) [*intransitive*] 1) see, to turn your eyes towards something, so that you can see it: *e. g. If you look carefully you can see that the painting*

*represents a human figure. Gina covered her eyes, afraid to look; 2) to have a particular appearance: e. g. How do I look?*

**Look at** – e. g. *'It's time we left,' Ian said, looking at his watch.*

**Look for** – e. g. *Could you help me look for my contact lens?*

**Look good/bad etc** – *The future's looking good.*

**Look tired/happy/sad etc** – e. g. *You look tired. You should go to bed.*

**Look daggers at somebody** – to look at someone with a very angry expression on your face – e. g. *After his questions she looked daggers at him.*

**Look somebody up and down** – to look at someone carefully from their head to their feet, as if you were forming an opinion about them – e. g. *I felt uneasy when they looked me up and down.*

**Look before you leap** – used to say that it is sensible to think about possible dangers or difficulties of something before doing it – e. g. *Are you sure you want to do it? Look before you leap!*

**Look out!** – used to warn someone that they are in danger [= watch out]: e. g. *Look out! There's a car coming.*

**Look down on somebody/something** (*phrasal verb*) to think that you are better than someone else, for example because you are more successful, or of a higher social class than they are: e. g. *Mr Garcia looks down on anyone who hasn't had a college education.*

**Look forward to something** (*phrasal verb*) to be excited and pleased about something that is going to happen: e. g. *I'm really looking forward to our vacation.*

**Look forward to doing something** – e. g. *My mother says she's looking forward to meeting you.*

**Look something up** – if you look up information in a book, on a computer etc, you try to find it there: e. g. *Look the word up in your dictionary.*

5. **Waste** (verb) [transitive] 1) to use more money, time, energy etc than is useful or sensible: e. g. *Leaving the heating on all the time wastes electricity;* 2) to not make full use of someone or something: e. g. *His talents were being wasted as a lawyer.*

**Waste something on somebody/something** – e. g. *Don't waste your money on that junk!*

**Waste no time (in) doing something** – to do something as quickly as you can because it will help you: e. g. *He wasted no time in introducing himself.*

**Waste not, want not** – used to say that if you use what you have carefully, you will still have some of it if you need it later – e. g. *Could you lend me some money? – You should be careful about it. Waste not, want not!*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**Instead of** (adv) used to say what is not used, does not happen etc, when something else is used, happens etc: e. g. *You probably picked up my keys*



*instead of yours. Could I have tuna instead of ham? Instead of being annoyed, he seemed quite pleased.*

**Take part in smth** to be involved in an activity, sport, event etc with other people: *e. g. About 400 students took part in the protest. She wanted to take part but she was too ill.*

**On a fine day** bright and not raining: *e. g. She first met Steve on a cold but fine day in March.*

**A map of London** a drawing of a particular area for example a city or country, which shows its main features, such as its roads, rivers, mountains etc: *e. g. Let me show you how to get there on the map. On the back wall of the office hangs a schoolroom map of the continental United States.*

**As soon as possible** quickly: *e. g. Try and get the car fixed as soon as possible.*

**Have much in common** 1) to have the same interests, attitudes etc as someone else: *e. g. I found I had a lot in common with these people. They were four women with almost nothing in common;* 2) if objects or ideas have something in common, they share the same features: *e. g. The two games have much in common.*

**Once again** again, after happening several times before: *e. g. I looked at myself in the mirror once more. Once again she's refusing to help.*

**Best wishes** used at the end of a letter before you sign your name: *e. g. With best wishes, Celia.*

**Take a lesson** to be taught a particular skill, for example how to play a musical instrument or drive a car: *e. g. She's started taking driving lessons. Take a few lessons of French before your trip.*

**A book (in English / by smb / on a subject)** a set of printed pages that are held together in a cover so that you can read them: *e. g. I've just started reading a book by Graham Greene. It was an old cookery book. Do you have any books on astronomy? She wrote a book of short stories, but it never got published.*

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. I **send** her an email everyday. 2. I can't afford to **send** my kid to private school. 3. All the publicity nearly **sent** him crazy. 4. Her account of the visit **sent** us into fits of laughter. 5. **Send** a cheque for £ 50 with your order. 6. He **sent** a dozen red roses to his girlfriend on her birthday. 7. How many Christmas cards did you **send**? 8. **Let** me have a look at that letter. 9. He asked them to **let** him build a bigger store. 10. Sue doesn't **let** her kids eat candy. 11. Don't **let** go of the rope. 12. The thieves **let** go of the girl and disappeared. 13. I wouldn't work with my mom, **let alone** my whole family. 14. Claire's really **nice**, isn't she? 15. Come over on Saturday. It will be **nice** to see you. 16. He had a lot of **nice** things to say about you. 17. I've got a **nice** boss, and the pay's good. 18. I got a **nice** long letter from Andreas this morning. 19. I want a **nice** hot

shower. 20. It's **nice** to know you can get help. 21. "We can't go out in this weather," said Bob, **looking** out of the window. 22. **Look** at me when I'm talking to you. 23. **Look**, I'm very serious about this. 24. Do these jeans make me **look** fat? 25. Doesn't she **look** beautiful! 26. It **looks** as if we are going to need more help. 27. That coat **looks** nice and warm. Where did you get it? 28. He took his seat in coach, and after an hour or so began to **look** for them. 29. What did the man **look** like? 30. She **looks** down on people who haven't been to the theatre. 31. Her good advice was **wasted** on the children. 32. I **wasted** 40 minutes waiting for a bus this morning. 33. Let's not **waste** any more time on this. 34. Stop **wasting** time. We have to finish this by five o'clock. 35. I felt enough time had been **wasted**, but time didn't seem to mean anything to Brando.

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. Mr Ellison is here. Shall I send him in? 2. Jane sends her love. 3. Kristen sent some pictures from the party. 4. Perhaps I should send him a note of apology. 5. She sent him a furious email. 6. Who sent you? 7. Let Johnny have a go on the computer now. 8. Jenny let the note fall to the ground. 9. Let your brother have the remote control for a while. 10. I can let you have both chairs for \$ 75. 11. Let me give you a piece of advice. 12. Don't let's argue like this. 13. I doubt he would have given one of his grandparents a point that morning, let alone me. 14. They've got a very nice house. 15. Did you have a nice time? 16. I sometimes think she's only nice to me when she wants something. 17. It was nice of them to invite us. 18. Morning, Bill. Nice weather, isn't it? 19. "Come on, it's time to go," he said, looking at his watch. 20. "You were a hippie?" she asked, looking at her father in disbelief. 21. I've looked everywhere, but I can't find my gloves. 22. If you look closely, you can see ducks at the edge of the lake. 23. The teacher stopped and looked around to see if there were any questions. 24. Tom looked out the window over the dry landscape. 25. He was also looking for ways to satisfy the recurrent Treasury demands for economy. 26. It looks dumb now, and it will look a lot dumber later. 27. New buildings look good, but often money is better spent on people. 28. My sister doesn't look anything like me. 29. Don't try to reason with Paul – you're wasting your breath. 30. Letting the water run while you brush your teeth wastes water. 31. Back in the United States, Alvin wasted no time in proposing ways of doing that on future modern dance tours. 32. Don't waste your sympathy on him – he got what he deserved. 33. Her comments were not wasted on Chris.

**Exercise 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. He asked the children to go out of the room so we could talk. 2. He travelled all over the world, but decided to arrange for his son to go to school in England.

3. There are no plans to order British troops to go to the area. 4. I can't afford to arrange for my kid to go to private school. 5. He was put to prison for five years. 6. Find a doctor, quickly! 7. They arranged for the information to be delivered on to us. 8. Max swung the door open. 9. The police had to allow him to go through lack of evidence. 10. Shall we make a start? 11. Maybe we can all get together over Christmas. 12. What was his name, now? Give me some time to think. 13. It's time to forget the past. 14. Many thousands of children had never seen, or even owned a pair of shoes. 15. Feel this material. It's so pleasant and soft. 16. I hope you have a great vacation. 17. It's the kind of place good people don't go to. 18. Dave's a really friendly guy. 19. That's not a very polite thing to say about your sister! 20. Hey, there are some swans on the river. 21. Did you search under the bed? 22. She's really pretty – she resembles a model. 23. That book seems interesting. 24. He doesn't like anyone foreign. 25. Bill throws away all his money on beer and cigarettes. 26. Sometimes she feels she's not lived her life. 27. The school kitchen spoils an awful lot of food. 28. She didn't spend much time before writing to me and commanding me to return home at once. 29. You actually hope the time and money spent on insurance will be useless. 30. It's a shame not to use so much food!

**Exercise 10. Find English equivalents for the following.**

Дякувати за; завжди радий; отримати звістку від; надсилати фотографії; фотокартки із зображенням чогось; гарного літнього дня; насолоджуватися; чудовий подарунок; сіро-коричнева краватка; носити; садок; квартира; замість чогось; гарна мапа; назви вулиць; дозволь мені; навчання; брати уроки англійської; багато нових слів; вчитель англійської; повторювати за кимось; виписувати слова; вдома; п'ятий текст; записувати речення; і так далі; складний текст; хоча; родичі; допомагати; брати участь; пишатися кимось; книга англійською; жовтий портфель; відвідувати; пора року; гарна та приязна країна; марнувати час; квиток; якомога скоріше; мати багато спільного; чудова осіння відпустка; з найкращими побажаннями.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Why waste money on clothes you don't need? 2. She wasted no time in rejecting the offer. 3. You're wasting your time trying to explain it to him. 4. Don't waste your sympathy on him – he got what he deserved. 5. You're wasted as a sales manager – you should have been an actor. 6. If you look carefully you can just see our house from here. 7. She looked at me and smiled. 8. "Has the mail come yet?" – "I'll look and see." 9. Look! I'm sure that's Hugh Jackman! 10. Don't look now, but there's someone staring at you! 11. I can't find my book – I've looked everywhere. 12. Where have you been? We've been looking for you. 13. His suit makes him look smart. 14. Are you still looking for a job? 15. That

book looks interesting. 16. That looks like an interesting book. 17. You made me look a complete fool! 18. That photograph doesn't look like her at all. 19. It looks like rain. 20. You look very nice. 21. "Do you want to come, too?" "Yes, that would be nice." 22. The nicest thing about her is that she never criticizes us. 23. Nice to meet you! 24. Be nice to me. I'm not feeling well. 25. It was nice of them to invite us. 26. I complained to the manager and he was very nice about it. 27. Don't let her upset you. 28. Let your body relax. 29. He can eat chocolate all day long if I let him. 30. Please let me pass. 31. The cat wants to be let out. 32. "Shall we check it again?" "Yes, let's."

### Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.

1) Дякую тобі за чудові фотокартки із зображенням Лондона! 2) Наш вчитель англійської часто розповідає про Велику Британію. 3) Дозвольте Вам допомогти. – Дуже дякую. 4) Його родичі дуже пишаються ним, коли він розповідає про своє життя і навчання. 5) Я завжди радий отримати від тебе звістку, частіше надсилай мені листи. – Добре. Я напишу тобі якомога скоріше. 6) Не марнуйте часу у цьому гарному та приязному місті, відвідайте ці чудові сади. 7) Я завжди насолоджуюся цим містом у гарний літній день. 8) Вдягай цю сіро-коричневу краватку кожного дня. 9) Не дивися у вікно, а подивися краще на дошку. 10) Запишіть це речення замість цього тексту. 11) Дозволь мені надіслати Джону подарунок. 12) Купи мені два квитки до Лондона якомога скоріше. 13) У наших країн багато спільного. 14) Давайте зустрінемося у садку, добре? 15) Нехай це буде чудова відпустка! 16) Замість краватки пришліть мені добру книгу англійською. 17) Ця країна дуже гарна у будь-яку пору року. 18) Пишайся своїми відомими родичами! 19) Не дозволяй своїм друзям допомагати тобі! 20) Передавай вітання друзям і так далі. 21) Дозволь мені ще раз подякувати за цей чудовий портфель! 22) Дозволь їм брати участь у твоєму житті. 23) Нехай твоє життя буде радісним! З найкращими побажаннями, Віктор.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian paying attention to the form of the verb.

1. **Let** me give you a piece of advice. 2. **Let's meet** the day after tomorrow. 3. **Let's go** out now and eat afterwards. 4. She agreed to **let me go** early. 5. **Let's go** out for some fresh air. 6. There isn't enough room for us, **let alone** any guests. 7. **Let's do** it another time. 8. The room's too small. **Let's see** if they've got another one. 9. Please **let me** know how many people are coming, if any. 10. If you remember anything at all, please **let us know**. 11. Anyway, **let's forget** about that for the moment. 12. **Let's have** a barbecue! 13. **Let** the poor dog be (= don't annoy it). 14. **Let him go**, I beg you! 15. Please, **meet** me

at the railway station. 16. **Let's not** tell anyone about this. 17. **Let's not** go out tonight. 18. **Don't let's** argue (British English). 19. **Don't let** anyone tell you that you don't deserve it. 20. **Let** the water boil before you use it. 21. **Let's** face it, no one's going to lend us any money. 22. **Find** me a new tie, this one is dirty. 23. **Don't** do it now, **do** it at home. 24. It is so kind of you, **let** me thank you once again. 25. **Let it be** a wonderful year for all of us.

**Exercise 2. Put the following sentences into negative form.**

1. Send me some pictures. 2. Enjoy this present. 3. Let them write this down. 4. Let him tell you about his life. 5. Find me a nice map of your city. 6. Close your books. 7. Visit this city. 8. Let's meet in October. 9. Let's help them. 10. Let's find a nice tie for you. 11. Let your holiday be long! 12. Let her take part in your game. 13. Let your relatives close the window. 14. Look at the blackboard. 15. Come up, please. 16. Thank your friend for me. 17. Tell your husband how grateful I am. 18. Take lessons only on Mondays. 19. Buy a ticket in the morning. 20. Open your books now.

**Exercise 3. Make up 5 sentences after the model:**

**Model:** Send/ Jane / pictures of London (us)

1. Send Jane pictures of London.
2. Don't send Jane pictures of London.
3. Let me send Jane pictures of London.
4. Let's send Jane pictures of London.
5. Don't let Jane send us pictures of London.

Thank/Bess/new and interesting text (me); Tell/me/your flat and garden; Copy out/new words; Visit/this country/ in autumn; Find/tie/in this room; Enjoy/holidays/in summer; Open/the window/in that room; Look/at those pictures; Meet/relatives/at the station; Help/Tom/with his home task; Give/my daughter/a pencil; Read/this text/at home; Put/the spoon/in the cup; Look/the blackboard.

**Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps with the following nouns and pronouns:** *map, tickets, blackboard, them, life, present, wife, Great Britain, me, holiday.*

1) Give me a \_\_\_ of London. 2) Let's look at the \_\_\_\_\_. 3) Tell me about your \_\_\_\_\_. 4) Thank you for your \_\_\_\_\_. 5) Don't look at \_\_\_\_\_. 6) Help \_\_\_\_! 7) Let \_\_\_ come in, please. 7. Visit \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as possible! 8) Don't let my \_\_\_ tell you any more funny stories tonight. 9) Go and buy \_\_\_\_\_ for the 7 o'clock train. 10) Let this \_\_\_\_\_ be long and interesting.

**Exercise 5. Fill in the gaps with the following adjectives:** *fine, foreign, marvelous, grey-and-brown, long, wonderful, interesting, beautiful, friendly, difficult, yellow, boring, nice, new, interesting, regular, native.*

1) On a \_\_\_\_\_ summer day London is \_\_\_\_\_. 2) This \_\_\_\_\_ tie doesn't suit me. 3) I enjoy your \_\_\_\_\_ present very much. 4) Let's learn a \_\_\_\_\_ language! 5) Let this process be \_\_\_\_\_, but \_\_\_\_\_. 6) Let Jane translate this \_\_\_\_\_ text. 7) Let's buy this \_\_\_\_\_ brief-case, shall we? 8) This country is \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Buy a ticket today! 9) Let it be a \_\_\_\_\_ summer holiday! 10. I don't like this film, it's \_\_\_\_\_. 11. My friend is going to send a \_\_\_\_\_ map of London. 12. Every day I learn a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ words in English. 13. I like to read \_\_\_\_\_ stories in English with unexpected endings. 14. We have \_\_\_\_\_ discussions with my teacher. 15. Their \_\_\_\_\_ language is not English.

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Давай напишемо твоїм родичам та розповімо їм про твоє навчання, гаразд? 2. Дозвольте мені приміряти цю сукню. 3. Дозволь мені ще раз подякувати тобі за цей чудовий подарунок! 4. Твоя сіро-коричнева краватка лежить у жовтому портфелі. 5. Я займаюся англійською кожного дня і вивчаю багато нових, але складних слів. 6. Не дозволяй їм допомагати тобі! 7. Нехай твоє навчання буде дуже цікавим! 8. А тепер закрийте ваші підручники та подивіться на дошку. 9. Дозволь йому взяти участь у цьому довгому, але цікавому процесі. 10. Мені дуже подобається ця гарна краватка. 11. Давай вийдемо на прогулянку цього чудового літнього дня! 12. Хай про це ніхто не дізнається. 13. Дозвольте дати Вам одну пораду. 14. Давайте не підемо сьогодні у театр. 15. Нехай він сам пригадає моє ім'я.

## LESSON 2

Text: Meals

Grammar: 1. The Infinitive

2. The Present Indefinite

### MEALS

The usual **meals** in Great Britain are much the same as in other countries and **include** breakfast, lunch, tea and dinner. The English are very **choosy** about their meals and **keep** to their meal times strictly. Breakfast time is between 7 and 9 a.m. Many people like to begin it with porridge. English people eat porridge with milk or **cream** and sugar, but the Scots – and Scotland is the home of porridge – never put sugar in it. Then comes **bacon and eggs, marmalade** with toast and tea or coffee. **For a change** you can have a boiled egg, cold ham or perhaps fish, but many Britons may eat this breakfast at weekends or on special **occasions** but **prefer** a smaller and healthier meal to start a day.

The two **substantial** meals of the day, lunch and dinner, are more or less the same. An Englishman or an Englishwoman usually has lunch at one o'clock. Many people, who go out to work, find it difficult to come home for lunch and go to a cafe or a restaurant, but they never **miss** a meal. Lunch is a big meal – meat or fish, potatoes and salad, **puddings, biscuits** or fruit are quite usual for it. If it is impossible for a person to have breakfast early in the morning or lunch later, they can have brunch (this word combines two: breakfast and lunch and means a large mid-morning meal).

In the afternoon, between 4 and 5 o'clock, the British have a cup of tea, the so-called 5 o'clock tea, and a cake, or a **slice** or two of bread and butter. Tea is very **popular with** the English; one even calls it their national drink. The English like it strong and fresh made. In order to make a good cup of tea one usually takes a **teaspoonful** for each person and one for the pot. They drink it with or without sugar, but almost always with milk. It is important to **pour** tea into milk, and not vice versa. Tea is the third meal of the day. It is British "**high tea**" at 5 o'clock which is very famous. Tea usually goes with ham, tomatoes and salad, bread and butter, fruit and cakes, scones and jam. Dinnertime is generally about half past seven or later. They begin with soup, and then have fish, **roast** chicken, potatoes and vegetables, fruit and coffee. But in great many English homes the midday meal is the chief one of the day, and in the evening they only have a light meal, for example, bread and cheese, a cup of coffee or cocoa and fruit.

Dinner is the fourth meal of the day. The usual time is about 7 o'clock, and all the **members** of the family sit down together. Dinner usually consists of

soup, fish or meat with vegetables – potatoes, green beans, carrot and cabbage, sweet pudding, fruit salad, ice-cream or cheese and biscuits.

**Nowadays** foreign foods have are a regular part of the British **diet**. Indian and Chinese dishes are **particularly** popular for evening meals. Take-aways are becoming extremely popular. The traditional British take-away is **fish and chips** which one eats with salt and vinegar.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

usual meals, other countries, choosy, keep meal times strictly, porridge, with milk or cream and sugar, Scotland, marmalade, at weekends or on special occasions, one o'clock, a cafe or a restaurant, miss a meal, brunch, "high tea", teaspoonful, vice versa, chief meal of the day, the fourth meal of the day, sit down together, a regular part of the British diet, take-aways, fish and chips.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words and word combinations from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the essential vocabulary.**

## ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

### Vocabulary notes

**1. Keep** (verb) *past tense and past participle kept* [linking verb, transitive]  
 1) to stay in a particular state, condition, or position, or to make someone or something do this: e. g. *It's hard to keep the house clean with three kids.* 2) to continue doing something or to do the same thing many times (*keep (on) doing something*): e. g. *I keep thinking about Joe, all alone in that place. She pretended not to hear, and kept on walking.* 3) to have something and not give it back to the person who had it before: e. g. *You can keep it. I don't need it any more.* 4) to continue to have something and not lose it or get rid of it: e. g. *We decided to keep our old car instead of selling it. I kept his letters for years.* 5) to leave something



in one particular place so that you can find it easily: e. g. *Where do you keep your tea bags?* 6) to delay someone: e. g. *He should be here by now. What's keeping him?* 7) to do what you have promised or agreed to do (keep your word/ promise): e. g. *How do I know you'll keep your word?* 8) to provide someone with money, food etc: e. g. *He did not earn enough to keep a wife and children.*

Phrases with “keep”:

**Keep (somebody/something) warm/safe/dry etc** – e. g. *We huddled around the fire to keep warm.*

**Keep calm/awake/sane etc** – e. g. *I was struggling to keep awake.*

**Keep something clean/tidy** – e. g. *Keep your room tidy.*

**Keep somebody busy/amused/occupied** – e. g. *Here are some toys to keep the kids amused.*

**Keep (somebody) out of something** – e. g. *Keep him out of trouble. You keep out of this, Mother (=do not get involved). It's no concern of yours. How can I cut your hair if you won't keep still!*

**Keep a secret** (to not tell anyone about a secret that you know): e. g. *Can I trust you to keep a secret?*

**Keep somebody waiting** (to make someone wait before you meet them or see them): e. g. *Sorry to keep you waiting – I got stuck in a meeting.*

**2. Have** (verb) *past tense and past participle had* [transitive] 1) to include or contain something or a particular number of things or people: e. g. *Japan has a population of over 120 million.* 2) be holding something or carrying it with you: e. g. *Have you got a match? Look out! He's got a gun.*

**Have something on/with you** – e. g. *Have you got any money on you? I'm afraid I don't have my address book with me.*

3) to do something (have a look/walk/sleep/talk/swim etc): e. g. *We were just having a look around. Are you going to have a swim?* 4) to eat, drink, or smoke something: e. g. *She sat down and had another drink. Someone had been having a cigarette in the toilet.*

**Have lunch/a meal etc** – e. g. *I usually have breakfast at about seven o'clock.*

**3. Miss** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) to not go somewhere or do something, especially when you want to but cannot: e. g. *I'm absolutely starving – I missed lunch.* 2) to fail to hit or catch an object that is close to you, or to fail to hit a distant object that you are aiming at: e. g. *Every time she missed the ball she became more angry.* 3) to feel sad because someone you love is not with you: e. g. *She missed her family badly. Will you miss me?* 4) to feel sad because you do not have something or cannot do something you had or did before: e. g. *I miss the car, but the bus system is good.*

**Miss doing something** – e. g. *Ben knew he would miss working with Sabrina.*

5) to be too late for something: e. g. *We got there late and missed the beginning of the movie.*

**Miss the train/bus etc** – e. g. *I overslept and missed the train.*

**Miss a chance/opportunity** – to fail to use an opportunity to do something: *e. g. He certainly wasn't going to miss the chance of making some extra money. Don't miss the chance to see the breathtaking Dolomite Mountains.*

6) to not see, hear, or notice something, especially when it is difficult to notice: *e. g. Maeve's sharp eyes missed nothing. It's a huge hotel on the corner.*

*You can't miss it (= it is very easy to notice or recognize).* 7) to avoid something bad or unpleasant: *e. g. If we leave now, we should miss the traffic.*

**I wouldn't miss it for the world** – spoken used to say that you really want to go to an event, see something etc: *e. g. "Come to the party." "I will. I wouldn't miss it for the world."*

**4. Combine** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) if you combine two or more different things, or if they combine, they begin to exist or work together: *e. g. Diets are most effective when combined with exercise.* 2) if two or more different substances combine, or if you combine them, they mix or join together to produce a new single substance: *e. g. Combine all the ingredients in a large bowl.* 3) to do two different activities at the same time: *e. g. Many people enjoy combining a holiday with learning a new skill.*

**5. Prefer** (verb) *past tense and past participle preferred* [transitive not in progressive] 1) to like someone or something more than someone or something else, so that you would choose it if you could: *e. g. She prefers her coffee black. Employees said they would prefer more flexible working hours. I prefer to wear clothes made of natural fibers.*

**Prefer doing something** – *e.g. Chantal prefers travelling by train.*

**Prefer that** – *e. g. We prefer that our teachers have a degree in early childhood education.*

**Preferable** *adj* – better or more suitable: *e. g. For this dish, fresh herbs and garlic are preferable.*

**Preference** *noun* – if you have a preference for something, you like it more than another thing and will choose it if you can: *e. g. Many elderly people expressed a strong preference to live in their own homes. Parents may be able to express a preference as to the school their child will attend.*

**6. Occasion** *noun* – 1) a time when something happens: *e. g. I've seen Jana with them on several occasions. On this occasion we were sitting in a park in Madrid.* 2) a suitable or favourable time: *e.g. This was the occasion for expressions of friendship by the two presidents.*

**NB!** Do not use occasion when you mean 'a time when it is possible for you to do what you want to do'. Use opportunity or chance: Do not waste this opportunity (NOT this occasion).

3) an important social event or ceremony: *e. g. I'm saving this bottle of champagne for a special occasion.*

**On occasion** – sometimes but not often: *e. g. On occasion prisoners were allowed visits from their families.*

**If (the) occasion arises** - if a particular action ever becomes necessary: *e. g. If ever the occasion arises when I want advice, you're the first person I'll come to.*

**7. Slice** *noun* – 1) a thin flat piece of food cut from a larger piece: *e. g. a slice of bread; pizza slices.* 2) a part or share of something: *e. g. Everybody wants a slice of the profits.*

**A slice of life** – a film, play, or book which shows life as it really is.

**Fish slice** – a kitchen tool used especially for turning food when cooking, with a wide flat part and a handle.

**To slice** (*sliced*) *verb* 1) to cut meat, bread, vegetables etc into thin flat pieces: *e. g. Thinly slice the cucumbers. Slice up the onions and add them to the meat.* 2) to cut something easily with one movement of a sharp knife or edge: *e. g. The blade's so sharp it could slice through your finger.* 3) to move quickly and easily through something such as water or air: *e. g. The boat was slicing through the sparkling waves.*

**8. Popular** *adj* – 1) liked by a lot of people: *e. g. Hilary was popular at school. It was a popular holiday resort. Coffee is probably the most popular drink in the world.*

**Popular with/among** – *e. g. The President is very popular with Jewish voters.*

2) done by a lot of people in a society, group etc: *e. g. The government has little popular support among women voters.* 3) relating to ordinary people, or intended for ordinary people: *e. g. Wintour's writing is full of references to American popular culture.*

**9. Roast** (*verb*) [intransitive and transitive] 1) to cook something, such as meat, in an oven or over a fire, or to cook in this way: *e. g. Are you going to roast the chicken? We caught a rabbit and roasted it over an open fire.* 2) to heat nuts, coffee beans etc quickly in order to dry them and give them a particular taste: *e. g. dry-roasted peanuts.*

**Roast** (*noun*) a large piece of roasted meat: *e.g. a traditional Sunday roast.*

**10. Diet** (*noun*) 1) the kind of food that a person or animal eats each day: *e. g. balanced/healthy/poor etc diet. It is important to have a balanced, healthy diet.*

**Vegetarian/high-fibre/Western etc diet / diet of** – *e.g. They exist on a diet of fish. Bamboo is the panda's staple diet (= main food).*

**In somebody's diet** – *e.g. the importance of vitamins and minerals in your diet.*

2) a limited range and amount of food that you eat when you want to get thinner: *e. g. Lyn always seems to be on a diet.* 3) a limited type of food and drink that someone is allowed because they have a health problem: *e.g. a salt-free diet.* 4) a diet of something too much of an activity that you think is boring or has bad effects: *e. g. Kids today are raised on a constant diet of pop music and television.*

**Diet** (*verb*) to limit the amount and type of food that you eat, in order to become thinner.

**11. Meal** (noun) an occasion when you eat food, for example breakfast or dinner, or the food that you eat on that occasion: *e. g. After the movie we went for a meal in a Chinese restaurant. Why don't you ask him out for a meal? He was always taking her out for meals in fancy restaurants. We must have a meal together some time. Mavis ate her meal in silence. My mom was helping me prepare the meal. The price includes accommodation, breakfast, and evening meals. Dinner is the main meal of the day for most people. It was a five-course meal in an expensive French restaurant. All I need is a bath, a decent meal, and a good long sleep.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**Choosy (adj)** someone who is choosy will only accept things that they like a lot or they consider to be very good: *e. g. She's very choosy about clothes.*

**To keep to smth strictly** do something in a way that must be obeyed: *e. g. He keeps to his bedtime strictly.*

**For a change** a situation or experience that is different from what happened before, and is usually interesting or enjoyable: *e. g. How about dinner out for a change?*

**A Scot** someone from Scotland

**Boiled egg (n)** an egg, especially one from a chicken, that is used for food: *e. g. The next morning Mollie and I resumed the polishing and dusting after eating our muesli and boiled eggs.*

**A substantial meal** large in amount or number [= considerable]: *e. g. The breakfast they provide is substantial.*

**A biscuit (n)** a small thin dry cake that is usually sweet and made for one person to eat: *e.g. He dipped one of the biscuits into the tea and ate it in one.*

**Vice versa** used to say that the opposite of a situation you have just described is also true: *e.g. The boys may refuse to play with the girls, and vice versa.*

**Teaspoonful** the amount that a teaspoon can hold, used as a unit for measuring food or liquid in cooking.

**Particularly** more than usual or more than others [= especially]: *e. g. The restaurant is particularly popular with young people.*

**Fish and chips** a meal consisting of fish covered with batter (=a mixture of flour and milk) and cooked in oil, served with long thin pieces of potato also cooked in oil: *e. g. Get some fish and chips on your way home.*

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. **Keep** still. I need to put a bandage on your finger. 2. Don't let me **keep** you if you have other things to do. 3. How can you **keep** her waiting? 4. I'd hate to have a job that **kept** me in the office all the time. 5. I've decided to **keep** my car even though it's getting old. 6. I **keep** all my tickets and boarding passes as souvenirs. 7. Peter cycles to work to **keep** fit. 8. Dad, Bobby **keeps** hitting me!

9. Don just **kept on** talking like nothing happened. 10. How can I explain if you **keep on** interrupting me? 11. I **keep** forgetting to mail this letter. 12. I **keep** making the same mistake over and over. 13. Each day we are to **keep** a diary. 14. "Have you got a garden in your new place?" "Yes, **we have**." 15. Wild rice **has** a very nutty flavour. 16. He didn't even **have** the courtesy to answer my letter. 17. How many pages **has** it got? 18. The tank still **has** water in it. 19. Although she's eighty she **has** an excellent memory. 20. Beth **has** an awful cold. 21. Can I **have** a drink of water, please? 22. Well, can I **have** a sleep over? 23. But he would never fail to **have** a meal. 24. I thought it was very important to **have** a meal together every day. 25. I wish Marie was here – we could go in and **have** a meal together. 26. Did you **miss** me when I was in Hawaii? 27. I **miss** Mom, don't you? 28. I **missed** the bus and had to wait half an hour for the next one. 29. **Combine** the egg yolks and the cream, and cook over a low heat. 30. Greenhouse gases **combine** with hydrocarbons to form smog. 31. "Which restaurant shall we go to?" "I really don't mind. Whichever one you **prefer**." 32. Brad Pitt? Oh no, I much **prefer** Russell Crowe! 33. I remember Michael sleeping in your room on several **occasions** and mom not knowing about it. 34. "Would you like some more toast?" "Just one more **slice**, please." 35. Cut the roast into thin **slices**. 36. Doctors at the time criticized the hugely **popular diet**. 37. It's eight dollars for my **meal**, without the tip.

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. We usually have our main meal in the middle of the day. 2. Would you like to go out for a meal sometime, Emma? 3. You shouldn't exercise after a big meal. 4. Try not to eat between meals. 5. Lunch is his main meal of the day. 6. Enjoy your meal. 7. We managed to beg a meal from the cafe owner. 8. The meal couldn't have been better. 9. I don't know how he managed to keep his sense of humour with all he's been through. 10. I was always getting kept after school for something when I was a kid. 11. She was annoyed because the doctor kept her waiting. 12. He is not wealthy enough to keep another family. 13. My job keeps me really busy. 14. My mother kept all the letters my father ever wrote her. 15. Paul managed to keep awake by drinking lots of strong black coffee. 16. I was always kept after school when I was a kid. 17. The government had wanted to keep this information secret. 18. What happened a few miles away was kept secret. 19. Zhang was killed instantly, although his death was kept secret for a few days. 20. "Do you have a phone here?" "Yes, sir, we do." 21. "Have you got a garden in your new place?" "Yes, we have." 22. But he never failed to have a meal. 23. I think it is very important to have a meal together every day. 24. It's a pity Marie is not here – we could go in and have a meal together. 25. Well, I don't have any money on me, so I cannot treat you to a nice meal. 26. Well, we

just got talking and she agreed to have dinner with me the following night. 27. I can think of so many things I'll really miss when I leave. 28. I think I've missed the last bus. 29. It's easy to miss the entrance – the sign is hidden behind a tree. 30. Modern and traditional teaching methods are combined at the school. 31. French people usually prefer to buy goods that are made in France. 32. I'm beginning to like Japanese food. I certainly prefer rice to potatoes.

**Exercise 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. The notice said “Do not walk on the grass.” 2. She made the children stay amused for hours. 3. He didn't take off his coat. 4. She had trouble holding her balance. 5. I'm very sorry to make you waiting. 6. Go on smiling! 7. Stop interrupting me! 8. You're an hour late – what delayed you? 9. I preserve all school exercise books. 10. He owned a new car and a boat. 11. I don't carry that much money on me. 12. In 1999 the party included 10 000 members. 13. I'll order the salmon. 14. I smoked a cigarette while I was waiting. 15. Be absent at another class and you'll fail. 16. I didn't hear her name. 17. Your mother will know who's moved in – she doesn't fail to notice much. 18. I feel sad without her here. 19. We'd better leave now or we'll be late for the bus. 20. Hydrogen and oxygen mix to form water. 21. Several factors had acted together. 22. Mix the eggs with a little flour. 23. She has succeeded in a career and bringing up a family. 24. “Coffee or tea?” “I'd like tea, thanks.” 25. I like jazz better than rock music. 26. I like my coffee black. 27. The donor wishes to remain anonymous. 28. I'd rather not think about it. 29. Would you like me to stay? 30. I like playing in defense. 31. Anything was better than the tense atmosphere at home. 32. He finds country life more attractive than living in the city. 33. It would be better to employ two people, not one. 34. I've met him on several venues. 35. I can remember very few parties when he had to cancel because of ill health. 36. They have been seen together on two separate incidents. 37. He used the gathering to announce further tax cuts. 38. Turn every meal into a special event. 39. They marked the event (= celebrated it) with an open-air concert. 40. Their wedding turned out to be quite a party. 41. I'll speak to him about it if I get a chance. 42. I've had no reason to visit him recently. 43. I'm willing to go to deal with this if it becomes necessary. 44. Cut the meat into thin pieces. 45. Our firm is well placed to grab a large share/part of the market.

**Exercise 10. Find English equivalents for the following.**

Звичайна їжа; багато в чому схожа на; перебірливий; чітко дотримуватися; починати з каші з молоком; додавати цукор; батьківщина каші; джем; варення; заради різноманіття; варені яйця; холодна шинка або риба; особливий випадок; віддавати перевагу більш здоровій їжі; важливий

прийом їжі; пропустити прийом їжі; пудинг та печиво; бранч (другий завтрак); звичний для ланчу; чай о п'ятій годині; два шматка хліба з маслом; популярний серед англійців; щоб приготувати гарну чашку чаю; національний напій; чайна ложка; заварник; налити чай до молока; навпаки; морква та капуста; члени родини; їжа на винос/із собою; оцет.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. You need to work hard to keep ahead. 2. In our family we try to keep this tradition alive. 3. Playing with water can keep children amused for hours. 4. Teachers must keep a record of students' attendances. 5. Try to keep a balance between work and relaxation. 6. Do you need to keep these letters or shall we bin them? 7. It is important to keep calm in an emergency. 8. My family helps to keep me centred. 9. He never missed a chance to call on them for a cup of tea. 10. We'd better leave now or we'll miss the bus. 11. I miss you dreadfully. 12. "I'm going to miss you." "The feeling's mutual (= I feel exactly the same)." 13. "You miss them, don't you?" he asked gently. 14. Just keep going in a straight line; you can't miss it. 15. It is not a good idea to miss meals and replace them with snacks. 16. I found the temptation to miss the class too hard to resist. 17. If you miss that train then you'll have to get a taxi. 18. Hurry up! It would be a shame to miss the beginning of the play. 19. We sell printers and scanners, and all-in-ones that combine the two. 20. I don't like to mix business with pleasure (= combine social events with doing business). 21. I prefer walking to climbing. 22. It is commonly asserted that older people prefer to receive care from family members. 23. The majority of people interviewed prefer TV to radio. 24. The wedding was an occasion of great festivity. 25. They combined against a common enemy. 26. They combined effects of the two drugs. 27. You should try to combine exercise with a healthy diet. 28. It took the combined efforts of both the press and the public to bring about a change in the law.

**Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Ця маленька держава має населення у 20 мільйонів осіб. 2. У Вас є сірники? 3. У Вас є із собою гроші? 4. Ми йдемо купатися в річці. Хочеш піти з нами? 5. Він завжди снідає та обідає в один і той же час. 6. Вона сіла в крісло, щоб викурити ще одну сигарету. 7. Мені ця книга більше не потрібна, залиш собі. 8. Вона зберігала його листи роками. 9. Де ти зберігаєш овочі? 10. Його ще не має? Що його так затримує? 11. Він заробляє достатньо, щоб утримувати дружину, дітей та численних родичів. 12. Сідай ближче до вогнища, щоб зігрітися. 13. Ти повинен підтримувати чистоту в своїй кімнаті. 14. Вона розповідала веселі історії зі свого дитинства, щоб розважити дітей. 15. Меггі, не втручайся. Тебе це не стосується. 16. Ти вмієш зберігати таємниці? – Так. – Я пропустив два

заняття з англійської і тепер дуже сумую за своїм класом. 16. Я проспав та спізнився на потяг. Тепер я змушую своїх друзів чекати. 17. Я віддаю перевагу здоровому харчуванню. 18. Мені подобається поєднувати дієту та фізичні вправи. 19. Це був зручний привід для того, щоб запросити популярного серед молоді виконавця та підсмажити стейк. 20. Після кіно ми зайшли попоїсти. 21. Вона продовжувала йти, незважаючи на вітер.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### **Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian paying attention to the form of the verbs.**

1. The British like to drink tea. 2. Many people like to begin it with porridge. 3. I like to get up early and get a bit of work done before breakfast. 4. We like our students to take part in college sports activities. 5. I'd like to see that film. 6. There's something I'd like to tell you. 7. You can swim, can't you? 8. Can you help me lift this box? 9. I want to see life, to travel the world, and write about what I see. 10. She wants Tom to come to her party. 11. It always makes me want to sneeze. 12. You don't really want to be a hairdresser, do you? 13. Evans advised him to leave London. 14. I advise you to think very carefully before making any decision. 15. I strongly advise you to get medical insurance if you're going skiing. 16. Tom was ordered to pay £ 300 as compensation. 17. Her doctor ordered her to rest for a week. 18. The colonel ordered his men to advance. 19. Karen asked to see the doctor. 20. I've asked Mary to water the plants for me while I'm away. 21. The man on the phone wasn't very helpful, so I asked to speak with the manager.

### **Exercise 2. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian paying attention to infinitives after modal verbs.**

1. They can sing, can't they? 2. Gabriella can speak French fluently. 3. I'm afraid Mr Harding can't see you now – he's busy. 4. The police are doing all they can to find her. 5. Can I have a cigarette, please? 6. Can you help her get to the station? 6. You can't park here – it's no parking zone. 7. “Can we go home now, please?” “No, you can't.” 8. All passengers must wear seat belts. 9. It's getting late. I really must go. 10. You must work hard. 11. We must all be patient. 12. Must I pay now? 13. For the engine to work, the green lever must be in the “up” position. 14. Accidents must be reported to the safety officer. 15. I may be late, so don't wait for me. 16. There may not be enough money to pay for the repairs. 17. Thank you. You may go now.

### **Exercise 3. Make up sentences after the model.**

**Model:** ask/visit/ring up

She asks you to visit her. Can you do it? – No, I can't. I can ring her up.



1. tell/call/write.
2. advise/stop/continue.
3. allow/come/call.
4. force/forget/remember.
5. invite/come/write an e-mail.
6. ask/tell a secret/hint.
7. ask/buy a car/lend.
8. ask/tell the way/show.
9. invite/have dinner/stay to have coffee.
10. force/wash up/put away.
11. ask/mail letters/leave them with the secretary.
12. order/fly to New York/drive.
13. force/move out/only stay here.
14. allow/stay longer/stay for a day.

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentences according to the model, using the following adjectives.**

**Model:** read/interesting – To read is interesting.

1. swim/fantastic.
2. ride/fine.
3. sleep/boring.
4. compose music/outstanding.
5. write books/terrific.
6. travel all around the world/amazing.
7. watch TV/great.
8. chat with friends/superb.
9. post new pictures/terrific.
10. order a pizza/excellent.
11. see famous paintings/out of this world.
12. listen to favourite songs/brilliant.
13. Watch bad films/not interesting.
14. run into old friends/nice.
15. meet celebrities/impressive.

**Exercise 5. Complete the sentences with the following words in the Present Indefinite: go, take, eat, not speak, look, win, look, rain, not sleep, be, start.**

1. This boy \_\_\_ to school every day. His mother \_\_\_ him there.
2. She always \_\_\_ her lunch in a small restaurant.
3. She doesn't like to live in Paris. She \_\_\_ French.
4. What's wrong with him? He \_\_\_ very sad.
5. He is a good player. He \_\_\_ every game.
6. The painting \_\_\_ very nice.
7. Summer is quite cold here. It often \_\_\_.
8. She is very tired, she \_\_\_ much.
9. He \_\_\_ in a hurry.
10. The exam session at university usually \_\_\_ in January.

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Мері хоче зустрітися з тобою.
2. Він не хоче бачитися з тобою якийсь час. Не телефонуй йому.
3. Я прошу тебе зайти до батьків сьогодні ввечері та поговорити.
4. Я раджу тобі прочитати цю книгу перед іспитом.
5. Він вміє плавати, але не вміє водити машину.
6. Ти повинен нагадати їй про її обіцянку. Не дозволяй їй забувати такі речі.
7. Я наказую тобі закінчити роботу до вечора. – Ви не можете наказувати мені.
8. Вони дозволяють вам залишитися на ніч, але вранці ви повинні піти.
9. Він радить тобі зачекати ще трохи.
10. Я не можу втрачати час.
11. Я хочу піти в кіно ввечері, але не хочу йти з тобою.
12. Вона хоче перекласти цей текст сама.
13. Він радить тобі подумати ще раз.
14. Вони не хочуть дивитися цей фільм ще раз.

## LESSON 3

---

Text: Pros and cons of social networking sites

Grammar: 1) The Present Continuous

2) Participle 1

3) The main meanings of the article

### PROS AND CONS OF SOCIAL NETWORKING SITES

Just a few years ago, the idea of an online social network was revolutionary. While the Web has always provided a way for people to make **connections** with one another, social networking sites made it easier than ever to find old friends and make new ones. Today, it's rare to find someone who hasn't at least heard of Facebook, MySpace, Twitter or one of a hundred other social networks.

Without a doubt, the best reason to join any social networking site is that it lets you make connections with other people. You can use social networking sites **to stay up to speed with** what your friends are doing. If the social network is popular, you may be able **to track down** old friends and **acquaintances** and renew long-forgotten friendships.

You can also use these sites to network professionally. Even if you're happy where you are in your career, you might be able to help someone else out.

Many social networking sites like MySpace and Facebook make it easy to organize an event and invite your friends. Some sites allow you to group friends using different **criteria**, including geographic **location**. So the next time you plan a group trip to the movies, you can send out a **notice** to your local friends using a social networking service.

But **it's not all sunshine and roses**. There are some **drawbacks** to social networking too.

Perhaps the biggest online social networking drawback is that it makes **identity theft** easier. In order to **create** a profile on a social networking site, you have **to share** some information about yourself.

The problem is that if you don't share any information, none of your friends will be able to find you on the site. That **defeats** the purpose of a social networking site in the first place. On the other hand, if you share too much you may discover that someone else is masquerading under your identity. They might even be destroying your credit **rating** or attempting to access your e-mail or financial information.

Another danger is that scammers use social networking sites **to trick** people into downloading **malicious** software (malware). A common tactic is to use social engineering. Social engineering plays on human nature to get results. For example, you might receive a link from a friend **claiming** that it leads you to a funny video that you appear in. Following the link brings up a message saying you need **to install** a video player before you can view the clip. But the video player is actually a virus or Trojan horse program that can harm your computer. Once your computer is infected, the scammer will use your friends list to try and spread the malware even further.

Social networking can be both **overwhelming** and **addictive** at the same time. If you join every social network and **add** hundreds of people as friends, you'll receive updates constantly. It'll become difficult to see any one individual's updates. And you may find yourself checking for updates several times throughout the day when you really should be doing something else.

The good news is that the pros for social networking **outweigh** the cons. And with a few healthy habits, you can avoid or minimize the drawbacks. Just remember to be careful and responsible before you sign up!

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

social network, connections, to stay up to speed with, acquaintances, long-forgotten, criteria, location, it's not all sunshine and roses, drawbacks, identity, to share, to defeat, masquerading, scammers, malicious, claiming, to install, overwhelming and addictive, outweigh, minimize, responsible.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 5. Study the essential vocabulary.**

## ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

### Vocabulary notes

**1. Connection** (noun) **1. Relationship** [countable] the way in which two facts, ideas, events etc are related to each other, and one is affected or caused by the other [= link], e. g. *There is a connection between pollution and the death*

of trees. **Connection with**, e. g. *Mr O'Hara had no known connection with terrorist activity.* **Connection to**, e. g. *Williams apparently has no connection to the case. He demonstrated the close connection between social conditions and health.* **2. Joining** [uncountable and countable] when two or more things are joined together or when something is joined to a larger system or network, e. g. *A digital telephone connection via satellite. They're offering free Internet connection.* **In connection with something** (concerning or involving something) arrest/charge/question etc, e. g. *Two men have been arrested in connection with the attack.* **3. People connections** [plural] **a)** people who you know who can help you, especially because they are in positions of power: **connections in high places**, e. g. *We have good connections in the advertising industry.* **b)** people who are related to you, but not very closely: *He is English, but has Irish connections.*

**2. Acquaintance** (noun) **1. Somebody you know** [countable] someone you know, but who is not a close friend, e. g. *She was a casual acquaintance of my family in Vienna. He heard about the job through a mutual acquaintance* (= someone you and another person both know). **2. Relationship** [singular, uncountable] a relationship with someone you know, but who is not a close friend, e. g. *They developed an acquaintance over the Internet.* **3. Make somebody's acquaintance formal** to meet someone for the first time, e. g. *I should be delighted to make Mrs McGough's acquaintance.*

**3. Criterion** (noun) *plural criteria* [countable usually plural] a standard that you use to judge something or make a decision about something, e. g. *The criteria we use to select candidates.* **Criterion for**, e. g. *The criteria for measuring how good schools are.* **Meet/satisfy/fulfil criteria**, e. g. *To qualify for a grant, students must satisfy certain criteria.*

**4. Location** (noun) **1.** [countable] **A particular place**, especially in relation to other areas, buildings etc, e. g. *His apartment is in a really good location. Its isolated geographical location* **2.** [countable] **The position of something; location of**, e. g. *The map shows the precise location of the crash.* **3.** [uncountable and countable] **A place away from a film studio where scenes are filmed**, e. g. *It was hard to find a suitable location for the desert scenes.* **On location**, e. g. *Most of the movie was shot on location in Africa.* **4.** [uncountable] **The act of finding the position of something**, e. g. *The main problem for engineers was the location of underground rivers in the area.*

**5. Drawback** (noun) [countable] **a disadvantage of a situation, plan, product** etc, e. g. *It's a great city – the only drawback is the weather.* **Drawback of/to (doing) something**, e. g. *The main drawback to these products is that they tend to be too salty.*

**6. Identity** (noun) *plural identities* **1.** [uncountable and countable] **Someone's identity is their name or who they are**, e. g. *He maintained he did not know the identity of the woman.* **2.** [uncountable] **The qualities and attitudes**

**that a person or group of people have, that make them different from other people**, e. g. *Children need continuity, security, and a sense of identity. Travelling alone can lead to a loss of identity. National/cultural/social identity* (= a strong feeling of belonging to a particular group, race etc), e. g. *Our strong sense of national identity has been shaped by our history.* **Identity crisis/crisis of identity** (= a feeling of uncertainty about who you really are and what your purpose is), e. g. *My father experienced an identity crisis in middle age.*

**7. Share** **1.** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] **To have or use something with other people**, e. g. *We don't have enough books so you'll have to share.* **Share something with somebody**, e. g. *I have an office that I share with some other teachers.* **2. Let smbd use smth** [transitive], e. g. *As a kid he'd never share his toys.* **Share something with somebody**, e. g. *Will you share your fries with me?* **3. Divide** [transitive] **also share out** to divide something between two or more people, **share something between/among somebody**, e. g. *They shared the cake between them.* **4. Responsibility/blame** [transitive] to have equal responsibility for doing something, paying for something etc, e. g. *We share the responsibility for the children. We all share some of the blame for the accident.* **5. Same** [transitive] to have the same opinion, quality, or experience as someone else. **Share somebody's view/concern/belief etc**, e. g. *Other parents share her belief in the importance of reading. I believe my view is widely shared.* **Share something with somebody**, e. g. *Stubbornness was a characteristic he shared with his mother.* **6. Tell smb. smth** [intransitive and transitive] to tell other people about an idea, secret, problem etc, e. g. *Students were able to share their experiences.* **7. Share your life with somebody**, e. g. *I'm not ready to share my life with anyone.*

**8. Defeat** (verb) [transitive] **1. To win a victory over someone in a war, competition, game etc** [= beat], e. g. *They hoped to defeat the enemy at sea.* **Defeat somebody by something**, e. g. *We were defeated by 3 goals to 2.* **2. If something defeats you, you cannot understand it and therefore cannot answer or deal with it** [= beat], e. g. *It was the last question on the paper that defeated me.*

**9. Malicious** (adjective) very unkind and cruel, and deliberately behaving in a way that is likely to upset or hurt someone, e. g. *A malicious girl.* **Malicious gossip/rumour**, e. g. *Who is responsible for these malicious rumours?*

**10. Claim** (verb) **1. Truth** [transitive] to state that something is true, even though it has not been proved, e. g. *The product claims 'to make you thin without dieting'.* **Claim to do/be something**, e. g. *No responsible the rapist will claim to cure your insomnia.* **Claim to have done something**, e. g. *The girls claim to have seen the fairies.* **Claim responsibility/credit (for something)** (= say officially that you are responsible for something that has happened), e. g. *The group claimed responsibility for the bombings.* **Claim somebody/ something as something**, e. g.

*A letter appeared in The Times claiming Fleming as the discoverer of penicillin.*

**2. Money** [intransitive and transitive] to officially demand or receive money from an organization because you have a right to it. **Claim something back**, e. g. *He should be able to claim the price of the ticket back.* **Claim on**, e. g. *You can claim on the insurance if you have an accident while on holiday.* **Claim benefit/an allowance/damages etc**, e. g. *If you're still not satisfied, you may be able to claim compensation.* **3. Legal right** [transitive] to state that you have a right to take or have something that is legally yours, e. g. *The majority of those who claim asylum are genuine refugees.* **4. Death** [transitive] if a war, accident etc claims lives, people die because of it – used especially in news reports, e. g. *The earthquake has so far claimed over 3000 lives.* **5. Attention** [transitive] if something claims your attention, you notice and consider it carefully, e. g. *The military conflict continues to claim our undivided attention.*

**11. Install** (verb) [transitive] **1. To put a piece of equipment somewhere and connect it** so that it is ready to be used, e. g. *They've installed the new computer network at last.* **2. To add new software to a computer** so that it is ready to be used[≠uninstall], e. g. *We've installed new anti-virus software.* **3. To put someone in an important job or position**, especially with a ceremony, e. g. *Churchill was installed as Chancellor of the university.*

**12. Overwhelming** (adjective) **1. Having such a great effect on you that you feel confused and do not know how to react**, e. g. *An overwhelming sense of guilt. She felt an overwhelming desire to hit him.* **2. Very large or greater, more important etc than any other**, e. g. *There is overwhelming evidence that smoking damages your health.*

**13. Outweigh** (verb) [transitive] to be more important or valuable than something else, e. g. *The benefits of the scheme outweigh the disadvantages.*

**14. Update** (verb) [transitive] **1. To add the most recent information to something**, e. g. *The files need updating.* **2. To make something more modern in the way it looks or operates**, e. g. *Plans to update manufacturing procedures.* **3. Spoken Update somebody on something** to tell someone the most recent information about a situation, e. g. *Can you update me on what's been happening?*

**15. Rating** (noun) **1. [countable] A level on a scale that shows how good, important, popular etc someone or something is**, e. g. *By the end of the year the Prime Minister's approval rating (= how many people agreed with his policies) had fallen as low as 12 percent.* **2. The ratings** a list that shows which films, television programmes etc are the most popular, e. g. *CBS will end the series if it continues to drop in the ratings.*

**16. Create** (verb)[transitive] **1. To make something exist that did not exist before**, e. g. *Some people believe the universe was created by a big explosion.* **2. To invent or design something**, e. g. *This dish was created by our chef Jean Richard.*

**17. Notice** (noun) **1. Attention** [uncountable] when you notice or pay attention to someone or something, e. g. *I waved but they took no notice.* **Not take any/much notice (of something)**, e. g. *I did not take much notice of her suggestions. There are several important matters that I'd like to bring to your notice* (= that I would like you to know about). **2. On paper** [countable] a written or printed statement that gives information or a warning to people [sign], e. g. *The notice on the wall said 'No smoking'.* **Obituary notices** (= about people who have just died) in the newspaper.

**18. Trick** (verb) [transitive] **1. To deceive someone in order to get something from them or to make them do something**, e. g. *She knew she'd been tricked, but it was too late.* **Trick somebody into doing something**, e. g. *He claimed he was tricked into carrying drugs.* **Trick somebody out of something**, e. g. *The corporation was tricked out of \$ 20 million.* **Trick your way into/past/ onto etc something**, e. g. *He tricked his way into her home by pretending to be a policeman.* **2. Be tricked out with/in something** *British English literary* to be decorated with something, e. g. *A hat tricked out with ribbons.*

**19. Add** (verb) **1. Put with smth else** [transitive] to put something with something else or with a group of other things, e. g. *If the mixture seems dry, add water.* **Add something to something**, e. g. *Do you want to add your name to the list?* **2. Count** [intransitive and transitive] if you add numbers or amounts together, you calculate their total [subtract]; **add something and something (together)**, e. g. *Add 7 and 5 to make 12.* **Add something to something**, e. g. *Add £ 2.20 to the cost for postage.* **3. Say more** [transitive] to say more about something that has just been said, e. g. *'And I don't care what you think,' she added defiantly.* **Add that**, e. g. *Everyone will be invited to vote, he said, adding that voting is likely to be via the web.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**1. Share in something** *phrasal verb* if you share in someone's success, happiness etc, you have it or enjoy it with them, e. g. *His daughters did not share in his happiness.*

**2. Identity theft** *also identity fraud* [uncountable] any crime in which someone steals personal information about and belonging to another person, for example their bank account number or the number of their driving licence, and uses this information to deceive other people and get money or goods.

**3. To track down** *phrasal verb.* To pursue until found or captured, e. g. *"When, like a running grave, time tracks you down".*

**4. Not all sunshine and roses.** If a situation is not all sunshine and roses, there are unpleasant things to deal with as well as the pleasant ones, e. g. *Being in a relationship is not all sunshine and roses, you know.*

**5. Up to speed with.** If you are up to speed with a subject or an activity, you have all the latest information about it and are able to do it well, e. g. *We arranged for some home tutoring to get him up to speed with the other children in his class.*

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. Police have so far failed to **establish** a **connection** between the two murders. 2. My uncle did not improve on further **acquaintance**. 3. One **criterion** for grading these essays will be their conformity to the rules of traditional grammar. 4. Police are trying to discover the **identity** of a baby found by the side of a road. 5. The company is moving its factory to a different **location**. 6. The trip sounds great, but cost is a major **drawback**. 7. In these countries, profits taxes contribute a large **share** of total revenue. 8. She finally found a solution to a problem that had **defeated** many other researchers. 9. The strangers' eyes were judging, almost cruel, with a hint of **maliciousness**. 10. Opposition leaders will **claim** victory if the turnout is lower than 50 %. 11. Security cameras have been **installed** in the city centre. 12. The proposal has been given **overwhelming** support. 13. As you can see, the pros clearly **outweigh** the miniscule cons. 14. My aim is not to write a new book; my aim is to correct and **update** the existing book. 15. The five-star **rating** of this hotel demands fine quality and service. 16. The software makes it easy to **create** colourful graphs. 17. I hope you'll take **notice** of what I'm going to tell you. 18. Suzuki has **added** extra doors to its sports off-roader. 19. She enjoys playing **tricks** on her friends. 20. Before we start the meeting, I'm just going **to bring you up to speed with** the latest developments. 21. I own the house, but we **share** the bills. 22. Philip Glass **created** a new kind of music. 23. She was trying to entertain us – unsuccessfully, I might **add**. 24. After the party the three of us **shared** a taxi.

**Exercise 7. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. The evidence was there in the file but no one made the connection. 2. You can't judge her on such short acquaintance. 3. There is a universal set of criteria for diagnosing patients in Britain. 4. Last year Ann applied for a teaching job under a false identity. 5. Radar established the precise location of the aircraft. 6. This plan has only one drawback: it's unworkable. 7. She often takes up odd jobs of packing spices or fruits during the weekend to be able to contribute her share. 8. Scientists from around the world are working to defeat the disease. 9. Even if the damage was caused maliciously, the boy is too young to be arrested. 10. Lost property can be claimed between 10 a.m. and 4 p.m. 11. The company is ready to install equipment manufactured by Germany's Engineering. 12. She found the city quite overwhelming when she first arrived. 13. Remember that the safety



of the many outweighs the lives of the few. 14. We'll update you on the rest of the travel news as we get it. 15. The school has an above-average academic rating. 16. Her behaviour is creating a lot of problems. 17. This never came to my notice. 18. For tax purposes, your pension and earnings are added together. 19. One must not deceive or trick others in buying or selling. 20. Sales tax adds to the price.

**Exercise 8. Paraphrase the following sentence using the essential vocabulary.**

1. I'd been away from the city for 6 months and had lost contact with friends I had there. 2. Howard was a best friend and trusted associate of my father. 3. Cultures of other lands cannot be the standard to measure our own progress. 4. The personality of the killer is still unknown. 5. Are you planting the seeds in a sunny position? 6. The lack of access to the educational psychological service is a serious disadvantage for some children. 7. We must be ready to beat our enemies in battle. 8. The teachers made spiteful little jokes about me. 9. He affirmed that he came from a wealthy, educated family. 10. In fact, maybe they should just set quiz machines like they have in pubs. 11. A suppressing majority of the members were against the idea. 12. In the most populated areas of California, the cost of living far exceeds the national average. 13. The plan is to modernize the buildings and revamp the curriculum. 14. The hotel regained its five-star category. 15. We have the equipment and skills to produce good music, but we are naïve as to how to get known within the industry. 16. Their silence did not escape my attention. 17. Meanwhile, place the curry powder in a small dish and pour 2 tablespoons of cold water to make a paste. 18. But mostly, it is an attempt to cheat and gain effects by means other than by science.

**Exercise 9. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. У житті важливо вміти вправно налагоджувати відносини з оточуючими. 2. Чарльз часто їздить у відрядження закордон, тому він має багато знайомих по всьому світу. 3. Що для Вас є головним критерієм при виборі готелю? 4. В ранковій газеті повідомили, що особистості нападників ще не встановлено. 5. Ми поділяємо вашу стурбованість. 6. Він втратив роботу після жахливої поразки на місцевих виборах у червні. 7. Місце розташування готелю досить незручне для прогулянок з маленькими дітьми, що є його головним недоліком порівнянно з іншими готелями такого ж рівня. 8. Навіть якщо шкоду було завдано навмисно, хлопчик дуже молодий, щоб бути заарештований. 9. Він стверджує, що непричетний до скоєння цього злочину, та докази вказують протилежне. 10. Я раджу вам встановити нову версію цієї програми. 11. Він був обраний президентом переважною більшістю виборців. 12. Поглянь на ситуацію з іншого боку, зазвичай позитивні сторони переважають негативні. 13. Запускайте сканування ваших дисків раз на місяць і обов'язково постійно оновлюйте бази вірусів.

14. Ми очікували, що як тільки вона покине шоу, наші рейтинги одразу впадуть. 15. Він завжди створює стільки зайвого клопоту для своїх батьків. 16. Якщо мене немає вдома, ви завжди можете залишити повідомлення для мене у моєї сусідки, яка мешкає навпроти. 17. Цей шахрай є дуже відомим у передмісті, адже тільки за останній рік він обдурив півсотні сімей. 18. Додай трохи олії у сковорідку, ти ж бачиш, млинці підгорають.

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Students often see little connection between school and the rest of their lives. 2. At the hotel, I made the acquaintance of a young American actor. 3. Academic ability is not the sole criterion for admission to the college. 4. The victims will testify behind a screen in order to protect their identities. 5. The picture was filmed on location in the desert. 6. It is obvious what is going to happen from there and that is the main drawback for this film. 7. The one-bedroom ground floor flat and the house share a common entrance and a Japanese-style garden area. 8. They have made no progress between their landslide defeat in the 1997 election and their second defeat in 2001. 9. Finally my neighbor was found guilty of malicious damage. 10. I don't claim to be a feminist, but I'd like to see more women in top jobs. 11. First the company rents and installs the necessary equipment then brings the back-up tapes from the primary site and loads all the data into the machines – a process which takes days. 12. The British Air Force succeeded despite overwhelming odds against them. 13. Eventually we realized that this first crop provided a wonderful learning opportunity, greatly outweighing the short-term cost. 14. We have no further details at the moment but we are doing all our best to find out exactly what happened and we'll update you as soon as we can. 15. The article compares the fuel-economy ratings of various cars. 16. The new factory is expected to create more than 400 new jobs. 17. It is strange but this serious problem may have escaped your notice so far. 18. Material about recent research has been added to this new edition. 19. Many people have been tricked by villains with false identity cards. 20. Staying up to speed with social media during a job search can be frustrating, even for people who work in the industry. 21. Journalists should have to produce proof of identity. 22. At his death, his property was shared out between his children.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Для того щоб налагоджувати контакти з іноземними бізнес-партнерами, потрібно постійно вдосконалювати свої мовні навички. 2. Хіба ми знайомі? Вибачте, я не пригадую, щоб ми зустрічалися раніше. 3. В останні роки викладачі кафедри приділяють значну увагу організації самостійної роботи студентів та розробці критеріїв оцінки знань студентів. 4. Керівництво коледжу наполягає на тому, щоб студенти і співробітники постійно мали при

собі посвідчення особи. 5. Він має також розділити відповідальність за цей жахливий злочин та понести покарання. 6. Це завжди важко визнавати поразку. 7. Незважаючи на зручне розташування у верхній частині Бротон-стріт, цей бар дійсно ніколи не користувався попитом серед відвідувачів. 8. Крім того, позивач у своїй скарзі вказав, що відповідач злісно пошкодив її автомобіль. 9. Раніше Джейн стверджувала, що погоджується підписувати контракт з нашою організацією. 10. Нещодавно його призначили керуючим відділенням, проте він на це заслуговує. 11. Кожного вечора я маю нездоланне бажання з'їсти все, що є в холодильнику, але потім я згадую, що я на дієті. 12. Боб переважає свого супротивника більш ніж на двадцять п'ять фунтів, тому гадаю, що перемога буде за нами. 13. На авіаційному заводі заходи безпеки постійно оновлюються і вдосконалюються. 14. Він працював на телебаченні й тому його турбували тільки телевізійні та радіо рейтинги. 15. Це фантастично: спостерігати за тим, як великі актори створюють чарівні образи улюблених героїв. 16. Будь ласка, донесіть це повідомлення до відома ваших друзів, які можуть бути зацікавлені в участі у нашому концерті. 17. Покупці можуть бути введені в оману досвідченими продавцями. 18. Вчора мене не пустили на вечірку, я була дуже засмучена, адже моє ім'я мало бути додано до списку гостей. 19. Мати власний бізнес не завжди легко, з'являється купа проблем кожного дня.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian, pay attention to the use of the Present Continuous.**

1. I'm sitting on the beach, eating an icecream, Mary and Peter are swimming in the sea and Jimmy is in the park. He is playing with a friend. Peter is listening to the radio and reading. We are having a fantastic holiday. Abercwm is a little fishing village in north Wales with a park, a castle, some Roman remains and some lovely gardens, and there is a little fishing port with a lighthouse. Everybody here is really friendly. I think we're lucky. This is our second holiday this year and we're doing just what we want to do: sleeping eating and playing games. The food is lovely too. 2. Look! The girl is riding her bicycle. 3. I am having my breakfast at the moment. I can't come out. 4. Be quiet! The baby is sleeping. 5. The students are writing the summary of the reading text now. 6. Our football team isn't playing well this season. 7. She is preparing the project today. 8. We're having a lot of meetings this week. 9. Mark is working in China this month. 10. Sally is studying really hard for her exams this week. 11. I am reading a really interesting book now. 12. How are you brushing up on your English for the trip? 13. We aren't working hard these days. 14. The kids are watching TV. 15. I am sitting down, because I am tired. 16. I am not learning German, because this is an English class. 17. Who

are you writing to? 18. I am seeing my dentist on Wednesday. 19. Polly is coming for dinner tomorrow. 20. Are you doing anything tonight? 21. We aren't going on holiday next week.

**Exercise 2. Put the verbs into the correct form (Present Continuous).**

1. I am in a very big forest now. The birds (sing) and the ants (carry) food. 2. Sally (dry) her hair now. 3. Two man (walk) in the street now. 4. Tony (play) the guitar at the moment. 5. Steven and Rachel (cook) the dinner in the kitchen. It smells wonderful. 6. My father (read) his newspaper and my mother (write) a letter to her sister at the moment. 7. You are (study) hard this term. 8. Look! The Browns (move) to another city. Let's go and help them carry the furniture. 9. The children (play) in the garden. 10. Our boss (have) a meeting at the moment. Can you wait for a short time? 11. I (solve) a very difficult Maths problem. I can't listen to you at the moment. 12. The girls (organize) a surprise party for Joseph at the moment. 13. Be careful! A dog (run) toward us. 14. Don't make noise! The teacher (talk) about an important subject. 15. Michael can't play football. He (play) the guitar at the moment. 16. No, I am not listening to my cassettes, I (have) a bath. 17. What are you doing? I (learn) English. 18. Today it is not raining, the sun (shine). 19. What are you doing? I (watch) TV. 20. The penguin swims very well. Look, the two little penguins (swim) right now.

**Exercise 3. Complete the sentences in the Present Continuous tense.**

1. You can't talk to Janet now. She \_\_\_\_\_ in her bedroom. 2. Look! The weather \_\_\_\_\_. Take your umbrella with you. 3. The children \_\_\_\_\_ a cartoon on TV now. 4. She \_\_\_\_\_ to music and \_\_\_\_\_ in her room at the moment. 5. Oh, Mary! Where \_\_\_\_\_? To school or to the library? 6. Larry and Peter \_\_\_\_\_ hamburgers and \_\_\_\_\_ coke in the school cafeteria now. 7. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes and my sister is \_\_\_\_\_ her in the kitchen at the moment. 8. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ for my university exam this year. 9. We \_\_\_\_\_ in the lake at the moment. The water is warm and nice. 10. Helen \_\_\_\_\_ problems with her classmates this semester. Nobody likes her. 11. Peter writes his homework. Peter can't come, he \_\_\_\_\_ his homework. 12. We can't play tennis. It \_\_\_\_\_ now. 13. Look, the monkey \_\_\_\_\_ a banana! 14. Father drives a big car. But at the moment father \_\_\_\_\_ a little red car.

**Exercise 4. Create a sentence in the Present Continuous tense.**

1. a lorry / man / a / now / drive / tall. 2. clean / her / at the moment / Mrs. Gatsby / house. 3. internet cafe / go to / the children / now. 4. water / in the garden / my father / the flowers. 5. letter / I / my aunt / at the moment / write. 6. dolls / play / Susan / with / home / at / now. 7. park / Clark / car / his / at the moment. 8. on / the

baby / sit / the floor / play / and / now. 9. nice / a / tell / the teacher / story / now  
10. now / read / in the / Betty / a book / library. 11. barn / milk / Fanny / now / the  
cows / in the. 12. iron / I / shirts / at the moment / and / ties. 13. the zoo / watching  
/ we / in / the animals / now. 14. the letters / now / deliver / the postman.

**Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. She is looking at the woman sitting at the window. 2. Having translated the text, the student began to do the exercises. 3. Sending the telegram, she forgot to write her name. 4. The girl putting the book on the shelf is the new librarian. 5. Looking out of the window, he saw his mother watering the flowers. 6. Having made a dress I presented it to my friend 7. She went into the room, leaving the door open. 8. While putting the eggs into the basket, she broke one of them. 9. Students making such mistakes must work hard at their English. 10. Having been forbidden to go out, I stayed at home. 11. Having written a letter she remembered it. 12. A teacher seeing a mistake in a student's dictation always corrects it. 13. When I entered the room, I gave the letter to the women sitting at the window. 14. The engineer testing the device is a good specialist. 15. Having read the book, he thought that it was interesting. 16. Translating new texts he usually wrote out all new words. 17. Take the book from the table standing in the corner of the room! 18. Running into the road, the young man stopped a taxi. 19. Seeing clouds of smoke over the house, the girl cried, "Fire! Fire!" 20. Having been shown the wrong direction he lost his way. 21. The students speaking good English must help their classmates. 22. Having built a house he began building a greenhouse. 23. While speaking to Nick some days ago, I forgot to ask him about his sister. 24. Looking through the newspaper, she noticed a photo of her boss. 25. Using chemicals, the firemen soon put out the fire in the forest. 26. Having been given the toy the child stopped crying. 27. Having opened the door of the flat, he remembered that he had to buy some bread for supper. 28. The device functioned all the time, using the energy of the sun. 29. Studying at the school he was interested in biology very much. 30. While studying at the institute he became interested in electricity. 31. Being built of wood the bridge could not carry heavy loads. 32. The speaking doll interested the child very much. 33. Having been built of concrete, the house was cold in winter. 34. Knowing the English language well, he can translate articles without a dictionary. 35. He saw several boys in the post office sending telegrams. 36. Having watched a movie I called my friend. 37. A person taking a sunbath must be very careful. 38. Hearing the sounds of music, we stopped talking. 39. Having lost the key, they couldn't get in.

**Exercise 6. Combine the following pairs of sentences using Participle 1.**

1. We met a boy. He was carrying a heavy bag. 2. The robbers saw the policeman. They ran away. 3. I found the door open. I went inside. 4. The police

saw the body. It was floating down the river. 5. He cried at the top of his voice. He rushed at the thief. 6. The troops gave a blow to the enemy. It was stunning. 7. His handwriting was illegible. I couldn't figure out what he had written. 8. I walked along the road. I saw a snake. 9. I took a cue from his words. I solved the riddle. 10. It was a fine day. Everybody was out on the roads.

### **Exercise 7. Rewrite the sentences using Participle 1.**

1. Susan was talking to her friend and forgot everything around her. 2. Since they watch the news every day they know what's going on in the world. 3. The Smith are vegetarians and don't eat meat. 4. As he had lost his wallet, he could not buy the present to his wife. 5. While I was tidying up my room I found some old photos. 6. She was a good daughter and helped her mother in the kitchen. 7. After the cat had been lost in the forest, it could find the way back home. 8. The man was sitting in the cafe. He was reading a newspaper. 9. As the woman had been cheated, she went to the police. 10. He walked home and met an old friend. 11. After the famous writer had finished his last book, he decided to take a long holiday. 12. The dog wagged its tail and bit the policeman. 13. After the letters had been sorted, they were sent to the addressees. 14. As we didn't have enough money we spent our holidays at home last year. 15. Since I didn't feel well I didn't go to the cinema.

### **Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Перекладаючи іноземні тексти, я завжди користуюся словником. 2. Дізнавшись про справжні причини її образи, він вибачився та спробував все пояснити. 3. Хлопчик, що відправляв посилку батькам, мав засмучений вигляд. 4. Переглянувши всі картинки у журналі, маленька дівчинка заснула. 5. Вона читала книгу та пила м'ятний чай, сидячи у саду. 6. Зрозумівши що сталося, він виправив помилку. 7. Том відкрив вікно, вдихаючи свіже повітря. 8. Високий хлопець, що стоїть у дверях мій кузен. 9. Подивись! Ти знаєш тих хлопців, що грають у волейбол? 10. Увійшовши до кімнати, ми побачили маленьких кошенят, що гралися на ліжку. 11. Відчуваючи голод, він зайшов на кухню та відкрив холодильник. 12. Одягнувши пальто, він вийшов з дому. 13. Вчора ввечері ми знайшли гроші, що лежали на землі. 14. Дівчинка, що малює у дворі – це моя сестра. 15. Через те, що їх будинок було затоплено під час повені, зараз вони мешкають у родичів. 16. Закінчивши доклад, ви можете йти до дому. 17. Отримуючи листа на пошті, я зустрів сусіда. 18. Дописавши портрет дівчини, він показав його друзям.

### **Exercise 9. Insert articles where necessary.**

1. I like ... blue T-shirt over there better than ... red one. 2. My grandmother likes ... flowers very much. 3. There is ... new English book on the desk. 4. Their car

does 150 miles ... hour. 5. I love ... flowers in your garden 6. She's reading ... old comic. 7. Where's ... USB drive I lent you last week? 8. They've got ... idea. 9. I always listen to ... radio in the morning. 10. Do you still live in ... Bristol? 11. He is drinking ... cup of coffee. 12. Is your mother working in ... old office building? 13. Alex goes to work by ... bus. 14. The girl is .... doctor. 15. Carol's father works as ... electrician. 16. Don't be late for ... school. 17. The tomatoes are 99 pence ... kilo. 18. Listen! Dennis is playing ... trumpet. 19. Leipzig has ... airport. 20. This is ... expensive bike. 21. We often see our cousins over ... Easter. 22. What do you usually have for ... breakfast? 23. Look! There's ... bird flying. 24. Ben has ... terrible headache. 25. She has never been to ... Alps before. 26. My father is ... honest person. 27. After this tour you have ... whole afternoon free to explore the city. 28. What about going to Australia in ... February? 29. My friend likes to be ... astronaut. 30. See you on ... Wednesday.

**Exercise 10. Use articles *a, an, the* or *\_\_ (nothing)*.**

1. *\_\_* pork is a kind of *\_\_* meat. 2. *\_\_* pork we had for dinner last night was excellent. 3. Mary is wearing *\_\_* straw hat today. 4. Mary likes to wear *\_\_* hats. 5. *\_\_* hat is an article of clothing. 6. *\_\_* blue hat on that hook over there belongs to Jim. 7. Everyone has *\_\_* problems in *\_\_* life. 8. My grandfather had *\_\_* long life. 9. That book is about *\_\_* life of Helen Keller. 10. *\_\_* jewelry Donna is wearing today is beautiful. 11. *\_\_* people wear *\_\_* jewelry to make themselves more attractive. 12. Tom wants to be *\_\_* engineer when he grows up. 13. This bridge was designed by *\_\_* engineer. 14. One of the first things you need to do when you move to *\_\_* new city is to find *\_\_* place to live. 15. They are renting *\_\_* furnished apartment in *\_\_* city centre. 16. He didn't even know *\_\_* Browns had *\_\_* daughter. 17. Is he *\_\_* Jones who is *\_\_* writer? 18. He never doubted that Fleur was *\_\_* Forsyte. 19. She felt like *\_\_* Alice in *\_\_* Wonderland. 20. He wanted to know how much *\_\_* Rolls-Royce cost.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Я хотів би сендвіч та горнятко кави на сніданок. 2. Ти вмієш грати на гітарі? 3. Як шкода, що ми не поїдемо на виставу. 4. Ми збираємося поїхати до бабусі в село у неділю, ти поїдеш з нами? 5. У вівторок мати приходила до школи, щоб поспілкуватися з вчителем. 6. Шевченко видатний український поет. 7. У наступному році городський голова збирається відкрити нову дитячу лікарню у нашому місті. 8. Анна – остання людина в світі, яку я хотів би побачити зараз. 9. Вартість оренди житла на сьогодні становить 500 грн. на тиждень. 10. У дитинстві ми часто ходили з батьками до цирку та театру. 11. – До речі, хтось знає де зараз Пітер? – Останнє, що я чув про нього, це те, що минулого року він вступив до університету. 12. Ніде не можу знайти листа, що надійшов учора. 13. В академії

моїм улюбленим предметом була історія. 14. – Не підкажете котра година? – Зараз п'ятнадцята на шосту. 15. По правді, я не очікував побачити тебе тут.

### **Exercise 12. Complete the text below choosing the correct prepositions.**

#### **A brief history of Facebook**

Mark Zuckerberg, 23, founded Facebook ... studying psychology ... Harvard University. A keen computer programmer, Mr. Zuckerberg had already developed a number ... social-networking websites ... fellow students, including Coursematch, which allowed users to view people taking their degree, and Facemash, where you could rate people's attractiveness.

... February 2004 Mr. Zuckerberg launched “The facebook”, as it was originally known; the name taken from the sheets ... paper distributed ... freshmen, profiling students and staff. ... 24 hours, 1,200 Harvard students had signed up, and after one month, ... half ... the undergraduate population had a profile.

The network was promptly extended ... other Boston universities, the Ivy League and eventually all US universities. It became Facebook.com in August 2005 ... the address was purchased ... \$ 200,000. US high schools could sign up from September 2005, then it began to spread worldwide, reaching UK universities the following month.

As of September 2006, the network was extended ... educational institutions to anyone ... a registered email address. The site remains free to join, and makes a profit ... advertising revenue. Yahoo and Google are ... companies which have expressed interest ... a buy-out, ... rumoured figures of ... \$ 2bn being discussed. Mr. Zuckerberg has so far refused to sell.

The site's features have continued to develop during 2007. Users can now give gifts ... friends, post free classified advertisements and even develop their own applications - graffiti and Scrabble are particularly popular.

This month the company announced that the number of registered users had reached 30 million, making it the largest social-networking site ... an education focus.

### **Exercise 13. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Чи не могли б Ви говорити голосніше? Вас дуже погано чути, ми намагаємося записувати. 2. На жаль, я сьогодні не зможу піти на вечірку, в мене багато домашнього завдання. Зараз я готую доклад з історії, а ввечері збираюсь написати твір про своє місто. 3. Пітер зараз косить газон у саду, а о п'ятій ми збираємося зустрітися зі Смітами. 4. Навіщо ти купив пиріг? Мама як раз пече свій фірмовий полуничний торт. 5. Виконавши умови договору, ми відмовилися визнати претензію фірми. 6. Почекай! Тобі телефонують. 7. Зібравши весь матеріал, він зміг написати докладний звіт про роботу комісії. 8. Обережно, собака біжить до тебе. 9. Діти зараз не



працюють, вони на перерві. 10. Повертаючись до дому, на одному з будинків ми побачили паруючу трубу. 11. Поки ми обідали, ми обговорили багато питань. 12. Коли я керую авто, я завжди пристібаю ремінь безпеки. 13. Він читав лист нервово посміхаючись. 14. Вона глянула на мене, ніби хотіла сказати щось важливе. 15. Якщо грати за правилами, то ми програємо. 16. Прочитавши книгу, я повернув її до бібліотеки. 17. Прибувши до магазину, я побачив, що він був закритий. 18. Під час мийки та поліровки автомобіля, Френк пошкодив спину. 19. Книжкова шафа, що стоїть в кутку вітальні, була повна рідкісних книг. 20. Вони вирішили підійти до маленького будиночка, що стоїть у лісі неподалік дороги. 21. Результат її роботи був жахаючий. 22. Жінка, що чекає в машині, дзвонила вам позавчора. 23. Хмари були висвітлені сонцем, що сідає. 24. Запізнившись на потяг, він провів цілу ніч на вокзалі. 25. Послухай! Як чудово вона співає цю пісню! 26. Проживши в Лондоні багато років, він знав це місто дуже добре. 27. Уважніше! Ти робиш багато помилок. 28. Закінчивши школу, він вступив до Оксфорду. 29. Після того як Сьюзан вимила голову, вона потягнулася за феном та ножицями. 30. Бажаєте кави с тістечком? – Ні, дякую, я тільки поснідала.

## LESSON 4

Text: British Holidays

Grammar: 1) There is \ there are

2) Plural nouns, pronouns

### BRITISH HOLIDAYS

There are a lot of **holidays**, which are **celebrated** in Great Britain every year, a lot of them are **so-called “bank holidays”**. The term “bank holiday” **goes back** to the 19th century. At that time all the banks were closed on these days. Now this term is no longer **referred** only to banks. Many other firms and offices are closed too.

Let's start with the New Year's Day which is the first of January. It is not so popular in England as in our country, but it is **rather** popular in Scotland. On that day all people, men, women, children, usually visit their friends and there is a lot of dancing and eating. In Scotland people bring a piece of **coal** for good luck in the New Year.

The next holiday of the year is St. Valentine's Day. It is on the 14th of February. People **buy** or make Valentine **cards** and send them to the people they love. In March there is Mother's Day. All the children and **adults** come to their mothers on that day to **express their love and gratitude**.

**Shrove Tuesday** is the last day when you can eat and do everything before the **fasting of Lent**. It also has a popular name “Pancake Day” because many people **traditionally** eat **pancakes** on this day. **Christians** usually go to **church** and confess their sins to a priest on Shrove Tuesday.

In April there is **Easter**. At Easter children eat chocolate Easter **eggs**. Sometimes parents **hide** them in the house or in the garden and children have to **look for** them. In June there is Father's Day. On Father's Day children give or send their fathers and grandfathers cards and presents.

On the 31st of October there is Halloween. They say ghosts and witches **come out** on Halloween. Some people have Halloween parties and dress as witches and ghosts. The most **memorable symbol connected to** this holiday is a **lantern** made of a pumpkin which is cut like a face and a candle is put inside of it. So it looks like a face with burning eyes. Usually people dress in colourful costumes of witches and ghosts and go to fancy dress parties. Children go from one house to another and say: “Trick or treat”. If people do not **refuse** to give them something they sing. If they do refuse, children play tricks. Halloween is on the eve of All Saints' Day. The word “Halloween” means “holy evening”.

The tradition of Halloween **goes back with its roots to** a time when people **believed** in evil spirits.

Guy Fawkes, Night is celebrated in the UK on November 5th. This tradition comes from old times when King James I was on the throne. He was a Protestant that is why Roman Catholics did not like him because of the religious differences. In 1605 Roman Catholics made a plan to **blow up** the Houses of Parliament. They placed barrels with gunpowder under the House of Lords. The man called Guy Fawkes was one of those people. Nevertheless, they did not have a chance to blow up the Parliament because the King discovered their plan, his soldiers found Guy Fawkes and executed him. This happened on November 5th. Since then British people mark this day by burning a dummy made of straw and old clothes on a bonfire. They call this dummy simply “a guy”.

The 25th of December is Christmas Day. It is one of the people's favourite holidays. People put Christmas trees in their houses, **decorate with** toys and put presents under them. There are beautiful Christmas decorations in the streets. On this day children usually hang long socks or stockings on their beds and hope that a special person will come down the chimney during the night and will bring them presents. However, Santa Claus is used **synonymously** with Father Christmas. The traditional Christmas meal is roasted turkey and Christmas pudding.

Boxing Day is celebrated on December 26th. It comes **straight away** after Christmas Day. This is an old tradition, when in old times rich people used to give their servants money or “Christmas boxes”. Now it is the day when people simply have rest or visit their friends.

Alongside public holidays there are other holidays celebrated in the UK. They are the **patron saint** days: St. David's Day on March 1st (in Wales), St. George's Day on April 23d (in England), St. Andrew's Day on November 30th (in Scotland) and St. Patrick's Day on March 17th (in Northern Ireland). The only national holiday from this list is St. Patrick's Day for the Irish.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

bank holidays, to be no longer referred to, the first of January, a piece of coal, the 14th of February, make cards, express their love and gratitude, the last day when you can eat, confess their sins to a priest, hide them in the house or in the garden, ghosts and witches, pumpkin, fancy dress parties, Trick or treat, Protestant, barrels with gunpowder, dummy made of straw, hang long socks or stockings, chimney, traditional Christmas meal, Christmas boxes, Alongside public holidays, patron saint, the only national holiday.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words and word combinations from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the essential vocabulary.**

## ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

### Vocabulary notes

**1. Celebrate** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) to show that an event or occasion is important by doing something special or enjoyable: *e. g. It's Dad's birthday and we're going out for a meal to celebrate. My folks are celebrating their 50th anniversary.* 2) to praise someone or something: *e. g. poems that celebrate the joys of love*

**celebrate Christmas/Thanksgiving etc:** *e. g. How do you usually celebrate New Year?*

**celebrate something with something:** *e. g. Harry celebrated his thirtieth birthday with a meal in a fancy restaurant.*

**in celebration of:** *e. g. In celebration of the store's grand opening, we're offering free balloons for the kids.*

**2. Rather** (adverb) 1) fairly or to some degree: *e. g. I was rather surprised to see him with his ex-wife. Abigail has always been rather a difficult child. Actually rather like the new style of architecture. It was a nice house, but rather too small for a family of four.* 2) **would rather** used to say that you would prefer to do or have something: *e. g. I'd rather have a quiet night in front of the TV. "I think you'd better ask her." "I'd rather not (=I do not want to)."* 3) **rather than** instead of: *e. g. I think you can call it a lecture rather than a talk.*

**3. Piece** (noun) 1) an amount of something that has been separated from the main part: *e. g. He broke off a piece of bread and gave it to her. Would you like a small or a large piece? She cut the cake into four equal pieces.* 2) one of the parts that something divides or breaks into: *e. g. a piece of broken glass.* 3) a single thing of a particular type, or something that is one of several similar things: *e. g. Pass me another piece of paper. You should eat three pieces of fruit a day. You need to examine every piece of evidence first. An excellent piece of work. A piece of equipment.* 4) a small amount of something that is interesting, useful, or unusual in some way: *e. g. piece of advice/information/gossip etc. Let me give you a piece of advice. We're witnessing a piece of history in the*

making. **Piece of luck/good fortune.** *It really was an extraordinary piece of luck.* 5) something that has been produced by an artist, musician, or writer (piece of music/writing/sculpture etc): *e. g. some unusual pieces of sculpture.*

**Fall to pieces** – to become old and in bad condition: *e. g. All my clothes are falling to pieces.*

**Be a piece of cake** – to be very easy to do: *e. g. Landing this type of aircraft is a piece of cake for an experienced pilot.*

**4. Express** (verb) [transitive] 1) to tell or show what you are feeling or thinking by using words, looks, or actions: *e. g. Bill's not afraid to express his opinions. She doesn't express her emotions as much as he does.*

**Express something in/by/through something:** *e. g. Express your reasons for applying in simple terms.*

**Express thanks/gratitude (for something) (to somebody)** (= thank someone in a speech or by writing a letter): *e. g. Finally, I'd like to express my sincere thanks to all those who have helped today.*

**Express yourself** (=say what you think or feel): *e. g. Young children often have difficulty expressing themselves. He first learnt to express himself through movement at his dance classes. Words can't express (= it is impossible to describe) how angry we felt.*

**5. Confess** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) admit, especially to the police, that you have done something wrong or illegal as **confess to (doing) something:** *e. g. Edwards confessed to being a spy for the KGB.* 2) to admit something that you feel embarrassed about: *e. g. Marsha confessed that she didn't really know how to work the computer.* 3) to tell a priest or God about the wrong things you have done so that you can be forgiven: *e. g. He knelt and confessed his sin.*

**I (have to/must) confess** (= used when admitting something you feel slightly embarrassed about): *e. g. I must confess I don't visit my parents as often as I should.*

**6. Hide** (verb) *past tense hid past participle hidden* [transitive] 1) to deliberately put or keep something or someone in a place where they cannot easily be seen or found: *e. g. Marcia hid the pictures in her desk drawer.* 2) to cover something so that it cannot be seen clearly: *e. g. Her tangled hair hid her face.* 3) to go or stay in a place where no one will see or find you: *e. g. Quick, he's coming! We'd better hide. Harry hid under the bed.* 4) to keep someone in a place where other people will not find them: *e. g. The old woman hid him in her cellar for three days. We'll have to hide him from the soldiers.* 5) to keep your real feelings, plans, or the truth secret, so that they cannot be known by other people as **hide your disappointment/embarrassment/confusion etc:** *e. g. She laughed to hide her nervousness. He took off his ring to hide the fact that he was married.*

**Hide your light under a bushel** – to not tell anyone that you are good at something.

**7. Come out** (phrasal verb) 1) if something comes out, it is removed from a place: e. g. *These stains will never come out!* 2) if information comes out, people learn about it, especially after it has been kept secret: e. g. *No doubt the truth will come out one day. It's come out that several ministers received payments from the company.* 3) if a photograph comes out, it shows a clear picture: e. g. *I took some photographs, but they didn't come out.* 4) if a book, record etc comes out, it becomes publicly available: e. g. *When is the new edition coming out?* 5) if something comes out in a particular way, that is what it is like after it has been made or produced: e. g. *I've made a cake, but it hasn't come out very well. The cover has come out a bit too big.* 6) if something you say comes out in a particular way, that is how it sounds or how it is understood: e. g. *His words came out as little more than a whisper. That didn't come out the way I meant it to. I tried to explain everything to her, but it came out all wrong (= not in the way I intended).* 7) if someone comes out in a particular way, that is the situation they are in at the end of an event or series of events: e. g. *The more experienced team came out on top. She came out of the divorce quite well.* 8) to be easy to notice: e. g. *His right-wing opinions come out quite strongly in his later writings.* 9) to say publicly that you strongly support or oppose a plan, belief etc: e. g. *The board of directors has come out in favour of a merger. Teachers have come out against the proposed changes. At least he's got the courage to come out and say what he thinks.* 10) if the sun, moon, or stars come out, they appear in the sky: e. g. *The sky cleared and the sun came out.*

**8. Connect** (verb) [transitive] 1) to join two or more things together: e. g. *The railway link would connect Felixstowe with Fishguard. Connect the speakers to the CD player.* 2) to realize or show that a fact, event, or person is related to something: e. g. *I didn't connect the two events in my mind.* 3) to join something to the main supply of electricity, gas, or water, or to a telephone or computer network: e. g. *Click here to connect to the Internet. Has the phone been connected yet?* 4) if one train, flight etc connects with another, it arrives just before the other one leaves so that you can continue your journey: e. g. *I missed the connecting flight. This train connects with the one to Glasgow. From Toronto you can connect to all other Air Canada destinations.* 5) to join two telephone lines so that two people can speak: e. g. *Please hold the line. I'm trying to connect you.* 6) if people connect, they feel that they like each other and understand each other: e. g. *They valued her ability to empathize and connect with others.*

**9. Make** (verb) *past tense made past participle made* [transitive] 1) to produce something, for example by putting the different parts of it together: e. g. *I'm going to show you how to make a box for your tools. Paper is made from wood. She's very good at making things from old scraps of material.* 2) used with some nouns to say that someone does something: e. g. *Anyone can make a mistake. I can't make a decision just yet. I need to make a quick phone call. You could have made more effort to talk to him.* 3) to cook or prepare food

or drink: *e. g. When was the last time you made a cake? John was making breakfast in the kitchen. I'll make you some sandwiches.* 4) to cause something to happen, or cause a particular state or condition: *e. g. Its beautiful beaches make this a highly popular area with tourists. It was this movie which made him a star.* 5) to force someone to do something: *e. g. My parents always make me do my homework before I go out. I was made to wait four hours before I was examined by a doctor.* 6) to cause a mark, hole etc to appear: *e. g. Make a hole in the paper. The cup has made a mark on the table.*

**10. Cut** (verb) *past tense cut past participle cut* [transitive] 1) to reduce the amount of something: *e. g. You need to cut the amount of fat and sugar in your diet. The welfare budget has been cut by \$ 56 billion.* 2) to divide something or separate something from its main part, using scissors, a knife etc: *e. g. Do you want me to cut the cake? The telephone wires had been cut minutes before the assault. Can you cut me a piece of bread, please? Using a pair of scissors, cut carefully along the dotted lines. Cut the orange in half.* 3) to make something shorter with a knife, scissors etc, especially in order to make it neater: *e. g. For reasons of hygiene, we had to cut our fingernails really short.* 4) to remove parts from a film, book, speech etc, for example because it is too long or might offend people: *e. g. The original version was cut by more than 30 minutes.* 5) to make a hole or mark in the surface of something, or to open it using a sharp tool: *e. g. Cut a hole in the middle of the paper.* 6) to injure yourself on something sharp that breaks the skin and makes you bleed: *e. g. I noticed he'd cut his finger quite badly. Marcie said she'd cut herself on a broken glass. That knife's extremely sharp! Mind you don't cut yourself.* 7) to make or form something from a solid piece of wood, metal etc using a sharp tool: *e. g. I'll get a spare key cut for you. The chair had been cut from the trunk of a tree.*

**11. Bring** (verb) *past tense brought past participle brought* [transitive] 1) to take something or someone with you to the place where you are now, or to the place you are talking about: *e. g. Did you bring an umbrella? It was the first time Joey had ever brought a girl home. Can you bring me another beer? He expects me to bring everything to him.* 2) to make a particular situation exist or cause a particular feeling: *e. g. efforts to bring peace to the region. The strikes are expected to bring chaos. The senator's speech brought an angry response from Civil Rights groups.* 3) to cause someone or something to reach a particular state or condition: *e. g. It was the war that first brought him to power (= make someone have power over a country). Bring the sauce to the boil (= heat it until it boils).* 4) to make something move in a particular direction as bring something up/down/round etc: *e. g. Bring your arm up slowly until it's level with your shoulder.* 5) if something brings people to a place, it makes them go there: *e. g. The discovery of gold brought thousands of people to the Transvaal. What brings you here on a night like this?* 6) if a period of time brings a particular event or situation, the event or situation happens during that time:

*e. g. The 1930s brought unemployment and economic recession. Who knows what the future will bring?*

**bring something/somebody to something/somebody:** *e. g. Is it OK if I bring some friends to the party?*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**So-called** 1) used to describe someone or something that has been given a name that you think is wrong: *The so-called experts couldn't tell us what was wrong.*

2) Used to show that something or someone is usually called a particular name: *the health threats posed by so-called "mad cow disease".*

**No longer** used when something used to happen or be true in the past but does not happen or is not true now: *The extra workers won't be needed any longer. It's no longer a secret.*

**For (good) luck** used when you take, add, or do something for no particular reason, or in order to say that you hope good things happen.

**Connected to** to be joined to something else or joined to a large system or network.

**Go trick or treating** if children go trick or treating, they dress in costumes and go from house to house on Halloween saying "trick or treat" in order to get sweets.

**Play tricks** something you do to surprise someone and to make other people laugh: *I am getting tired of your silly tricks. The girls were playing tricks on their teacher.*

**On the eve** the night or day before an important day: *on the eve of the election. We're arriving on Christmas Eve.*

**Go back (with roots) to** to have been made, built, or started at some time in the past: *It's a tradition that goes back at least 100 years. The building goes back to Roman times.*

### Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.

1. Congratulations on your promotion – we must go out and **celebrate!** 2. How would you like to **celebrated** your ruby wedding? 3. His poems **celebrate** the joys of love. 4. The graduation ceremony allows students to **celebrate** their achievements with family and friends. 5. In fact in my company we have **rather** a good scheme. 6. It indicates **rather** a degree of hesitation in the leadership of the party as to the correct cultural policy to be pursued. 7. It was **rather** a simple and healthy statement of a basic right in a partnership to be nourished by one's partner. 8. I cannot find a single **piece** of paper. 9. It was a beautifully made **piece** of furniture. 10. I bought a pack of chicken **pieces**. 11. It was a simple boat made from a few **pieces** of wood. 12. It was a truly impressive **piece** of Greek sculpture. 13. Another typical **piece** of Owen's work is the poem,



'The Sentry'. 14. One of the **pieces** in Greene's sculpture collection is valued at \$ 12,000. 15. It is the story of a middle-aged businessman, who starts going to tango lessons, and learns to **express** himself through dance. 16. Many of his films **express** the fears and anxieties of the post-war years. 17. My grandfather found it hard to **express** his feelings about the war. 18. Parents have **expressed** concern about the amount of violence in some children's shows. 19. After two days of questioning, he finally **confessed**. 20. McCarthy **confessed** to the crime shortly after his arrest. 21. She **confessed** that she had killed her husband. 22. Woods was released from jail after the real murderers **confessed**. 23. "That's OK," she said, trying to **hide** her disappointment. 24. A pair of mirrored sunglasses **hid** her eyes from view. 25. Ask me anything you want – I have nothing to **hide**. 26. Dad's coming. Quick, **hide**! 27. A few new facts **came out** at the trial. 28. As the sky grew darker, the stars **came out** one by one. 29. During the hearing it **came out** that she had tried to commit suicide. 30. Have you **connected** the speakers to the amplifier? 31. Home workers are **connected** with the office by the Internet. 32. What's Mum **making** for dessert? 33. **Cut** the fish into four pieces and serve hot or warm. 34. Is it okay if I **bring** some clothes with me to wash?

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. I can't get the ketchup to come out of the bottle. 2. We're celebrating Katie's birthday on Friday. 3. What do you want to do to celebrate our anniversary this year? 4. When Peggy turned 40, she invited 40 friends to help her celebrate. 5. It was all rather a relief. 6. Leviticus was happy with the country, though there were rather a lot of poor children around. 7. On the contrary, I think it is rather a fair way. 8. All the pieces in Mr. Crown's art collection are expensive. 9. Our satellite dish has a piece broken off of it. 10. Some of the jigsaw pieces are missing. 11. The books were eagerly borrowed and well used, and they finally fell to pieces. 12. The collection includes pieces in both oils and watercolours, with a range of still life paintings. 13. The concert began with three short pieces by the Brazilian composer Villa-Lobos. 14. The equipment had to be taken apart and transported in pieces. 15. The old wreck had been smashed to pieces on the island's rocks. 16. The Times did a nice piece on the illegal gambling. 17. Young children often find it difficult to express themselves in words. 18. A prominent anti-nuclear campaigner expressed caution about the report. 19. She doesn't express her emotions as much as he does. 20. Workers traditionally express their discontent by going on strike. 21. He confessed that she had taken the money. 22. I must confess that I do not find this to be a serious problem. 23. Dale hid behind some garbage cans in the alley until the men passed. 24. He hides his real feelings under that big smile. 25. I used to hide his cigarettes from him so he couldn't smoke. 26. He was to celebrate the inauguration in Florida. 27. There's oil

coming out of your engine. 28. Use plenty of washing powder – otherwise mud and grass stains won't come out. 29. When I turned on the tap, a brownish liquid came out. 30. Archie doesn't even make an effort to help out around the house. 31. My mother always makes a joke of everything. 32. British Telecom made over \$ 3 billion last year. 33. Henry's making lemonade.

**Exercise 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. I decided to go to the party with my husband. 2. I told them about my promotion, and we went out to party. 3. There was a noisy crowd of fans praising the victory. 4. She admitted having taken the watch. 5. I think the irises are very attractive. 6. You go to the movies; I prefer to stay home tonight. 6. It was a very expensive item of equipment. 7. He tore a part of a large curtain. 7. This jigsaw consists of 500 parts! 8. It was a musical composition performed by a famous pianist. 9. The vase became broken into small bits and the child cried. 10. I'd like to show my gratitude in some way. 11. Casual handholding can show deep love between two people. 12. She was finally able to reveal her thoughts and feelings through her music. 13. The film turned to be somewhat disappointing. 14. I interrupted to admit that I had left the door unlocked. 15. I must admit I didn't really want to come here tonight. 16. He asked me about the lines but I had to admit my ignorance. 17. I had to keep this secret from him. 18. The clouds blocked the sun for a while. 19. Her hair covered her face so that he couldn't see she was crying. 20. The facts only became known when journalists began to dig a little deeper. 21. Her new novel will be published next month. 22. Soon the sun became visible in the sky. 23. This stain cannot be removed! 24. Link these two wires and it should work. 24. She always associated that house with family celebrations. 25. She established telecommunication link with the Internet. 26. Please, divide the cake in half. 27. She injured her finger with a sharp end. 28. The heavy rain caused flooding. 29. He came back with a glass of water in his hand. 30. They decided to commemorate their anniversary by going to an Italian restaurant.

**Exercise 10. Find English equivalents for the following.**

Так званий; офіційний вихідний день; святкувати; більше не; брати початок; відноситися до; бути досить популярним; танці та пригощання; шматочок вугілля на щастя; діти та дорослі; чоловіки, жінки та діти, виражати свою любов та вдячність; масляна; млинці; повіряти свої гріхи; пасхальне яйце; традиційний символ; ліхтар; свічка; маскарад; привид; «гаманець чи життя»; вірити у; підірвати; розкрити план; католики; солома; багаття; слуги; димохід; прикрашати.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. The bushes had become overgrown and now hid the entrance to the garden. 2. The cat always hides under the bed when we have visitors. 3. They put the

money in a small box and hid it under the bed. 4. Where can we hide these presents so the kids don't find them? 5. In one tank I had, the fish panicked and hid every time I switched on the lighting. 6. So my secret can be hidden behind the sleight of a venial fib after all. 7. You would conspire with him to hide from me what I desire to know. 8. The cover has come out a bit too big. 9. He can't get the ketchup to come out of the bottle. 10. John came out to his family last year. 11. The moon came out from behind a cloud. 12. The truth about the scandal came out long after he had left office. 13. There's oil coming out of your engine. 14. Use plenty of washing powder, otherwise mud and grass stains won't come out. 15. I'd probably know Phil by sight, but I just can't connect the face and the name. 16. In the first inning, Mitchell connected for his 19th home run of the season. 17. Jennings has twisted the ligaments which connect the knee-cap and the lower part of the leg. 18. Please hold. I'll try to connect you. 19. The Golden Gate Bridge connects San Francisco with Marin County. 20. The government was planning a new railway connecting Marseille and Paris. 21. The hoses which connect the radiator to the engine are leaking. 22. The Kathmandu-Lhasa Highway connects Nepal and Tibet. 23. The scanner is connected to a computer that prints the name and price of each grocery item at the checkout. 24. The two lakes are connected by a narrow canal. 25. The umbilical cord connects the baby to the placenta.

**Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Тижнями він ховався у старому будинку. 2. Як би ти хотіла відсвяткувати свій день народження? 3. Уся його творчість прославляє красу природи та людини. 4. Такі успіхи треба відзначити вечерєю у ресторані. 5. Я був досить здивований побачити її. 6. Вона досить вродлива. 7. Я скоріше залишуся вдома, ніж піду кудись з ним! 8. Він відрізав шматок хліба та дав його дитині. 9. Ваза впала та розбилася на маленькі шматочки. 10. Візьміть клаптик паперу та напишіть своє ім'я. 11. Дозвольте дати вам одну пораду. 12. Це був дуже дивний витвір мистецтва. 13. Таке завдання йому виконати дуже легко! 14. Не бійтеся висловлювати свої думки та емоції. 15. Вона виражає себе, свій внутрішній світ за допомогою поезії. 16. Маю визнати, мені було страшно тоді. 17. Захочай це у надійному місці. 18. Вона йде. Ховаймося. 19. Давай святкувати Різдво разом! 20. Вона намагалася приховати той факт, що знала усе спочатку. 21. Такі плями ніколи не зникнуть повністю. 22. Рано чи пізно, але правда завжди стане відомою. 23. Його книгу надрукують наступного місяця. 24. Я краще проведу цей вечір із друзями. 25. Це скоріше реферат, ніж серйозна наукова стаття. 26. Чи можу я привести своїх друзів на вашу вечірку? 27. Таке не можна приховувати від батьків, негайно в усьому зізнайся! 28. Вона намагалася приховати своє розчарування в ньому та його ідеалах, але не довго. Згодом всі дізналися про її справжню думку. 29. Восени побудували нову дорогу, яка нарешті

з'єднала ці два міста. 30. З'єднайте мене з головним офісом. 31. Щоб підключитися до мережі Інтернет, треба натиснути сюди. 32. Вони завжди змушують його робити те, чого він не хоче робити, але він не може зізнатися в цьому, бо сильно їх любить. 33. Помилку зробити може кожен, а ось зізнатися у помилці – не всі. 34. Він сильно порізався, і вона принесла йому ліки. 35. Нове тисячоліття принесло нові проблеми. 36. Дозвольте виразити щиру подяку за вашу допомогу в цій справі. Мушу зізнатися, ваша участь виявилася вирішальною. 37. На передодні свята ми зібралися, щоб спланувати вечірку.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian paying attention to the construction “There is\are”.**

1. **There are** a few things we need to discuss. 2. Suddenly **there was** a loud explosion. 3. **There was** an argument. 4. **Is there** any more bread? 5. **There is** one thing I'd like to ask you. 6. **There are** a lot of problems with this theory. 7. **Were there** many people at the meeting? 8. **There is** a lot of traffic in the mornings. 9. In forecasting the future **there is** no certainty. 10. On one of them, Longstone Island, **there is** a lighthouse. 11. **There are** so many people here! 12. **Is there** any milk left? 13. **There is** not much money in his wallet. 14. There are so many good things in this world! 15. **There is** a piano and a sofa in the room.

**Exercise 2. Put the following sentences into negative and interrogative forms.**

1. There is some milk in the refrigerator. 2. There are a lot of things in her bag! 3. There are several books on that table. 4. There were too many mistakes in your test. 5. There is a letter in this box. 6. There are some postcards and stamps in my purse. 7. There was a new grammar rule in this textbook. 8. There are very many students in this classroom. 9. There is a wardrobe and a bed in my room. 10. There are three lumps of sugar in this cup. 11. There are many people here. 12. There is not much information about this person. 13. There are so many books by this author in this shop. 14. There is a boy inside that house. 15. There are many peoples in this world.

**Exercise 3. Make up 5 sentences after the model.**

**Model:** There/ be / copybooks / table.

1. There are some copybooks on the table.
2. There are no copybooks on the table.
3. Are there any copybooks on the table?

There/ be / maps / wall; There/ be / presents / Christmas tree; There/ be / tickets / bag; There/ be / ties / wardrobe; There/ be / pictures / picture album; There/ be

/ texts / book; There/ be/ exercises/ textbook; There/ be/ mistakes/ test; There/ be/ flowers/ garden; There/ be/ people/ cinema; There/ be/ letters/ mailbox; There/ be/ animals/ zoo; There/ be/ guests/ party; There/ be/ pages/ book; There/ be/ crème/ cake.

**Exercise 4. Write the plural forms of the following nouns.**

match, friend, man, woman, child, mother, card, year, cake, church, sin, priest, present, father, ghost, witch, party, root, lord, bonfire, lady, city, tie, page, ticket, picture, mouse, class, box, foot, teacher, sheep, ship, wife, life, baby.

**Exercise 5. Fill in the gaps with the following nouns and pronouns: *them, their, your, matches (2), cards, children, men, women, holidays, parties, eggs, my, mine, feet, mice, wives.***

1. You cannot make a fire without \_\_\_\_\_. 2. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ this year. 3. On that day all people, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, usually visit \_\_\_\_\_ friends. 4. We buy or make Valentine \_\_\_\_\_ and send \_\_\_\_\_ to the people we love. 5. At Easter children eat chocolate Easter \_\_\_\_\_. 6. Usually people dress in colourful costumes and go to fancy dress \_\_\_\_\_. 7. I can't find \_\_\_\_\_ keys! 8. That is not your bag, it's \_\_\_\_\_. 9. People with large \_\_\_\_\_ wear large shoes. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ are afraid of cats and cats are afraid of dogs. 11. Husbands and \_\_\_\_\_ always have something to talk about. 12. I can't find a \_\_\_\_\_ to light my cigarette.

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. У цій кімнаті занадто багато людей. 2. На столі було чимало її книг та зошитів. 3. Восьмого березня чоловіки дарують своїм жінкам подарунки. 4. Під ялинкою був лише мій подарунок, твого там не було. 5. Цього року багато вихідних та свят. 6. Його день народження цього року у неділю, тому ми будемо вітати його в понеділок. 7. Чи тут є хто-небудь? 8. Знайдіть наші контрольні роботи та дайте їм подивитися на них. 9. Діти по всьому світу люблять і чекають на Різдво. 10. У домі є маленькі діти? А дорослі тут є? 11. З цим завданням багато проблем, воно занадто важке для нас. 12. Є одне питання, яке я хочу поставити тобі. 13. В одній з цих кімнат є вікно, з якого ти можеш побачити свій дім. 14. Коти та миші ніколи не стануть друзями. 15. Увечері дружини завжди чекають на своїх чоловіків. 16. У цій коробці два подарунки: один – від твоїх братів, а один – від твоїх дітей. 17. На столі лежать ключі від машини. 18. Жінки приділяють багато уваги своїм зачіскам, тоді як чоловіки менше. 19. Цього року ти занадто часто ходиш на вечірки. 20. Квиток лежить поряд із краваткою на столі. 21. Я часто бачу кораблі у цьому порту.

## LESSON 5

Text: A visit to the dentist

Grammar: 1) The Past Indefinite

2) Прийменник (місця, напряму, часу (основні))

### A VISIT TO THE DENTIST

My tooth **hurt** through the night. I had to **take** a painkiller to lessen the **pain**. **Worst of all** I did **not get a wink of sleep** the whole night through.

The next morning I told my mother about my **toothache**. It was obvious I could not go to school. So instead she took me to the dentist. I was horrified, but I had no **choice**.

At nine o'clock we waited outside the dentist's **office**. The nurse came and opened the door. I was the first patient. She **wrote down** my particulars and told me to wait a moment. The dentist had not **arrived** yet. Meanwhile the tooth still ached like mad.

The burly dentist arrived and I was ushered to the dentist's chair. **Normally** I would run away from the frightening **surgery** with all its horrible drills and pliers, but I did not. I had to get the **offending** tooth out.

So I **sat down** on the reclining chair while the dentist **kept** saying some reassuring words. I **relaxed somewhat**. He asked me to open my mouth. I did so. He said that the tooth had to come out. I **nodded** dumbly **in reply**.

I felt a slight prick of pain when he **gave** me an injection, but that was nothing **compared** to the toothache. Soon, miraculously, all pain disappeared. The anaesthetic definitely **worked** very quickly. Then before I knew it, the dentist told me that I could go. I looked at him quizzedly and he told me he had already pulled the tooth out. **What wonder**, I did not even **feel** it.

The dentist put a wad of cotton over the wound and he told me to **keep** my mouth shut for a while. I nodded, smiled and went out into the waiting room where my mother was waiting for me. The visit to the dentist was not too bad after all.

**READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES**

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

hurt through the night, take a painkiller, get a wink of sleep, toothache, instead, no choice, dentist's office, patient, wrote down, like mad, dentist's chair, Normally, frightening surgery, kept saying, relaxed, come out, nodded, prick of pain, injection, compared, disappeared, anaesthetic, quizzedly, pulled out, to keep my mouth shut, nodded, waiting room, after all

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words and word combinations from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the vocabulary notes.**

**ESSENTIAL VOCABULARU****Vocabulary notes**

**1. Hurt** (verb) [intransitive] 1) to feel pain in part of your body, e. g. *My back hurts.* 2) [transitive] to injure yourself or someone else, e. g. *I can't go running this week – I've hurt my foot.* 3) [transitive] to cause pain in a part of your body, e. g. *The sun's hurting my eyes.* 4) [intransitive and transitive] to make someone feel upset etc, e. g. *I didn't mean to hurt your feelings.*

**2. Take** (verb) 1) action [transitive] used with a noun instead of using a verb to describe an action. If you take a walk, you walk somewhere, e. g. *Would you like to take a look? Mike's just taking a shower. Sara took a deep breath. Will you take a seat, please.* 2) [transitive] to move or go with someone or something from one place to another [ $\neq$  bring], e. g. *Would you mind taking Susie home?* 3) time/money/effort etc [intransitive and transitive] if something takes a particular amount of time, money, effort etc, that amount of time etc is needed for it to happen or succeed, e. g. *It took a few minutes for his eyes to adjust to the dark.* 4) [transitive] to get hold of something in your hands, e. g. *Let me take your coat.* 5) [transitive] to use a particular form of transport or a particular road in order to go somewhere, e. g. *I took the first plane out.*

6) [transitive] to study a particular subject in school or college for an examination, e. g. *Are you taking French next year?*

**3. Pain** (noun) 1) [uncountable and countable] the feeling you have when part of your body hurts, e. g. *have a pain in your stomach/leg/side etc.* 2) the feeling of unhappiness you have when you are sad, upset, etc.

Collocations: have a pain in your stomach/leg/side etc be in pain chest pain/back pain/neck pain etc severe/terrible/chronic pain sharp pain (= a short but severe pain) excruciating pain (= very severe pain) dull pain (= one that is not severe but continues for a long time) nagging pain (= one that continues for a long time and keeps bothering you) shooting pain (= a severe pain that starts in one place then quickly moves to another) ease/relieve/kill pain relief/control inflict pain (on somebody) labour pains (= pain felt by a woman who is starting to have a baby) aches and pains (= slight feelings of pain that are not very serious) Pain (verb) [transitive] it pains somebody to do something formal (used to say that it is very difficult and upsetting for someone to have to do something), e. g. *His war wound which had pained him earlier was now turning to agony.*

**4. Ache** (noun) 1) a continuous pain that is not sharp or very strong, e. g. *a stomach ache.* 2) a strong, mostly unhappy, feeling, e. g. *the ache of his loneliness.*

**Ache** (verb) [intransitive] 1) if part of your body aches, you feel a continuous, but not very sharp pain there [= hurt], e. g. *His feet were aching from standing so long.* 2) to want to do or have something very much, e. g. *I'm aching for sleep. He ached to reach out and hold her close.*

**5. Choice** (noun) 1) [uncountable and countable] if you have a choice, you can choose between several things [↔ choose], e. g. *You have a choice – you can stay here on your own or you can come with us.* 2) [singular] the range of people or things that you can choose from, e. g. *It was a small shop and there wasn't much choice.*

**Choose** (verb) 1) to decide which one of a number of things or people you want [↔ choice], e. g. *It took us ages to choose a new carpet.* 2) to decide to do something because that is what you prefer to do, e. g. *I chose to ignore his advice.*

**6. Office** (noun) [countable] 1) a building that belongs to a company or organization, with rooms where people can work at desks, e. g. *The agency has a network of regional offices.* 2) a room where someone has a desk and works, on their own or with other people, e. g. *Frank shares an office with Shirley.* 3) an important job or position with power, especially in government, e. g. *A campaign began to run for the office of President.* 4) (American English) the place where a doctor or dentist examines or treats people [= surgery British English]. 5) a room or building where people go to ask for information, buy tickets etc, e. g. *information/ticket office.*



**7. Patient** (noun) [countable] someone who is receiving medical treatment from a doctor or in a hospital. **Patient** (adj) able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept difficulties, people's annoying behaviour etc without becoming angry, e. g. *I'm sure she'll write soon. Just try to be patient.* **Patiently** (adverb), e. g. *He waited patiently for Katherine to speak.*

**8. Arrive** (verb) 1) (get somewhere) to get to the place you are going to, e. g. *What time does the plane arrive in New York?* 2) (be delivered) if something arrives, it is brought or delivered to you, e. g. *The card arrived on my birthday.* 3) (happen) if an event or particular period of time arrives, it happens, e. g. *When her wedding day arrived, she was really nervous.* 4) to be born, e. g. *Sharon's baby arrived just after midnight.* **Arrival** (noun) 1) [uncountable and countable] when someone or something arrives somewhere, e. g. *Congratulations on your new arrival!* 2) **arrivals** the place at an airport where people arrive when they get off a plane, e. g. *arrivals lounge.*

**9. Offend** (verb) 1) [intransitive and transitive] to make someone angry or upset by doing or saying something that they think is rude, unkind etc, e. g. *He didn't speak during the meeting for fear of saying something that might offend.* 2) [intransitive] (formal) to commit a crime or crimes, e. g. *Many of the young men here are likely to offend again.* 3) **offend against** [intransitive and transitive] (formal) to be against people's feelings of what is morally acceptable, e. g. *Broadcasters have a responsibility not to offend against good taste and decency.* **Offense** (noun) [countable] 1) (criminal offence serious/minor offence, commit an offence, driving/parking etc. offence) an illegal action or a crime, e. g. *The possession of stolen property is a criminal offence.* 2) **take offence (at something)** to feel offended because of something someone says or does, e. g. *I think he took offence at my lack of enthusiasm.* 3) [uncountable] (formal) the act of attacking, e. g. *the weapon of offence used during the attack.*

**10. Keep** (verb) 1) not change [linking verb, transitive] to stay in a particular state, condition, or position, or to make someone or something do this, e. g. *keep (somebody/something) warm/safe/dry etc, I don't know how he managed to keep his sense of humour with all he's been through. It's hard to keep the house clean with three kids.* 2) continue doing something (also keep on) [intransitive] to continue doing something or to do the same thing many times, e. g. *keep (on) doing something. I keep thinking about Joe, all alone in that place.* 3) not lose [transitive] to continue to have something and not lose it or get rid of it, e. g. *We decided to keep our old car instead of selling it.* 4) store something [transitive always + adverb/preposition] to leave something in one particular place so that you can find it easily, e. g. *Where do you keep your tea bags?* 5) keep (somebody/something) from something to prevent someone from doing something or prevent something from happening, e. g. *The play was so boring, I could hardly keep myself from falling asleep.*

**Phrases:** keep your word/promise, keep a secret, keep somebody waiting.

**11. Nod** (verb) 1) to move your head up and down, especially in order to show agreement or understanding, e. g. *I asked her if she was ready to go, and she nodded.* 2) to move your head down and up again once in order to greet someone or give someone a sign to do something, e. g. *The teacher nodded at John to proceed.* **Nod** (noun) 1) [countable] an act of nodding: e. g. *The woman greeted us with a nod of the head.*

**12. Disappear** (verb) 1) [intransitive] to become impossible to see any longer, e. g. *disappear behind/under/into etc, She watched the boat sail out to sea until it disappeared over the horizon.* 2) to stop existing, e. g. *The rain forest may disappear forever.*

**13. Pull** (verb) 1) [intransitive and transitive] to move something towards you, to use your hands to make something or someone move towards you or in the direction that your hands are moving, e. g. *Pull the chair nearer to the table.* 2) [transitive always + adverb/preposition] to take something out of a bag, pocket etc with your hand, e. g. *Ben pulled a pen from his pocket.* 3) pull somebody's leg to tell someone something that is not true, as a joke, e. g. *I haven't won, have I? You're pulling my leg.* **Pull** (noun) [countable] an act of using force to move something towards you or in the same direction that you are moving, e. g. *He gave her a sharp pull forward.*

**14. Feel** (verb) 1) [linking verb, transitive] to experience a particular physical feeling or emotion, e. g. *Do you still feel hungry?* 2) [transitive not in progressive] to notice something that is happening to you, especially something that is touching you, e. g. *She felt his warm breath on her cheek.* 3) feel like (doing) something spoken to want to have something or do something, e. g. *He didn't feel like going to work.* 4) [transitive] to touch something with your fingers to find out about it, e. g. *She felt his forehead. Perhaps he had a temperature.* **Feel** (noun) [singular] a quality that something has that makes you feel or think a particular way about it, e. g. *I love the feel of leather.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**Arrive at a decision/solution/compromise etc** to reach a decision, solution etc after a lot of effort.

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. He felt a sharp **pain** in his knee.
2. This cream should help to relieve the **pain**.
3. I never meant to cause her **pain**.
3. It's a **pain** having to go all that way for just one meeting.
4. The doctor buzzed for the next **patient** to come in.
5. She sat **patiently** waiting for her turn.
6. You'll just have to be **patient** and wait till I'm finished.
7. The company is moving to new **offices** on the other side of town.
8. Come into my **office**.
9. The movie broke all **box-office** records.
10. She held

**office** as a cabinet minister for ten years. 11. The boys were **taken** to see their grandparents most weekends. 12. She **took** English as her major at the university. 13. It **takes** a lot of effort to get an A in philosophy course. 14. We **took** a plain to Boston. 15. My back is really **hurting** me today. 16. It **hurts** when I bend my knee. 17. I didn't want to **hurt** his feelings. 18. Her eyes **ached** from lack of sleep. 19. She is **aching** for seeing her friend. 20. She has an **ache** in her heart after splitting with friends. 21. There is a wide range of **choices** open to our students. 22. He had no **choice** but to leave. 23. This site has been **chosen** for the new school. 24. Many people **choose** not to marry. 25. We apologize for the late **arrival** of the train. 27. A letter **arrived** for you this morning. 28. The baby **arrived** (= was born) early. 29. A TV interviewer must be careful not to **offend**. 30. He started **offending** at the age of 16. 31. He was not aware that he had committed an **offence**. 32. No one will take **offence** if you leave early. 33. He **nodded** his head sympathetically. 34. She **nodded** at him to begin speaking. 35. She gave me a **nod** of content when I arrived. 36. She **kept** the children amused for hours. 37. Don't **keep** on interrupting me! 38. Our countryside is **disappearing** at an alarming rate. 39. I **pulled** on the rope to see if it was secure. 40. **Pull** the curtains – it's dark outside. 41. He **felt** a hand touching his shoulder. 42. This wallet **feels** like leather.

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. Many people choose not to marry. 2. This site has been chosen for the new school. 3. At the time he experienced the pleasures and pains of growing old. 4. She can be a real pain when she's in a bad mood. 5. Some people have to share an office. 6. He little girl hated to go the dentist's office. 7. The present government took office in 2005. 8. Shall I take my host family a gift? 9. A boy took us to our room. 10. It will take years to cultivate these lands. 11. We took a room at the hotel for two nights. 12. Do you take sugar in your coffee? 13. You can take pictures while travelling. 14. Mother always gave me a nod of approval when I did the right thing. 15. I asked where Steve was and she nodded in the direction of the kitchen. 16. Don't pull so hard or the handle will come off. 17. The notice said "Keep off the grass". 18. Te old woman kept grumbling until we left. 19. Keep your passport in a safe place. 20. The arrival of canals was of great value to many industries.

**Exercise 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. It was **painful** for Mary to move after she fell. 2. They have to **decide whether** to do it or not. 3. Jane **took** a handkerchief out of her pocket to wipe her tears away. 4. Peter did not mean to **hurt** his mother when he decided to leave. 5. James was ambitious and wanted to run for the vacant **position** in the

company as soon as possible. 6. Helen showed me her agreement with a **move of her head**. 7. The letter **came** unexpectedly. 8. My roommate is planning **to study** Geology this semester. 9. We watched the boat until it **became invisible** in the fog. 10. I can't **stop thinking** about her final words. 11. His younger brother found out where he **stored** his treasures. 12. Her words did not cause any **bad feelings**, he just ignored them. 13. His **coming** this time was not a surprise to anybody. 14. The room was overcrowded with **sick people**. 15. His mother **touched** his cheek. It was purple. 16. He was **joking** when he said this. 17. Kate **broke** her promise again. 18. Such actions in some countries are treated as **crimes**. 19. The teacher waited **calmly** for the student to begin answering the question. 20. They decided **to go** to Paris **by** bus.

**Exercise 10. Find English equivalents for the following and make up your own sentences.**

Поранити ногу, балотуватися на посаду, кортіти малювати, прибути до дня народження, вчинити правопорушення, займати час, вирішити зробити що-небудь, схвально кивнути, нетерпляче ходити туди сюди (up and down), вирішити вивчати психологію, жартувати над кимось, сісти на поїзд, образитись на кого-небудь, зробити вибір, триматися правої сторони, притягти стілець до столу, зникнути у темряві, кивнути зайти до класу, тримати продукти харчування, зайняти місце.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Dan was a good man. He'd never hurt anyone deliberately. 2. I can't go running this week. I've hurt my foot. 3. I would never do anything to hurt her. 4. It hurts my knees to run. 5. "Where's Dan?" "He's taken the car to the garage." 6. Anna will be taking her music exam in the summer. 7. Did he take your advice? 8. He told the doctor he was suffering from chest pains. 9. Over time, the pain usually lessens and goes away, but this may take several months to several years. 10. Every inch of my body ached after skiing. 11. She had been aching for him since she had first seen him. 12. I told him to drive more slowly, but he chose to ignore my advice. 13. It took her three hours to choose which dress to wear. 14. I never really enjoyed working in an office. 15. A provisional military government has taken office. 16. How can he be so patient under the circumstances? 17. St Dominic's Hospital treats about 10,000 patients a year. 18. Has your sister's baby arrived yet? 19. The packages arrived the day before Christmas. 20. Joe's sudden arrival spoiled all our plans. 21. She stopped mid-sentence, anxious not to offend him. 22. Driving when drunk is a criminal offence. 23. I am sure he took offence when I told the truth. 24. Do you think this bacon will keep till tomorrow? 25. I keep all my tickets and boarding passes as souvenirs. 26. Keep to the left when driving in Japan. 27. With a nod

and a smile she left. 28. John asked the permission to take the books and Jane nodded. 29. Everyone took hold of the rope and pulled hard. 30. “The flowers look so real – I can't believe they're silk,” she said, feeling the petals.

**Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Картину малювали майже два роки. 2. Його прибуття на конференцію було несподіванкою. 3. Хворому було важко рухатися через біль у нозі. 4. Мати зробила схвальний жест, коли син вирішив розповісти батькові правду. 5. Коли речі зникли їх навіть ніхто не намагався шукати. 6. Зараз тобі вирішувати, або йти до лікаря, або ні. 7. Після хвороби він навідувався у свій кабінет тричі на тиждень. 8. Мати розуміла, що донька щось від неї приховує. 9. Працею терпляче і досягнеш успіху. 10. Їй було боляче дивитись на гори. 11. Притягни стіл до вікна, вже вечоріє. 12. Після третього курсу вона вирішила пройти курс синхронного перекладу. 13. У дитинстві хлопчик вчиняв правопорушення, але зараз він гарна людина. 14. Це була невеличка бібліотека, і вибір книжок був невеликий. 15. Вона страждала, коли побачила зруйноване місто. 16. Ніхто вас не образить, якщо ви будете гідно себе поводити. 17. Міністр прибув до Лондону, щоб зустрітися зі своїм британським колегою (counterpart). 18. Вона не давала дитині їсти багато солодкого. 19. Вона продовжувала їсти незважаючи на наш прихід. 20. Поводити себе за кордоном треба так, щоб це не зачіпляло гідність місцевого населення.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Translate the following exercises into Ukrainian paying attention to the form of the predicate.**

1. Peter gave his brother some toys to play with. 2. Who did you turn for help when you were in trouble? 3. They used to be friends. 4. She felt ill and did not go to work. 5. They were happy and did not want to go home. 6. It rained all morning yesterday. 7. He woke up at six and went to work at seven. 8. The students did not make many mistakes in the test, did they? 9. They were born in London. 10. Who spoke French in your group?

**Exercise 2. Put the following sentences into negative and interrogative forms.**

1. Simon liked his job very much. 2. She told her friend all about it. 3. They used to live in the country. 4. John spoke three foreign languages. 5. They were angry about this fact. 6. Mary was pleased to hear about her son's progress. 7. He said he lived in Spain. 8. They worked all night in order to be ready in the morning. 9. It was strange to see that. 10. The examiner asked his students a lot of questions.

**Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences with a focus on prepositions.**

1. During school they spent a lot of time in the gym. 2. Mary will come tomorrow and Jane will come in three days. 3. We are not going until three. 4. They will have built the new school by the 1<sup>st</sup> of September. 5. He was born on April 25, 1967. 6. The celebrations began in June. 7. Sarah will be busy from 6 to/till 9 o'clock. 8. We are going on a picnic on Sunday. 9. It is terribly cold in these parts in winter. 10. They haven't seen each other for three months. 11. Don't come in at three sharp; come either before or after this time.

**Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps with appropriate prepositions.**

1. The Smiths usually go on holiday ... July, but this year they plan to go ... winter. 2. Peter wakes up late ... Sunday. 3. Sarah will be busy ... 9 ... 10 ... the evening. 4. You may come either ... or ... 3 o'clock, but don't come ... 3 sharp. 5. John came ... night. Everybody was sleeping. 6. ... the lesson students read, write and speak English. 7. Mary waited for Kate ... 5 and then left. 8. The lecturer from London promised to come again ... three months. 9. They did not study Chinese ... last year. 10. The Blacks will have finished building the cottage ... the middle of June.

**Exercise 5. Fill in the gaps with appropriate prepositions.**

1. They came ... the classroom and stayed there till the end ... the lesson. 2. She left ... Kyiv a few days ago. 3. Does Jane live ... Alex? 4. Do not go ... the room. You will get lost. 5. There was a beautiful chandelier ... my head. 6. The cat was sitting ... the floor ... the table. 7. Take the cup ... Jane and put it ... the table. 8. Sheila lives a long way ... school. 9. They arrived ... New York late and went ... the hotel at once. 10. I hate to sit ... the window. 11. I came ... the Carpathian Mountains yesterday. 12. That river flows ... the North, ... the Atlantic ocean ... which brings its waters. 13. Take your hands ... the pockets, boy. 14. A fast train takes you ... Kyiv ... the Crimea ... 15 hours. 15. There was only one woman ... the bus stop. 16. The boy stood ... corner. He was punished. 17. Take the cup ... Mary and put it ... the table. 18. He poured some coffee ... his cup and enjoyed it until everybody came. 19. Is he ... school now or ... the club? 20. John hated to sit ... Jane, she always made fun of him. 21. Try to fix the picture ... the wall and go back ... your seat. 22. Where is my pen? It is ... the floor ... your desk. 23. We will fix the map ... the blackboard so that everyone can see it. 24. There is a chemist's ... the corner of the street, so you can get the medicine there. 25. They arrived ... London late and had to put up ... a hostel.

**Exercise 6. Fill in the gaps with appropriate articles.**

1. In the Zoo we saw ... lion, ... crocodile, ... foxes and wolves, and many other exotic animals. 2. There were ... two spoons and ... cup on the table. 3. Henry,

... owner of the pub, came up to us and asked ... few questions. 4. ... elephant lives in ... Central Africa and ... India. 5. Mary was ... only child in the family. 6. ... only way out of the situation was to speak to ... boss. 7. What ... clever student! She is ... smartest student in the class. 8. We went to ... cinema yesterday and saw ... interesting film about ... animals. 9. Was ... weather on that day dull? I hate ... dull weather. 10. Does she live in ... county? No, she lives in ... town.

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Студенти працювали у читальному залі з п'ятої до восьмої години. 2. Де ви жили до війни? 3. Він не вчасно прийшов на заняття, тому не мав часу закінчити тест. 4. Коли пацієнт відчув біль у нозі? – О десятій годині. 5. Який фільм ви дивилися учора? 6. Що у вас було на сніданок? 7. Викладач дав студентам домашнє завдання, і вони його уважно записали. 8. Минулого року Сара не була у відпустці. 9. Коли ви підете у лікарню? – Через тиждень. 10. Вони не лягали спати доки тато не повернувся з роботи. 11. Заходьте у кімнату та сідайте за стіл. 12. У липні дощів не було, а у серпні було вже запізно. 13. Я не знав, що вона працювала двадцять п'ятого квітня. 14. Я чекав на вас з другої години. Чому ви не прийшли. 15. Вони одружились того року? – Так, і це була гарна подія. 16. Вона так і не навчилася керувати автомобілем. 17. Скільки років вона там працювала? – З 1995. 18. Вона вирішила не йти на хімічний факультет, тому що захоплювалася іноземними мовами. 19. Над його головою висіла велика куля і він боявся ворухнутися. 20. Вона дістала листа з кишені і кинула його на стіл.

## LESSON 6

Text: Free Time Activities

Grammar: 1) The Future Indefinite

2) Adverb clauses of time and condition

3) Possessive Pronouns

4) The Possessive Case

### FREE TIME ACTIVITIES

The weekends are time for families in Britain. Often the parents are not at work having worked a five day week from Monday to Friday.

British people **enjoy** various indoor and outdoor activities. An Euro stat survey, the EU's statistical office, **discovered** that people in Britain spend about 45 % of their free time watching television, 24 % of their free time socializing, 22–23 % on sport and hobbies, and 10 % on other activities. Other popular **leisure** activities are listening to the radio, listening to pre-recorded music, reading, DIY, gardening, eating out and going to the cinema.

Saturday is traditionally the day for shopping and watching sports. The most **common** leisure activity in the UK is watching television and listening to the radio. The **average** viewing time is 25 hours per person per week. Almost all households have **at least** one television set. Many television programmes are about wildlife, animals, holidays, cooking and gardening. All these things are much cherished by British people. People in Britain listen to an average 15 hours and 50 minutes of radio each week.

Sundays **used to** be a very special day of the week in Britain. It was the one day of the week for “worship and rest”. The shops were closed and most people were at home or at church. Popular leisure activities on Sunday used to be going to church and doing odd jobs around the home such as gardening and **DIY** (Do It Yourself).

The British are known as a nation of gardeners. Most people have a garden on their **property**. Gardening has been a popular pastime since Roman times. Many people in Britain **are proud of** their houses and gardens. They want their houses and gardens to look nice. Every town in Britain has one or more DIY (Do it Yourself) centres and garden centres. These are like supermarkets for the home and garden. These places are very popular with British home-owners at the weekends.

Sports and physical recreation have always been popular. Local governments **provide** cheap sport and leisure **facilities** such as swimming pools, tennis courts, parks and golf courses. People go to watch other people play sports like football or take part in sports themselves.



The other popular activities in Britain are visiting or entertaining friends or relations, visiting cinema (Movie house), Britons made 123 million visits to the cinema in 1998 making it the most popular cultural activity in the UK. **Eating out** has grown in popularity, with British people spending in 1999 an average of £ 5.63 per person per week on food (excluding alcohol) outside the home.

The most popular leisure activity outside the home is going to the pub. The word pub is short for public house. There are over 60,000 pubs in the UK. One of the oldest pubs, Fighting Cocks in St. Albans, Herts, is located in a building that dates back to the eleventh century. Pubs are an important part of British life. People talk, eat, drink, meet their friends and **relax** there. Pubs often have two bars, one usually quieter than the other, many have a garden where people can sit in the summer. Children can go in pub gardens with their parents.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

Indoor / outdoor activities, leisure activities, survey, to enjoy, shopping, households, to be cherished by, wildlife, worship, rest, church, odd job, DIY (Do It Yourself), property, gardening, pastime, to be proud of, home-owners, recreation, local governments, to take part in, entertaining, eating out.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 5. Study the essential vocabulary.**

## ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

### Vocabulary notes

**1. Enjoy** (verb) [transitive] **1. To get pleasure from something**, e. g. *Sandra enjoys her job in the city. I enjoyed every minute of it.* **2. Formal to have a particular ability or advantage**, e. g. *These workers enjoy a high level of job security!* Enjoy is never followed by a preposition, and almost always has an object: *Did you enjoy it?* **3. Enjoy!** *spoken* **used to say that you hope someone gets pleasure from something you give them**, e. g. *Here's your steak – enjoy!* **4. Enjoy doing something**, e. g. *Young children enjoy helping around the house.* **5. Enjoy yourself** (= be happy in a particular situation), e. g. *Julia was just starting to enjoy herself.*

**2. Proud** (adjective) (*comparative prouder, superlative proudest*) **1. Feeling pleased about something that you have done or something that you own, or about someone or something you are involved with or related to.** Proud of, e. g. *Her parents are very proud of her. You should be proud of yourself;* **2. Be justly/rightly proud of something** (= have good reasons for being proud), e. g. *The company is justly proud of its achievements;* **proud to do/be something**, e. g. *Seven-year-old Ian is proud to have earned his red belt in karate;* **proud (that)** e. g. *She was proud that the magazine had agreed to publish one of her stories.* **3. Proudest moment /achievement/ possession etc** that makes you feel most proud, e. g. *His proudest moment was winning the European Cup final.* **4. Too high opinion** thinking that you are more important, skillful etc than you really are – used to show disapproval [pride], e. g. *A proud man who would not admit his mistakes.* **5. Great self-respect** having respect for yourself, so that you are embarrassed to ask for help when you are in a difficult situation [pride], e. g. *Some farmers were too proud to ask for government help.* **6. Do somebody proud** *informal* to make people feel proud of you by doing something well, e. g. *I tried to do my country proud.*

**3. Property** (noun) *plural properties* **1.** [uncountable] **The thing or things that someone owns**, e. g. *The hotel is not responsible for any loss or damage to guests' personal property. Some of the stolen property was found in Mason's house.* **2.** [uncountable and countable] **A building, a piece of land, or both together**, e. g. *Property prices have shot up recently. The property market. A sign saying 'Private Property. Keep Out'. Property taxes. Commercial/residential property.* **3.** [countable usually plural] **A quality or power that a substance, plant etc has** [= quality, characteristic], e. g. *A herb with healing properties;* **physical/chemical etc properties**, e. g. *The chemical properties of a substance.*

**4. Discover** (verb) [transitive] **1. To find someone or something, either by accident or because you were looking for them**, e. g. *The body was discovered in a field. Forest Service crews often discover campfires that have not been put out completely.* **2. To find out something that you did not know about before**, e. g. *The exercises let students discover math concepts on their own;* **discover (that)**, e. g. *She discovered that she was pregnant;* **discover who/what/how etc**, e. g. *His friends were shocked to discover how ill he was.* **3. If someone discovers a new place, fact, substance etc, they are the first person to find it or know that it exists**, e. g. *The Curies are best known for discovering radium.* **4. To notice someone who is very good at something and help them to become successful and well-known**, e. g. *A band that's waiting to be discovered;* **5. Discovery** (noun) *plural discoveries*, e. g. *Recent archaeological discoveries.*

**5. Common** (adjective) **1. Happening often and to many people or in many places** [ $\neq$  rare], e. g. *Heart disease is one of the commonest causes of death;* **common among**, e. g. *Bad dreams are fairly common among children.*

**It's common for somebody to do something**, e. g. *It's common for new fathers to feel jealous of the baby. It is common for children to be afraid.* **2. Existing in large numbers** [ $\neq$  rare], e. g. *Daisies are very common flowers.* **3. Same/similar** [usually before noun, no comparative] common aims, beliefs, ideas etc are shared by several people or groups, e. g. *People working towards a common goal. Countries that share a common language.* **4. Ordinary** [only before noun, no comparative] ordinary and not special in any way, e. g. *The twentieth century was called the century of the common man (= ordinary people). He insists that he is a revolutionary not a common criminal.*

**6. Average** (adjective) **1. The average amount is the amount you get when you add together several quantities and divide this by the total number of quantities**, e. g. *The age of the candidates ranged from 29 to 49 with an average age of 37. The average cost of making a movie has risen by 15 %. Last winter was colder than average. The cars were being sold at an average price of \$ 11000.* **2. An average amount or quantity is not unusually big or small**, e. g. *They have an average-size front garden and a large rear garden; of average height/build/intelligence etc., e. g. He was in his late twenties and of average height.* **3. Having qualities that are typical of most people or things**, e. g. *The average American has not even thought about next year's election. In an average week I drive about 250 miles.* **4. Neither very good nor very bad**, e. g. *My hometown is ordinary, but I like it anyway.*

**7. Leisure** (noun) [uncountable] **1. Time when you are not working or studying and can relax and do things you enjoy**, e. g. *Most people now enjoy shorter working hours and more leisure time. Watching television is now the nation's most popular leisure activity. The hotel offers various leisure facilities such as a swimming pool and sauna. The leisure industry is now an important part of the economy.* **2. At (your) leisure** if you do something at your leisure, you do it slowly and without hurrying, e. g. *Come round for lunch and then we can discuss it at leisure. Take the leaflets home and read them at your leisure.* **3. Gentleman/lady of leisure** someone who does not have to work – used humorously, e. g. *So you're a lady of leisure now that the kids are at school?*

**8. Relax** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] **1. To rest or do something that is enjoyable, especially after you have been working**, e. g. *I just want to sit down and relax. What Robyn needed was a drink to relax her. A hot bath should help to relax you.* **2. [intransitive and transitive] To become quiet and calm after you have been upset or nervous, or to make someone do this**, e. g. *Once out of danger, he started to relax. Relax! Everything's fine.* **3. Muscle** [intransitive and transitive] **if you relax a part of your body or it relaxes, it becomes less stiff or less tight**, e. g. *Gentle exercise can relax stiff shoulder muscles.* **4. [transitive] To make a rule or law less strict; relax rules/ regulations/controls**, e. g. *Hughes believes that immigration controls should not be relaxed.*

**9. Provide** (verb) [transitive] **1. To give something to someone or make it available to them, because they need it or want it** [provision], e. g. *Tea and biscuits will be provided.* **Provide something for somebody**, e. g. *The hotel provides a shoe-cleaning service for guests;* **provide somebody with something** *The project is designed to provide young people with work. The search provided the police with several vital clues.* **2. To produce something useful as a result**, e. g. *We are hoping the enquiry will provide an explanation for the accident.*

**10. Facility** (noun) *plural facilities* **1. Facilities** [plural] **rooms, equipment, or services that are provided for a particular purpose**, e. g. *All rooms have private facilities (= private bathroom and toilet). The hotel has its own pool and leisure facilities.* **2.** [countable usually singular] **A special part of a piece of equipment or a system which makes it possible to do something**, e. g. *Is there a call-back facility on this phone? A bank account with an overdraft facility.* **3.** [countable] **A place or building used for a particular activity or industry, or for providing a particular type of service**, e. g. *A top-secret research facility.* **4.** [singular] **A natural ability to do something easily and well [= talent]** **facility for**, e. g. *She has an amazing facility for languages.* **5. The facilities** *American English spoken the toilet*, used to be polite, e. g. *Excuse me, I have to use the facilities.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**1. At least 1. Not less than a particular number or amount**, e. g. *It will take you at least 20 minutes to get there. He had at least £ 100,000 in savings.* **2. Even if something better is not true or is not done**, e. g. *At least he didn't lie to me; I don't expect you to pay me, but you could at least cover my expenses; The house still needed a lot of work, but at least the kitchen was finished.*

**2. Used to** **1. If something used to happen, it happened regularly or all the time in the past, but does not happen now**, e. g. *He used to go to our school; We're eating out more often than we used to; did not use to do something*, e. g. *You didn't use to eat chips when you were younger; used not to do something (British English)*, e. g. *You used not to fuss like this.* **2. If particular situation used to exist, it existed for a period of time in the past, but does not exist now**, e. g. *Jimmy used to be a friend of mine. There used to be a large car park on this site; Why are you so bad-tempered? You didn't use to be like this; Did this building use to be a hotel?*

**3. Do it yourself (DIY)** (noun) [uncountable] **The activity of doing or making something (as in woodworking or home repair) without professional training or assistance.**

**4. Eat out** (phrasal verb) **To eat in a restaurant instead of at home**, e. g. *Do you eat out a lot?*

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. They **enjoyed** a large income from their investments. 2. Her research led to a number of important **discoveries** about the disease. 3. Her **proudest** accomplishment was to finish school. 4. A unique **property** of garlic is its strong odor. 5. John enjoys his new job in this company. 6. The Web site **provides** users with information about local activities. 7. It is **common** practice for one town's fire department to help another town when there is a big fire. 8. An **average** of 2,000 people attended the show each night. 9. Just **relax**, there's nothing to worry about. 10. I don't have much time for **leisure**. 11. The **facilities** are at the end of the corridor. 12. Take all these temperatures and find their **average**. 13. The school **provided** new uniforms for the band. 14. We are not responsible for the loss of **personal property**. 15. His past record is certainly something **to be proud of**. 16. My favourite **leisure activity** is definitely reading. 17. Several new species of plants have recently been **discovered**.

**Exercise 7. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. It was a proud day for him when his son entered college. 2. I could never enjoy myself, knowing you were alone at home. 3. The courage to discover the truth and possibly be disappointed. 4. He enjoys an excellent income from his trust funds. 5. I have all my property in land. 6. It was one of the most important discoveries in the history of medicine. 7. They did themselves proud in a game that sent their fans home happy. 8. The people on the island have a sense of common identity. 9. They have a common ancestor. 10. He had a facility for languages. 11. His taxes should average out to about a fifth of his income. 12. On average, women live longer than men. 13. Prices have increased on average about eight percent. 14. Because of the failure of the magazine, many experienced editors are now at leisure. 15. Take this book and read it at your leisure. 16. The pianist played with great facility. 17. Scientists announced the discovery of a new species of plant. 18. Gordon Leisure Centre is a wet and dry facility which includes several large courts, game-hall, a spinning room, squash courts and a meeting room. 19. Simon relaxed and smiled confidently. 20. The ministry relaxed some of the restrictions. 21. The store provides its customers with excellent service. 22. During our trip we were provided with a map of the area. 23. Her proudest accomplishment was to finish school. 24. Coffee and doughnuts will be provided at the meeting. 25. I can't relax with all this noise! 26. He has a proud manner. 27. In summer many animals provide their winter food. 28. He enjoys Chinese food. 29. The curtains on the windows provide privacy. 30. He provided against financial ruin by wise investment.

**Exercise 8. Paraphrase the following sentence using the essential vocabulary.**

1. Physicists believe they found a new elementary particle. 2. I liked that movie a lot more than I thought I would. 3. What is the median price of homes in this area? 4. Most of her real estate is in New Mexico. 5. The company supplied the necessary money. 6. He says the usual things. 7. There were moderate levels of chemicals in the lake. 8. A family of moderate income. 9. Do you like Mexican food? 10. What I need is some rest and relaxation. 11. The city is known for its outstanding medical complex. 12. I went inside and tried to calm down. 13. The sailor and his crew were found safe and well last night. 14. You'll have to supply your own food. 15. He doesn't earn enough to feed a family of four.

**Exercise 9. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. Насолоджуватися життям. 2. Пишатися досягненнями своїх дітей. 3. Державна власність. 4. Відкривати нові землі. 5. Робити важливі відкриття. 6. Загальноприйняті норми поведінки у суспільстві. 7. Звичайна справа. 8. Середня тривалість життя. 9. Відпочинок на Середземному морі. 10. Мати здатність до іноземних мов. 11. Умови для відпочинку. 12. Вправа для зняття напруги. 13. Просто розслабся та відпочинь від усіх турбот! 14. Забезпечувати родину. 15. Жінка забезпечує затишок у домі.

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Bake until the filling starts to bubble and the crust turns golden brown. Enjoy! 2. Now she is a proud grandma of three boys. 3. I discovered I didn't have my credit card with me when I went to pay my bill. 4. The secret of the invention became common property. 5. Reporters made the shocking discovery that the governor had been unfaithful to his wife. 6. His conduct in such a difficult situation did him proud. 7. They lost all their property in the fire. 8. Electric windows are a common feature in new cars. 9. Automobile manufacturers have enjoyed a six-percent rise in sales over the past month. 10. Most evenings he had the leisure that followed his interests. 11. I think some of the most common flowers are also some of the prettiest. 12. He provides for his family. 13. My brother is a proud and opinionated person. 14. She can read 50 pages an hour, on the average. 15. Finally Alex is the proud owner of a new house. 16. She looked forward to retirement and a life of leisure. 17. She handled the crisis with facility. 18. Our leisure facilities include swimming pools, sports halls, health and fitness suites and outdoor facilities. 19. Relax the leg by bringing the knee towards your chest. 20. Try to relax and enjoy the ride! 21. A short swim always relaxes me. 22. Her facility in organizing and directing made her an excellent supervisor. 23. These restaurants provide a much appreciated service for this area. 24. Fleming discovered penicillin early in the twentieth century. 25. Workers of this factory were provided with gloves for protection. 26. I enjoy

watching good films. 27. No one enjoys being teased. 28. We averaged the price of milk in five neighborhood stores. 29. She's too proud to accept their charity. 30. Last summer we had a really relaxing holiday in Italy.

### **Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Інтелектуальна власність – це результат інтелектуальної або творчої діяльності людини (автора, винахідника) або кількох осіб. 2. На минулому тижні моя дочка виграла змагання з шахів, ми з дружиною дуже пишаємося нею. 3. Французький уряд заявив, що 15 квітня будуть оприлюднені дані про вартість власності, якою володіють міністри. 4. Після доброго обіду я люблю трохи відпочити. 5. У цьому році працівники нашої лабораторії зробили декілька важливих відкриттів. 6. Усі банкноти євро мають спільний дизайн для кожного номіналу на обох сторонах. 7. Для цього регіону торнадо звичайна справа. 8. Герані – широко розповсюджені невибагливі рослини, які мають тривале цвітіння, що триває до пізньої осені. 9. На честь відкриття Колумбом Америки 12 жовтня в Королівстві Іспанія відзначають національне свято – День Іспанської Нації. 10. Середня заробітна плата в Україні в квітні 2013 року зросла порівняно з березнем цього року на 0,6 %. 11. Розслаблення м'язів – це відпочинок для тіла і душі. 12. Відпочинок, дозвілля, розваги, як і праця, є невід'ємними складовими життєдіяльності людини. 13. Тобі потрібно заспокоїтися, розслабся та глибоко вдихни! 14. У нашому санаторії створено чудові умови для будь-якого виду відпочинку. 15. Ти маєш всі шанси вступити до цього університету, адже в тебе хороші здібності до іноземних мов. 16. У нашому місті є декілька хороших центрів культури та дозвілля для підлітків та молоді. 17. Після занять йогою я відчуваю розслабленою та щасливою. 18. Середнє арифметичне – важливе поняття, що використовується в багатьох розділах математики. 19. Йому дуже складно, адже він один у родині працює та повинен забезпечити їх усім необхідним. 20. На підприємстві керівництво забезпечило своїм працівникам необхідний рівень безпеки.

## **GRAMMAR EXERCISES**

### **Exercise 1. Complete the sentences in the Future Simple.**

Nick asked a fortune teller about his future. Here is what she told him:

1. You (earn) a lot of money. 2. You (travel) around the world. 3. You (meet) lots of interesting people. 4. Everybody (adore) you. 5. You (not/have) any problems. 6. Many people (serve) you. 7. They (anticipate) your wishes. 8. There (not/be) anything left to wish for. 9. Everything (be) perfect. 10. But all these things (happen) only if you marry me.

**Exercise 2. Put the verbs into the correct form (Future Simple).**

1. Alice says that she (do) this later. 2. We (start/not) to watch the film without you. 3. What (earn) they there? 4. Mother (call) you in some hours. 5. When you (come) home tomorrow? 6. I hope it (rain/not) tomorrow. 7. I promise I (be/not) late for our meeting on Wednesday. 8. We (go) shopping next Sunday. 9. Hurry up! The bus (wait/not) for us. 10. What (say) he about his mistakes? 11. The weather forecast has reported, tomorrow the sun (shine) brightly and it (be) warm. 12. It (snow) next week? 13. They (be) there. 14. What do you think, she (forgive) me? 15. Unfortunately it seems to me that he (believe/not) us.

**Exercise 3. Reword the sentences according to the models.**

Model I:

He promises to come early. I want to speak to him.

– **I will speak** to him. **If he comes** early,

– **I don't know if he will come** early.

1. He promises to come to our place. We'll be glad to see him. 2. I must find the tickets. I want to go to the theatre. 3. They promise to arrive by this train. We can meet them. 4. You want to invite Nick to our dinner-party. He'll come. 5. We must consult the timetable. We want to know when the train leaves. 6. Let him ring me up. I want to tell him how to do it. 7. Let Jane come. We want to discuss our plans for the summer vacations with her. 8. Promise to lend me this book. I can read it quickly. 9. He promises to be here before ten o'clock. I want to see him. 10. I hope to have some time tomorrow. I'll write to him.

Model II:

She may come today. Give her my love.

– **If she comes** today, give her my love.

– **I am not sure if she will come**.

1. You may get lost in the city. Ask someone to help you. 2. Kate may ring me up. Ask her to leave me a message. 3. You may not know some words. Look them up in your dictionary. 4. She may fall ill. Keep her in bed. 5. The shops may be open. Go and buy something for breakfast. 6. Nelly may be at home. Invite her to the cinema. Ricky may drop in today. Tell him I'll be back at three. 7. You may see Peter today. Ask him to ring me up tomorrow evening. 8. You may not have this book at home. Ask your friend to lend hers to you. 9. She may get angry with you. Leave her alone.

**Exercise 4. Combine two sentences into one.**

1. We (be) able to do this. The manager (be) back. (before)
2. He (be) able to take pictures. The weather (be) fine tomorrow. (if)
3. He (take) my books. I (go) to my English class. (after, as soon as)
4. He (attend) classes. He (be) well again. (when)
5. They (wait). You (finish) translating the text. (till)



6. The day (be) bright. They (swim) in the sea. (if)
7. You (go) on a diet. You (feel) well. (unless)
8. His room (look) cosy. He (tidy) it every day. (unless)
9. You (leave) soon. You must visit the museum. (before)
10. I (find) somewhere to live. I (give) you my address. (when)
11. I (do) the shopping. I (come) straight home. (after)
12. You (be) in Moscow next month. You must come and see me then. (when)
13. We (decide) what to do. Then we (let) you know. (as soon as)
14. I (finish) reading this book. I'll get the dinner ready. (after)
15. Perhaps I (need) some help. Then I (ask) you. (if)
16. George (come) soon. We (start) dinner without him. (until)
17. I (arrive) tomorrow. I (phone) you at once. (as soon as)
18. She (go) to Spain. She (learn) Spanish first. (before)
19. Perhaps she (sleep) when you come. Don't wake her up then. (if)
20. Jane's working day is over, but she (leave) the office. She (type) an important document. (until)
21. Listen to the teacher carefully. You (understand) anything! (unless)
22. You (work) at the language laboratory. You (improve) your intonation. (unless)
23. Do your homework properly. The teacher (be) pleased with you. (unless)
24. Read these books. You (be) able to prepare a good report. (unless)
25. Speak English every day. You (master) it. (unless)
26. Help her with English. She (be) able to pass her exams. (unless)
27. I (go) to the movies on Thursday. I (have) a class in English. (if)
28. You (have) all these books. You (sign) this paper. (after)
29. We (have) to wait for Jane. She (be) late again. (if)

**Exercise 5. Fill the gaps with the correct possessive pronouns.**

1. I have lost \_\_\_\_ keys.
2. Did you brush \_\_\_\_\_ teeth?
3. Alex and Lucy like to ride \_\_\_\_\_ bikes.
4. Claire is looking for \_\_\_\_\_ favorite top.
5. We would like to sit at \_\_\_\_\_ usual table, please.
6. The boy likes \_\_\_\_\_ university.
7. Mary sees \_\_\_\_\_ friend Jane every day.
8. My friends bring \_\_\_\_\_ children to our place on Saturdays.
9. The cat eats \_\_\_\_\_ food quickly.
10. I often forget \_\_\_\_\_ key.
11. You write in \_\_\_\_\_ book in class.
12. We bring \_\_\_\_\_ notes to class.
13. The men always bring \_\_\_\_\_ wives to the party.
14. Mr. Adams teaches \_\_\_\_\_ class in the morning.
15. She likes to give presents to \_\_\_\_\_ grandchildren.

**Exercise 6. Fill the gaps with the possessive case of nouns. Decide whether you have to use 's or an of phrase.**

1. The boy has a car. → It's the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Peter has a book. → It's \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The magazine has my picture on its cover. → My picture is on \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Our friends live in this house. → It's \_\_\_\_\_.
5. There is milk in the glass. → It's \_\_\_\_\_.
6. This house has a number. → What is \_\_\_\_\_ ?
7. The walk lasts two hours. → It's \_\_\_\_\_.
8. John has a sister, Jane. → Jane is \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The film has a name, "Scream". → "Scream" is \_\_\_\_\_.
10. This school is for girls only. → It's a \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 7.**

**1) Rewrite the sentences by using ('s):**

1. The work of the scientists.
2. The important events of last year.
3. For the sake of the safety.
4. The music of Mozart.
5. The house of my brother-in-law.
6. The toys of my children.
7. The apartment of Mr. Clark and his wife.
8. The reputation of the Senator.

**2) Say that (a) belongs to (b):**

(a)	(b)
the door	the classroom
the books	John
the title	the film
the car	my
the money	Mr. Higgins
the success	the company
the parents	Mike
the rooms	my sisters
the rooms	the house
the offices	the managers
the friend	Charles
the newspaper	today

**Exercise 8. Complete the text below choosing the correct prepositions.**

Ruth Handler, an American businesswoman, watched her daughter Barbara ... play ... paper dolls, and noticed that she often enjoyed giving them adult roles. ... the time, most children's toy dolls were representations of infants. Realizing that there could be a gap ... the market, she suggested the idea of an adult-bodied doll ... her husband Elliot, a co-founder ... the Mattel toy company. He was unenthusiastic about the idea, as were Mattel's directors. But during a trip ...

Germany ... 1956 with her children Barbara and Kenneth, Ruth Handler discovered a German doll called the Bild Lilli doll ... a shop window. The adult-figured Lilli doll was exactly what Handler had ... mind, so she purchased three of them. She gave one ... her daughter and took the others back ... Mattel. The Lilli doll was based ... a popular character appearing in a comic strip of a German newspaper. Lilli was a working girl who knew what she wanted and was not above using men to get it. The Lilli doll was first sold ... Germany ... 1955, it became popular ... children who enjoyed dressing her up in outfits that were available separately. On her return ... the United States, Handler reworked the design of the doll and it was given a new name, Barbie, after Handler's daughter Barbara. The doll made its debut ... the American International Toy Fair ... New York ... March 9, 1959. This date is also used as Barbie's official birthday.

**Exercise 9. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Вони вирушать у відпустку в неділю вранці. 2. Якщо в мене буде вільний час, я також піду з вами в кіно. 3. Давид захворів, тому він не піде в університет завтра. 4. Я заїду за тобою, як тільки закінчу своє тренування. 5. Молодша сестра моєї подруги дуже гарненька та кмітлива маленька дівчинка. 6. Поквапся! Наш літак відлітає за три години, реєстрація почнеться за годину, ми можемо спізнитися. 7. Брат Наталі завтра буде брати участь у великому змаганні між школами з водного поло, уся їхня родина збирається піти підтримати його. 8. Нова зачіска моєї сестри вразила всіх на вечірці. 9. Том зателефонує нам одразу, як тільки з'являться бодай якісь новини. 10. Уважно читайте правила, інакше ви не складете добре екзамен. 11. Сара каже, що перед тим як поїхати на навчання до Лондона, вона буде декілька місяців займатися англійською з викладачем. 12. У нашій бібліотеці суворі правила, ви зможете замовляти книги, тільки після того як ви заповните формуляр та отримаєте читацький квиток. 13. Я гадаю, що якщо ти вибачишся перед нею, вона обов'язково пробачить тебе. 14. Через тиждень день народження моєї подруги, з цього приводу вона планує організувати грандіозну вечірку та запросити усіх наших друзів. 15. За прогнозом гідрометцентру погода наступного тижня буде суха та сонячна. 16. У цьому місяці методична конференція, яка вже в п'яте проводиться на нашому факультеті, отримає статус міжнародної. 17. Вони чекатимуть на тебе доки ти не закінчиш своє заняття. 18. Поки Ви не принесете всі необхідні документи, я не зможу оформити кредит для Вас. 19. Прибери у своїй кімнаті перед тим, як ти підеш грати в футбол. 20. У неділю до нас в гості прийдуть друзі з дітьми, потрібно добре облаштувати дитячій майданчик в саду.

## LESSON 7

Text: University friends

Grammar: 1) The Past Continuous / The Future Continuous

2) Поняття про числівник

3) Займенник (невизначений, зворотній)

### UNIVERSITY FRIENDS

- I didn't see you at the **lecture** yesterday.
- I didn't **attend** one. I was **staying** at home. I was **trying** to **make a report** which **is due** on Friday.
- Is it **worth skipping** a lecture so as to **prepare** for another class? You have **missed** so much **relevant** information.
- I know, I really **regret** not going to the lecture.
- Don't **worry**. I am going to the library on Sunday. I will bring my notes.
- What do you mean?
- Look here. You will be **copying** the notes of the lecture while I am looking for the information on volcanoes.
- All right. **By the way**, why do you need that information?
- Don't you know that I will be **giving a talk** on the **similar topic** during our tutorial on Monday?
- Great! I have **a good deal** of material on **natural phenomena** at home. You may also come and **make use** of them.
- Thank you very much!
- You are **welcome**.

### READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

Despite fears, damage; introduction, sales, well beyond, per capita, range

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the vocabulary notes**

## ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

### Vocabulary notes

**1. Lecture** (noun) 1) [countable] a long talk on a particular subject that someone gives to a group of people, especially to students in a university (lecture on/about), e. g. *a lecture on medieval art*; **give/deliver a lecture** e. g. *He regularly gives lectures on modern French literature*; **go to/attend a lecture**, e. g. *Very few students ever attended his lectures*; **lecture hall/theatre/room**. 2) an act of criticizing someone or warning them about something in a long, serious talk, in a way that they think is unfair or unnecessary, e. g. *My father caught me and gave me a long lecture about the dangers of drink*.

**Lecture** (verb) 1) [intransitive] to talk to a group of people on a particular subject, especially to students in a university (lecture on), e. g. *He lectures on European art at Manchester University*; 2) [transitive] to talk angrily or seriously to someone in order to criticize or warn them, in a way that they think is unfair or unnecessary (lecture somebody about/on something), e. g. *I wish you would stop lecturing me!*

*He began to lecture us about making too much noise.*

**2. Attend** (verb) 1) [intransitive and transitive] to go to an event such as a meeting or a class, e. g. *Only 12 people attended the meeting*; 2) [intransitive and transitive] to go regularly to a school, church etc, e. g. *Karl attended college after military service*; 3) [transitive usually passive] to look after someone, especially because they are ill, e. g. *the attending physician*; 4) **attend to somebody/something** (phrasal verb) a) to deal with business or personal matters, e. g. *I may be late – I have got one or two things to attend to*; b) to help a customer in a shop or a restaurant [= serve], e. g. *We are sorry. The shop-assistant will attend you in a moment.*

**3. Worth** (noun) 1) how much money something is worth [= value], e. g. *It is difficult to estimate the current worth of the company.*

**Worth** (preposition) (be (well) worth (doing) something ) 1) used to say that something is interesting, useful, or helpful, e. g. *A lot of the small towns in the area are definitely worth visiting.* 2) used to say that someone should do something because they will gain something from it, e. g. *It's worth checking the details of the contract before you sign it.*

**Worthless** (adjective) something that is worthless has no value, importance, or use, e. g. *The information was worthless to me.*

**Worthy** (adjective) (be worthy of something) to deserve to be thought about or treated in a particular way, e. g. *a teacher who is worthy of respect*.

**4. Regret** (verb) 1) to feel sorry about something you have done and wish you had not done it, e. g. *I've never regretted the decision*.

**Regret doing something, regret (that)**, e. g. *I now regret leaving school so young. He was beginning to regret that he'd come along*. 2 [not in progressive] formal used in official letters or statements when saying that you are sorry or sad about something, e. g. *We regret any inconvenience caused to our customers*.

**Regret to say/inform/tell** e. g. *I regret to inform you that your contract will not be renewed*.

**Regret** (noun) 1 [countable usually plural, uncountable] sadness that you feel about something, especially because you wish it had not happened, e. g. *I have no regrets about leaving*.

**5. Copy** [intransitive and transitive] 1) to deliberately make or produce something that is exactly like another thing, e. g. *Could you copy this letter and send it out, please?* 2) [intransitive and transitive] to cheat in an examination, schoolwork etc by looking at someone else's work and writing the same thing as they have, e. g. *Jeremy had copied from the girl next to him*.

**Copy** (noun) 1) [countable] something that is made to be exactly like another thing, e. g. *Be sure to make copies of all the documents*. 2) [countable] one of many books, magazines, records etc that are all exactly the same, e. g. *The hardback costs £16.99 a copy*.

**6. Talk** (verb) 1) [intransitive] to say things to someone as part of a conversation, e. g. *English people love to talk about the weather*. 2) to give a speech (talk on/about), e. g. *Professor Davis will talk about 'Trends in Network Computing'*.

**Talk** (noun) 1) [countable] a conversation, e. g. *John, I'd like to have a talk with you*. 2) [plural] formal discussions between governments, organizations etc peace/trade etc talks, e. g. *The president held talks with Chinese officials*.

**7. Use** (verb) 1) [transitive] if you use a particular tool, method, service, ability etc, you do something with that tool, by means of that method etc, for a particular purpose, e. g. *Can I use your phone?* 2) [transitive] to say or write a particular word or phrase, e. g. *We use the word "hardware" to describe the actual machine*.

**Use** (noun) 1) [singular, uncountable] the action or fact of using something, e. g. *the increasing use of computers in education*; 2) [countable] a purpose for which something can be used, e. g. *Robots have many different uses in modern industry*.

**Have/find a use for something**, e. g. *The cupboard is full of things I can never find a use for*.

**Make use of something** to use something that is available in order to achieve something or get an advantage for yourself, e. g. *Try to make good use of your time*.

**Be of use (to somebody/something)** to be useful

**Be (of) no use (to somebody)** to be completely useless, e. g. *Take this it's of no use to me any more.*

**It's no use doing something** (spoken) used to tell someone not to do something because it will have no effect, e. g. *It's no use complaining.*

**8. Topic** (noun) [countable] a subject that people talk or write about, e. g. *The environment is a popular topic these days.*

**9. Natural** (adjective) 1) existing in nature and not caused, made, or controlled by people, e. g. *the study of the natural world (= trees, rivers, animals, plants etc)* 2) normal and as you would expect, e. g. *It's only natural that people who spend a lot of time around computers either love them or hate them.*

**10. Welcome** (verb) [transitive] 1) to say hello in a friendly way to someone who has just arrived [= greet], e. g. *They welcomed us warmly.* 2) to be glad to accept something, e. g. *We would welcome any advice or suggestions with open arms.* 3) to be glad that something has happened because you think it is a good idea, e. g. *Economists have welcomed the decision to raise interest rates.*

**Welcome** (adjective) 1) if someone is welcome in a place, other people are glad that they are there, e. g. *I don't think I'm welcome there anymore.* 2) if something is welcome, you enjoy it because you feel that you need it, e. g. *The weekend was a welcome break from the pressures of work.* 3) you're welcome! A polite way of replying to someone who has just thanked you for something, e. g. *"Thanks for the coffee." "You're welcome."*

**Welcome** (noun) [singular] 1) the way in which you greet someone when they arrive at a place (warm/friendly welcome), e. g. *His colleagues gave him a very warm welcome when he returned to work.*

**11. Miss** (verb) 1) not do something/fail to do something, not to go somewhere or do something, especially when you want to but cannot, e. g. *By the time we got there we'd missed the beginning of the movie.* 2) not hit/catch [intransitive and transitive] to fail to hit or catch an object that is close to you, or to fail to hit a distant object that you are aiming at, e. g. *Every time she missed the ball she became more angry.* 3) feel sad about somebody, [transitive] to feel sad because someone you love is not with you, e. g. *She missed her family badly.* 4) feel sad about something, [transitive] to feel sad because you do not have something or cannot do something you had or did before, e. g. *I miss the car, but the bus system is good.* 5) [transitive] to be too late for something, e. g. *I overslept and missed the train.*

**Miss** (noun) 1) used in front of the family name of a woman who is not married to address her politely, to write to her, or to talk about her, e. g. *I'd like to make an appointment with Miss Taylor.* 2) used as a polite way of speaking to a young woman when you do not know her name, e. g. *Excuse me, miss, you've dropped your umbrella.* 3) (British English) used by children when speaking to a female teacher, whether she is married or not, e. g. *I know the answer, Miss.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

1. **Give/do/deliver a talk** speak before an audience, e. g. *Dr. Howard will give a talk on herbal medicine.*

2. **A good deal of** (also a great deal) a large quantity of something [= a lot], e. g. *It took a great deal of time and effort.*

### Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.

1. She launched into another one of her **lectures** about why we should always do our homework. 2. For many years Dr Thornton **lectured** in Economics at University College. 3. But I didn't mean to **lecture** you, old thing. 4. After **attending** church, the family would go home for dinner. 5. Karl **attended** college after military service. 6. "The shop-assistant will presently **attend** you", said the manager. 7. If you answer this question correctly, it's **worth** five points. 8. This idea is well worth considering. 9. He felt he was not **worthy** of her. 10. The house was full of **worthless** junk. 10. Do you ever **regret** taking this job? 11. We **regret** to say that your offer has been turned down. 12. Jason detected a note of **regret** in her voice. 13. **Copy** the file onto a disk to save it. 14. If I see anyone **copying** I'll send you straight to the principal's office. 15. More than 85,000 **copies** of the magazine sold within three weeks. 16. Gerry wants to **talk** to his girlfriend before he makes a decision. 17. Alice Walker has been invited to give a **talk** to the literary group this evening. 18. Are we allowed to **use** a dictionary in the test? 19. The land has been developed for tourism and other recreational **uses**. 20. We will **make use** of her vast experience. 21. It is **no use** arguing about it now. 22. The main **topic** of conversation was Tom's new girlfriend. 23. A pipeline carries **natural** gas from under the sea. 24. Anger is a **natural** reaction when you lose someone you love. 25. His family **welcomed** me with open arms. 26. Many citizens **welcomed** Smith's resignation from office. 27. The trip to Mexico will be a **welcome** break from work. 28. You can be sure of a friendly **welcome** at all our hotels. 29. He **missed** 20 games after breaking a bone in his wrist. 30. He fired, **missed** and loaded again. 31. He certainly wasn't going to **miss** the chance of making some extra money. 32. Did you **miss** me when I was in Hawaii? 33. Excuse me, **miss**, could I have another glass of water? 34. His work has been attracting **a great deal** of attention.

### Exercise 8. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.

1. She deserves to be respected. 2. Jane always goes to college. 3. I am sorry to tell you that you are not allowed to go on the excursion. 4. Professor Smith will give a lecture on computer design in textile industry. 5. The shop-assistant will serve you now. 6. They were happy with the decision to prepare for the expedition. 7. Kate feels sad because her friend is away. 8. Do you have



a Xerox? We need three more documents like this one. 9. These corners of the world are very interesting to go to. 10. She does not like artificial flowers. 11. You should take this opportunity. It will do you good. 12. We were late to catch the bus. 13. The news that her nephew entered university is very pleasant. 14. Stop criticizing me. I am a grown up person. 15. This subject is a very popular with the students nowadays. 16. We are sorry that we told them the truth. They don't deserve it. 17. This old house costs fifty thousand pounds. 18. Many people regularly go to church. 19. He fired but the bullet did not hit the bear. 20. Excuse me, young lady, you are trying to catch the wrong bus.

**Exercise 9. Work in pairs. Go through the essential vocabulary. Make up a sentence with a word or a phrase from the vocabulary notes.**

Model:

One student: "*lecture on*".

The other student: "*Professor Brown from London University delivered a fantastic lecture on the contribution of medieval composers in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.*"

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. У цій лекції я зупинюся на ранніх роках правління Петра Великого. 2. Мої батьки завжди мене повчають. Як це набридло. Вони кажуть, що я не відвідую жодного гуртка (society). 3. Вона шкодує, що використовувала записи. Вони виявилися невірними. 4. Вчителько, нам робити ці вправи письмово? 5. Ці слова можна не вчити. Їх не буде у тесті. 6. Нам було дуже цікаво на конференції. 7. У лекційному залі не було вільного місця. 8. Після того, як вона мусила віддати собаку, вона дуже за нею сумувала. 9. Ваші поради нічого для мене не варті. Мені шкода, але я вимушений сказати, що вас звільнено. 10. Вони привезли мені три примірники наукового журналу з Німеччини. 11. Цілком природно, що вона його постійно критикувала. 12. Це дуже цікава тема для вашого виступу. Такі знання будуть у пригоді для ваших однокласників. 13. Вона все списала у свого сусіда по парті. Це несправедливо. 14. Однокласники його з радістю зустріли, коли він повернувся з лікарні. 15. У нього було мало набоїв (cartridge), тому він не мав права промахнутися. 16. Усього тридцять людей прийшли на зібрання, менш ніж вона очікувала. 17. Вибачте, але я маю зараз братися до своїх справ. 18. Це вчений, який заслуговує на пошану. 19. У мене немає жодного жалю с приводу вашого від'їзду. 20. Коли ми зустрічаємось, ми завжди розмовляємо про минулі часи. 21. Хто перший у черзі? Зараз до вас підійде секретар. 22. Не міг би ти зробити копію свого конспекту та дати її мені. 23. Прем'єр міністр має намір провести переговори з урядовцями з Польщі у найближчі дні. 24. Давай викинемо цей комод. Я ніколи не міг знайти йому застосування. 25. Природні копалини (resources) мають використовуватися розумно.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Translate the following exercises into Ukrainian paying attention to the forms in bold type. Comment on the use of forms in bold type.**

1. I saw Jane when she **was going** to school. 2. They **will be doing** a test from 3 till 5. 3. We **enjoyed ourselves** at the party. 4. Jane has **some** German books at home, but not **many**. 5. Men usually have to **shave themselves** every morning. 6. **None of the students** were listening to the lecturer. 7. We don't receive **any** magazines; we only receive **a few** newspapers. 8. I didn't have **much** time, so I **was not listening** to the music with everybody else. 9. John **will be writing** an essay when his parents come home. 10. In his childhood he had **very few** books to read. 11. "You can choose **any** cake", said she. 12. He has **no** hobbies; he gives all his time to **educating himself**. 13. As there was **little** fresh air in the house we went into the garden. 14. Jane **will be doing** homework while her mum **is cooking** dinner in the kitchen. 15. Don't go to the baker's, we have **a little** bread at home.

**Exercise 2. Put the following sentences into negative and interrogative forms.**

1. Simon was doing home homework from 5 till 7. 2. It was raining when I went out. 3. Jane was writing something when he went in. 4. They will be crossing The English Channel at this time tomorrow. 5. We will be having lunch in twenty minutes. 6. You were watching TV when Sarah called. 7. Kate will be cooking the whole day tomorrow. 8. Christopher was dancing when I came. 9. We will be tidying up our flat on Saturday. 10. The students will be doing a test while their teacher is checking their test papers.

**Exercise 3. Make up your own sentences using *some, any, none, no, much, many, little, few*.**

Model: *I have many postcards, but I only have a few stamps.*

**Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps with appropriate indefinite pronouns.**

1. ... of them can speak Japanese. 2. There are ... documents in the bookcase. 3. I have ... adventure books you can take ... you like. 4. As they have ... time they cannot join us now. 5. The child only has ... toys but he would like more. 6. If she has ... problems she should turn for help. 7. They have ... dictionaries but they don't think they have enough. 8. I have ... time but not much. 9. There are ... pictures on the wall but there are some drawings. 10. The boss wants to speak to ... of you. He is very angry. 11. We have ... bread at home. Go and buy some. 12. I can go shopping with ... of you.

**Exercise 5. Count from 1 to 60 using both cardinal and ordinal numerals.**

Model: One-first, two-second, three-third, four-fourth...

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into English with a focus on reciprocal pronouns.**

1. Марія подивилася на себе у дзеркало, але впізнати (recognize) себе не змогла. 2. Сам мер міста збирається взяти участь у мітингу. 3. Педро вийшов та зачинив за собою двері. 4. Не турбуйтеся. Я можу сам все зробити. 5. Мій дядько зазвичай голиться (shave) на кухні. 6. Вона дуже талановита. Вона сама зробила себе популярною. 7. Не задавайте питання, учні, робіть усе самі. 8. Дозвольте мені відрекомендуватися. Я головний менеджер цього відділу. 9. Цей факт сам по собі має велике значення для нашого міста. 10. Не слухайте стороннього. Давайте самі у всьому розберемося.

**Exercise 7. Insert articles where necessary.**

1. Her daughter works at ... school and her son works at ... factory. They are ... nice people. 2. These are ... ties. ... ties are red. 3. Give me ... slice of lemon, please. 4. What ... fine weather we have today! 5. Look at ... picture. Isn't it ... beautiful? 6. Westminster Abbey is in ... London. 7. Do you like ... coffee? 8. Could you pass me ... salt, please. 9. It was ... summer. It was very hot. 10. There are ... five copybooks and ... textbook on ... writing table. 11. Give ... brown tie not ... red one. 12. ... sun rises in ... East. 13. Let us go to ... theatre now. 14. Are you going ... home? 15. I don't know where ... Sister is now.

**Exercise 8. Open the brackets with appropriate tense forms of the verbs.**

1. He (do homework) when his cousin (arrive) yesterday. 2. While Jane (wash dishes) her mother (cook dinner). 3. When Jorge (ring up) tomorrow, tell him that I (wait) for him from 4.30 till 5. 4. I (read) last Sunday when I (heard) some shouts coming from the street. 5. It (rain) all day long yesterday. 6. We (see) her car when we (wait) for the bus. Probably she (drive) to work. 7. The doctor (examine) me for half an hour and I was very tired. 8. Where (go) when she saw you in the street last Monday? 9. I (sleep) till 12 tomorrow. I am so tired. 10. While Peter (mend) our TV set tomorrow, we (wash) the windows in the living-room. 11. Where that little boy (run) when they (catch) him. 12. I (see) Mary at the office tomorrow and I can return her the book. She always comes to the office on Tuesday. 13. I can buy bread myself. I (pass) a baker's on my way home. 14. They (cross) the border at this time tomorrow. 15. I (meet) the delegation tomorrow so I will not be able to come to your place.

**Exercise 9. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Наш стіл у їдальні двадцять четвертий зліва. 2. Коли я увійшов у ванну кімнату, батько голився і попросив мене почекати п'ятнадцять хвилин. 3. Дехто з учасників вже був у залі, але ніхто з нас не знав скільки їх буде

взагалі. 4. Що ви будете робити у цей час завтра? Я буду писати контрольну роботу. 5. Поки я буду писати, мій молодший брат буде чекати на мене біля входу до університету. 6. Двадцять восьме лютого – це останній день місяця у цьому році. 7. Якщо у вас є запитання до іспиту, я буду на них відповідати завтра з п'ятої до шостої години. 8. Я дивилася фільм у на кухні, поки старша сестра спілкувалася зі своїми однокласниками у вітальні. 9. Він сам мені сказав, що не знає про той випадок. 10. Завтра увесь день буде йти сніг і ми не зможемо навіть вийти з дому. 11. Учора ми увесь вечір розважалися у родині Браунів. 12. Якщо у тебе будуть якісь новини, подзвони мені негайно. 13. Вона опинилася на незнайомій вулиці й не знала куди далі йти. 14. Дідусь та бабуся вже спали, коли Петро повернувся з вечірки. 15. Дівчина прокинулася. Біля неї сиділа її подруга. 16. Вона говорить трошки німецькою і може побудувати декілька речень. 17. Ніхто з них не знає коли почнеться водопілля. 18. У мене немає жодного хобі, але я б хотів зайнятися чимось. 19. Вони розуміли один одного без будь-яких слів. 20. Ти не міг би принести декілька книжок з англійської граматики. У мене немає жодної. 21. Хворі приймали ці ліки тричі на день протягом двох тижнів. 22. Коли ви повернетесь, у вас буде мало часу, але ви маєте багато помічників. 23. Вона сказала, що збирається відвідати родичів наступного тижня. 24. У такій ситуації краще щось ніж нічого. 25. Ніхто з нас не ідеальний. Ми усі робимо помилки. 26. Вона знала все про цього чоловіка. 27. Поки ми будемо ремонтувати стелю, ви будете мити вікна. 28. Вона постійно лаялася, коли чоловік пізно приходив додому. 29. Де я можу купити яблука? 30. Вона вийшла та зачинила за собою двері.

## LESSON 8

Text: Books

Grammar: 1) The Present Perfect/ The Present Perfect Continuous  
2) The Past Participle  
3) The Absolute form of the Possessive Pronoun

### BOOKS

Despite **fears** that the so-called **electronic media** especially radio, television, and videos might **damage** book **publishing**, the opposite seems to be true. Since the introduction of television book **sales** have been **increasing well beyond** the increase in population. In fact, the U. S. **leads** in the number of books read **per capita**. These books **range** from the most **recent** best seller or biography to histories, gardening and cookbooks, or technical **volumes** and **encyclopedias**.

Several reasons have been offered to account for this fact. First, American schools have traditionally **stressed** and tried to develop a “love of reading,” to make it a **habit**. This general educational **emphasis** has been successful. One **notes** how many people are reading books not only newspapers or magazines in city buses, airports, during: lunch breaks, or on the beach. Secondly, public libraries have always been very active in **communities throughout** the country. Here, too, the general **policy** has been to get books to people rather than to **protect** the books from people. A favourite way of **raising** money for libraries is to have thousands of used books **donated** by the community and then to have a book **sale** (“Any five for \$ 11”). The money made **in this fashion** goes to buy new books for the library. Such popular community **fund-raising** activities also increase the feeling among people that the library is **theirs**.

The third and probably most important reason is that there are no laws which protect book sellers or **fix** prices. Anyone can sell new and used books at **discount** and sale prices, and just about everyone does. Very early, books were sold every where, in **drug stores** and supermarkets, department stores and 24-hour shops, through book clubs and by colleges, as well as in **regular** book stores. Many university book stores are student-owned and run. They **operate on a non-profit basis**, that is, all **profits** go **towards keeping** the prices of books **down**, for paying the student employees, and often to support student **scholarships** and other financial **aid**. Then, there are the large “paperback supermarkets” located in most shopping centers, which sell mainly paperback books on a **variety** of subjects. These, too, have done a great deal to keep the book trade healthy and growing. Nationwide radio and television shows, new movies, and filmed versions of books have often helped to create spectacular book sales.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

Despite fears, media, damage; introduction, sales, increase, well beyond, lead, per capita, range, recent, biography, encyclopedia, offer, account for, habit, emphasis, note, throughout, policy, protect, raise, donate, fund-raising, discount, run, operate, profit, employee, scholarship, aid, spectacular.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the essential vocabulary.**

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Fear** (noun) [uncountable and countable] the feeling you get when you are afraid or worried that something bad is going to happen, e. g. *Her hands were shaking with fear. On New Year's Eve we come together, and share our hopes and fears for the coming year.*

Phrases with fear:

**Fear of (something or doing something)** *The fear of (encountering) wild animals prevented her from going to Africa.*

**Fear for (something or doing something)** *Fear for The girl's parents expressed fears for her safety.*

**For fear that** *She finally ran away for fear that he would kill her.*

**Fear** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) to feel afraid or worried that something bad may happen, e. g. *If you see Mrs Meir, tell her I am not a person who fears anyone.* 2) used when telling someone that you think that something bad has happened or is true, e. g. *I fear that there is little more we can do.*

**Fearful** (of, that) (adj.) frightened that something might happen.

**Fearsome** (adj.) very frightening.

**Fearless** (adj.) not afraid of anything.

**Fearfully** (adv.) in a way that shows you are afraid.

**Fearlessly** (adv.) in a way that shows you are not afraid.

**2. Damage** (noun) 1) physical or emotional harm [uncountable] that is done to something or to a part of someone's body, so that it is broken or injured, e. g. *It will take many years to repair the damage caused by the floods.* 2) **damages** [plural] law money that a court orders someone to pay to someone else as a punishment for harming them or their property [↔ compensation]: *The court awarded him £ 15,000 in damages.*

**Damage** (verb) 1) to cause physical harm to something or to part of someone's body: e. g. *Don't put any hot things on the table you'll damage the surface.* 2) to have a bad effect on something or someone in a way that makes them weaker or less successful: e. g. *Smoking can seriously damage your health.*

**3. Increase (in)** (noun) [uncountable and countable] a rise in amount, number, or degree: e. g. *There was an increase of about 17 % in the urban population between 1910 and 1920.*

**Increase** (verb) to become bigger in amount, number, or degree: e. g. *Food prices increased by 10 % in less than a year.*

**4. Range** (of) (noun) 1) [countable usually singular] a number of people or things that are all different, but are all of the same general type: e. g. *The drug is effective against a range of bacteria.*

**Wide/broad/whole/full/narrow/limited range** of something: e. g. *They gave advice on a whole range of subjects.* 2) limits [countable] the limits within which amounts, quantities, ages etc vary, *age/price/temperature etc range.* *A temperature range of 72-85° was normal for these parts.*

**In/within a ... range** e. g. *Your blood pressure's well within the normal range.* 3) [countable] a set of similar products made by a particular company or available in a particular shop: e. g. *A company from Darlington has just launched its latest range of fashion jewellery.* 4) distance: *The country possesses missiles with a range of 3000 km.*

**Range** (from, between, in) (verb) 1) to include a variety of different things or people in addition to those mentioned: e. g. *The show had a massive audience, ranging from children to grandparents. The population of these cities ranges between 3 and 5 million. The shoes range in price from \$ 25 to \$ 100.* 2) to deal with a wide range of subjects or ideas in a book, speech, conversation etc: *The conversation had ranged over a variety of topics, from sport to current affairs.*

**5. Note** (noun) [countable] 1) something that you write down to remind you of something: e. g. *Dave made a note of her address and phone number.* 2) make a (mental) note to do something, to decide that you must remember to do something later: e. g. *He made a mental note to arrange a time to meet her.* 3) [plural] information that a student writes down during a lesson, from a book etc, take/make notes (=write notes): e. g. *Can I borrow your lecture notes?* 4) a short informal letter [countable]: e. g. *I was going to write Kathy a note, but I decided to call her instead.* 5) official letter [countable]

- sick note British English (= a note saying that you are too ill to go to work or school)
- delivery note (= a document showing that goods have been delivered)
- diplomatic note (= a formal letter from one government to another)
- credit note, promissory note

6) a) additional information [countable], a short piece of writing at the bottom of a page or at the end of a book or document which gives more information about something written in the main part: e. g. *The notes are at the back of the book.* b) explanatory/guidance notes: e. g. *A set of guidance notes is provided to assist applicants in completing the form.* 7) music [countable] a particular musical sound, or a symbol representing this sound, high/low note: e. g. *She has a good voice but has trouble hitting the high notes.* 8) money [countable] (British English also bank note) a piece of paper money worth a particular amount of money [= bill AmE; ↷ coin]: e. g. *a ten-pound note*

**Note** (verb) 1) to notice or pay careful attention to something: e. g. *He carefully noted the time when they left the building.*

**Note (that)**

*Please note that the bill must be paid within ten days.*

**Note how**

e. g. *Note how she is holding her racket.*

2) to mention something because it is important or interesting

**Note that**

e. g. *The judge noted that Miller had no previous criminal record.*

**Note down** to write something down so that you will remember it: e. g.

*Note down the main points you want to include in your essay.*

**6. Raise** (noun) [countable] (American English) an increase in the money you earn [= rise British English] **Raise** (verb) 1) to move or lift something to a higher position, place, or level: e. g. *Raise your hand if you know the right answer.* 2) to increase an amount, number, or level: e. g. *Many shops have raised their prices.* 3) to collect money that you can use to do a particular job or help people: e. g. *The Trust hopes to raise \$ 1 million to buy land.* 4) to improve the quality or standard of something: e. g. *Changing the law cannot raise standards.* 5) start a subject to begin to talk or write about a subject that you want to be considered or a question that you think should be answered [= bring up]: e. g. *Betty raised the important question of who will be in charge.* 6) to cause a particular emotion or reaction: e. g. *This attack raises fears of increased violence against foreigners.* 7) to move your eyes, head, or face so that you are looking up [≠ lower]: e. g. *Albert raised his eyes and stared at Ruth.* 8) move upright also raise up to move or lift yourself into an upright position [≠ lower] 9) (especially American English) to look after your children and help them grow [= bring up British English] e. g. *Camus was born and raised in Algeria.*



10) (animals or plants) to look after animals or grow plants so that they can be sold or used as food: e. g. *He raised cattle in Nebraska when he was young.*

Phrases: **raise eyebrows, raised one's voice, raised one's glass, raise alarm.**

**7. Fix** (noun) [countable] 1) something that solves a problem: e. g. *Robinson called the proposal a quick fix (= a temporary or easy solution) of limited value.*

2) (be) in a fix to have a problem that is difficult to solve [= (be) in a mess]: e. g. *We're going to be in a real fix if we miss that bus.*

**Fix** (verb) [transitive] 1) to repair something that is broken or not working properly: e. g. *He's outside fixing the brakes on the car.*

2) [transitive] to decide on a limit for something, especially prices, costs etc, so that they do not change [= set], fix something at something: e. g. *The interest rate has been fixed at 6.5 %.* 3) fix a time/date/place etc: to decide on a particular time etc when something will happen: e. g. *Have you fixed a date for the wedding yet?* 4) [intransitive and transitive] (spoken) to make arrangements for something: e. g.

*"So when do I get to meet them?" "Tomorrow, if I can fix it."* 5) [transitive] to attach something firmly to something else, so that it stays there permanently, **to fix something to/on something**: e. g. *The shelves should be fixed to the wall with screws.* 6) [transitive] (informal) (especially American English) to prepare a meal or drinks [= get]: e. g. *I'll watch the kids and you fix dinner.*

**Fix somebody something**: e. g. *Can I fix you a snack?* 7) [transitive] to find a solution to a problem or bad situation: e. g. *The government seems confident that environmental problems can be fixed.* 8) **fix your attention/eyes/mind etc on somebody/something** to think about or look at someone or something carefully: e. g. *Every eye was fixed on the new girl.*

**8. Run** (noun) 1) [countable] a period of time spent running, or a distance that you run [↔ jog, sprint]: e. g. *She usually goes for a run before breakfast.*

2) **in the long run** later in the future, not immediately [↔ long-term]: e. g. *Moving to Spain will be better for you in the long run.* 3) **in the short run** in the near future [↔ short-term]: e. g. *Sufficient supply, in the short run, will be a problem.*

4) [countable] a continuous series of performances of a play, film etc in the same place: e. g. *His first play had a three-month run in the West End.*

5) [singular] a journey by train, ship, truck etc made regularly between two places: e. g. *It's only a 55-minute run from London to Brighton.* 6) election

[countable usually singular] (American English) an attempt to be elected to an important position: e. g. *He is preparing a run for the presidency.*

**Run** (verb) 1) [intransitive] to move very quickly, by moving your legs more quickly than when you walk: *I ran down the stairs as fast as I could.*

2) [transitive] to organize or be in charge of an activity, business, organization, or country: e. g. *For a while, she ran a restaurant in Boston.*

**Well/badly run**: e. g. *The hotel is well-run and extremely popular.*

**State-run** (= controlled by the government): e. g. *television station*

3) about buses/trains etc, [intransitive] if a bus, train etc service runs, it takes people from one place to another at fixed times: e. g. *The buses don't run on Sundays.* 4) about computers [intransitive] if a computer program runs, it operates: e. g. *The software will run on any PC.* 5) about machine/engine if a machine or engine runs, it operates: e. g. *Most cars run on unleaded fuel.* 6) about newspaper/television [transitive] to print something in a newspaper or magazine, or broadcast something on television: e. g. *The company is running a series of advertisements in national newspapers.* 7) [intransitive] (especially American English) to try to be elected in an election [= stand British English]: e. g. *Salinas is running for a second term as President.* 8) [intransitive] to continue being performed regularly in one place: e. g. *The play ran for two years.*

**9. Operate** (verb) 1) a) [transitive] to use and control a machine or equipment: e. g. *The Lewis family operated a number of boats on the canal.* b) [intransitive] (always + adverb/preposition in/at) if a machine operates in a particular way, it works in that way: e. g. *The bus is designed to operate in all weather conditions. Most freezers operate at below 18°C.* 2) a) (operate in/within/from) [intransitive] if a business or organization operates in a particular place or way, it works in that place or way: e. g. *A playgroup operates on the campus. They were trying to reduce operating costs.* b) [transitive] to control a business or organization: e. g. *The company operates fast-food restaurants in over 60 countries.* 3) [intransitive and transitive] if a system, process, or service operates, or if you operate it, it works: e. g. *The whole tax system is now operating more efficiently. The bus company operates a Monday to Saturday service.* 4) [intransitive] to cut into someone's body in order to repair or remove a part that is damaged: e. g. *Doctors had to operate to remove the bullet.*

**operate on** e. g. *The surgeon who operated on Taylor's knee is a successful doctor.*

**10. Spectacular** (noun) [countable] an event or performance that is very large and impressive: *This science-fiction spectacular is the most hyped movie of the summer.*

**Spectacular** (adjective) 1) very impressive: *a mountainous area with spectacular scenery.* 2) very sudden, unexpected, or extreme: *The news caused a spectacular fall in the stock market.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**Per capita** (adj) used to describe the average amount of something in a particular place, calculated according to the number of people who live there: e. g. *Per capita income rose by 1.2 % last year.*

**In a fashion** in a particular way e. g. *She will be working out her problems in her own fashion.*

**Well beyond** (far beyond) outside the range or limits of something or someone: e. g. *Such tasks are well beyond the scope of the average schoolkid.*

**Account for** to be the reason why something happens [= explain]: e. g. *How can you account for being late several times this week?*

**Nonprofit basis** to use the earned money to help people instead of making a profit: e. g. *Private land trusts are non-profit groups dedicated to preserving open space.*

**A great deal** a large quantity of something [= a lot] e. g. *She spoke a great deal about poetry.*

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. My **fear of** the dentist goes back to when I was a child. 2. The dam was **operated** by two men. 3. The employees were promised a 5 % **raise**. 4. The sale offered a **range** of clothes. 5. His sick **note** was a lame excuse for not attending school. 6. The boy was happy to find a ten-pound **note**. 7. Have they **fixed** a date for the housewarming party yet. 8. We will find ourselves in a **fix** if we do not submit the documents in time. 9. She will **fix** a meal before we get down to work. 10. Unemployment will be a problem in the country in the short **run**. 11. Who is **running** for the presidency this time? 12. This company has **operated** delivery service for fifteen years in this town. 13. Mr Smith made a **spectacular** presentation last week. 14. They staged a **spectacular** which attracted crowds from all over. 15. Public transport, **in the long run**, will **run** on hydrogen. 16. Please **note** that the service will not be run on Sunday. 17. She closed her eyes for **fear** that she might recall those events. 18. Once the prices had been **fixed** the sales began.

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. Curiosity overcame her fear. 2. Acid rain has caused serious damage to the pine forests of northern Europe. There is growing evidence of lasting psychological damage to children in broken families. Lewis damaged his knee in training and will not appear in the game. Do you know how to operate the air conditioning? It can be risky to operate on very old people. There has been a marked increase in the use of firearms. Recent tax increases have affected the poor more than the rich. There was an increase of about 17 % in the urban population between 1910 and 1920. Food prices increased by 10 % in less than a year. The company has increased its workforce to 1,500 employees. A number of important issues were raised at the conference. His sister raises horses in Colorado. Library employees have not received a raise for six years. He left a note on his desk saying he would be back in 5 minutes. Stuart noted the telephone number on a business card. A typical radio signal has a range of about

100 miles. Prices range from around £5 for a door in pine, to £ 7.50 in cherry. I'll need to fix the boat before we can go out in it. The chairs and tables were fixed to the floor. Supporters of the losing team protested that the whole thing was a fix. After his run, he took a long shower. A stream runs along the bottom of the field. Many people don't care who runs the country. The number 61 bus runs to the city centre. The software will run on any PC. It took me weeks to learn to operate the VCR. They need to operate on her stomach. The view from the top floor is absolutely spectacular. Houston experienced spectacular growth after the Civil War. This science-fiction spectacular is the most hyped movie of the summer.

**Exercise 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. He was afraid that the hurricane might ruin the crops. 2. It was a problem for her to work on the computer. 3. His interests included a series of matters. 4. The wonderful speech he gave at the conference was a perfect start for his scholastic career. 5. Look at how she speaks to her friends. She is so impudent. 6. The lecturer spoke so quickly that we were unable to note down the information. 7. The sum awarded was so high that the partners had to sell their business. 8. The foundation planned to collect ten thousand dollars to help the poorest in the devastated area. 9. He attached the rack so that they could hang out the linen. 10. The family owned a shop which helped them to live through the war. 11. The company is working far more efficiently now. 12. She looked at her husband carefully for some time as though not recognising him. 13. Do not shout at me, or I will teach you a lesson. 14. "Put up your hand if you know the answer", the teacher said to her students. 15. The boss left a message that he would be late. 16. The inflation rose by 100 % that year.

**Exercise 10. Find English equivalents for the following.**

Страх літати літаками, підвищення цін, низка різних питань, дипломатична нота, збирати кошти для благодійності, ремонтувати взуття, у недалекому майбутньому, президентська компанія, вести ресторанний бізнес, значне підвищення, приготувати щось перекусити, виховуватися у родині, купюра у двадцять доларів, збитки, побоювання за фінансове становище, підвищення рівня життя, людина, яка нічого не боїться, конспектувати лекцію, підняти руку, приготувати сніданок, бігати на свіжому повітрі вранці, вести ресторанний бізнес, видовищна подія.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. People fled in fear of their lives, as mud began to pour down the mountainside. 2. Additional sources are listed in the notes at the back of the book. 3. I have notes to myself all over the house. 4. Please note my change of address. 5. Can you change a \$ 20 note? 6. Before leaving, she noted the times of the return trains. 7. He noted that the poverty level for a family of four is now about \$ 16, 000

a year. 8. The show moves to London's West End after a month's run in Leicester's Gala Theatre. 9. After her run, he lay down on the sofa. 10. A stream runs along the bottom of the field. 11. Christina runs a restaurant in Houston. 12. Don't worry everyone will be shown how to operate the new machines. 13. Our generator doesn't operate well in cold weather. 14. They had operated on him six times before he was a year old. 15. Within a year he could provide eight spectaculars. 16. The view from the top floor is absolutely spectacular. 17. I don't think it's fixed to the ceiling very securely. 18. I have to fix lunch now. 19. Supporters of the losing team protested that the whole thing was a fix. 20. New ways of reducing the damage to the environment are urgently needed. 21. Lewis damaged his knee in training and will not appear in the game. 22. Smoking can seriously damage your health. 23. Recent wage increases have boosted morale in the company. 24. Health care costs increased from £ 1.9 billion in 2000 to £ 4 billion in 2001. 25. Children are ranged in order of their performance in the last test. 26. A typical radio signal has a range of about 100 miles. 27. Library employees have not received a raise for six years. 28. All the major airlines have raised their fares. 29. His sister raises horses in Colorado. 30. Mum raised her hand to hit me and then stopped.

**Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Її побоювання були безпідставними, тому нам швидко вдалося її переконати не їхати за кордон. 2. Нічого не було видно у межах двох кілометрів. 3. Вам слід звернути увагу на те, що паління у цьому закладі не дозволяється. 4. У продовж трьох років у північному регіоні країни стався приріст населення у двісті п'ятдесят мільйонів осіб. 5. Принтер треба полагодити і якомога швидше. 6. У найближчій перспективі ми не очікуємо підвищення рівня безробіття. 7. Учора на майдані відбулося видовищне шоу з участю зірок естради. 8. Сильні дощі нанесли величезні збитки сільському господарству, й існують побоювання, що це може викликати кризу у всій економіці. 9. Усі, хто не з'являється на заняття більше трьох днів, мають надати довідку про хворобу. 10. Цей прилад може функціонувати у будь-яких погодних умовах. 11. Ця грандіозна театральна вистава привернула увагу численних глядачів. 12. Цей спортивний клуб має ефективне керівництво, і його перше місце у чемпіонаті не є несподіванкою. 13. Зустрінемося завтра о сьомій годині, якщо ти зможеш. 14. На моє здивування повідомлення про доставку товару прийшло за три доби. 15. Температура повітря у березні зазвичай коливається від п'яти градусів морозу до дванадцяти градусів тепла. 16. Благодійний фонд планує зібрати до десяти тисяч доларів на зазначені вище заходи. 17. Закінчуй роботу, а я швидко приготую що-небудь поїсти. 18. За рішенням суду вона мала сплатити компенсацію на суму двох тисяч фунтів. 19. Зверни увагу як цей студент вимовляє нові слова. 20. У далекій перспективі країна планує знайти інші джерела енергії.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Translate the following exercises into Ukrainian paying attention to the form of the predicate.**

1. The compact disk sales **have been growing** in the Czech Republic for three years now. 2. The family **have** already **gathered** round the table and are having dinner. 3. She **has been** to Spain but she **has not been** to England. – What a shame! 4. When we **have tidied** up the rooms, we shall go into the dining room and have tea. 5. She has been dreaming to have a hat like that all her life. 6. You **have tuned** up, at last. Mum **has been ringing** you up all morning. 7. Have you decided where you are going? – I **have changed** my mind and am not going anywhere. 8. Your score is much higher now. It is clear you **have been working** hard. 9. **Have they announced** the wedding date yet? 10. The floor **has already been painted** but the walls **have not**.

**Exercise 2. Put the following sentences into negative and interrogative forms.**

1. Simon has done his homework. 2. Mary has already seen the doctor. 3. The country has been welcoming investments for the past several years. 4. I have been doing my household calculations all afternoon. 5. The city has changed a lot recently. 6. The little girl has been washing up for twenty-five minutes. 7. The group has released two albums so far. 8. Our university has hosted three international scientific conferences this year. 9. She is all wet. She has been running in the rain. 10. Madonna has been a major American pop star for fifteen years now.

**Exercise 3. For each of the sentences below, write another sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.**

Model:

The teacher can check my essay.

**write** I have written the essay.

1. The guests are all here.

**arrive** .....

2. There is a cake in the oven.

**bake**

3. She began to work at this factory in 1995.

**since**

4. There is no decision from the board yet.

**arrive**

5. John is all wet.

**run (in the rain)**

7. All the pupils in the class know this verse.

**learn**

8. He visited Paris twice last month and is going there again.

**be (several times)**

9. The students are doing a test now.

**finish**

10. The construction of the new circus is not over yet.

**build (for three years)**

**Exercise 4. Match each sentence (A and B) in the pairs below with its meaning.**

Model:

A "Hi, Fiona. What a mess. Have you been decorating?"

B "Hi, Fiona. This room looks great! Have you decorated it?"

1. Fiona is in the middle of decorating.

2. Fiona is not decorating any more.

A The local authorities have been repairing the city utilities.

B The local authorities have repaired the city utilities.

1. The city is ready to host the international competitions.

2. The city authorities are in the process of repairing the city utilities.

A The boys have been learning how to play table tennis.

B The boys have learnt how to play table tennis.

1. They are still learning now.

2. They can play it now.

A The woman has washed the linen

B The woman has been washing linen since morning.

1. The woman is still working.

2. The linen is clean.

A The boy has been learning grammar rules for three hours now.

B The boy has learnt the grammar rules.

1. He is ready for the test.

2. He is tired.

A The boss has been giving presents to his employees.

B The boss gives presents to his employees.

1. This is his usual practice.

2. This situation may change.

**Exercise 5. Fill in the gaps with appropriate articles.**

1. It was hot; the old people said that it was ... hottest spell which the town had ever known. 2. Robert Jordan is ... woman of about fifty almost as big as Pablo. 3. Water freezes at ... temperature of 0 degrees Celsius. 4. They did not even have ... same colour of eyes. 5. Of course, it is ... very good thing for ... man to be ... gentleman. 6. I know ... very half-acre where it is grown. 7. Riding is ... hobby that one can follow both I ... winter and in ... summer. 8. ... apple ...

day keeps ... doctor away. 9. ... strong wind prevented us from sailing off. 10. ... Mr. Claus wants to see you at once, madam.

**Exercise 6. Fill in the gaps with appropriate prepositions.**

1. ... what page can I find this rule? 2. You can hardly go there ... foot. It is a long way. 3. See picture 9 ... the bottom of page 15. 4. What do you suggest to end the party ...? 5. She lay ... the sun all morning, and got sunburnt. 6. At last they arrived ... Tokyo. 7. We arrived ... England successfully. 8. When I arrived ... the camp, all people were gone. There was something wrong. 9. There was nothing ... the corner of the room. 10. There must be a chemist's ... the corner of the street. 11. Are you ... home? – No, I am just going ... home. 12. He poured some wine ... the bottle. 13. You cannot see him ... this picture. 14. Two dogs ran ... the gate. 15. We do a lot of activities ... class.

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Він ремонтує своє авто вже три тижні, але немає жодного результату. А я сподівалася, що він вже закінчив і ми можемо поїхати у відпустку. 2. Вона вже упродовж усього сезону грає у симфонічному оркестрі. Мабуть її вже залучили до основного складу. 3. Уряд вже підвищив мінімальну пенсію? – Так, на (by) сім відсотків. 4. Буревій повалив багато стовпів, і тепер у селах немає електрики. 5. Вони тільки один раз були у Лондоні, й, звичайно, хотіли б поїхати туди ще раз. 6. Я вже два роки вчуся грати у теніс, але не досяг добрих результатів. 7. Ви звернули увагу на те, як гарно вона говорить німецькою. 8. Ця країна вже багато років приймає (welcome) іммігрантів з вищою освітою. 9. Джейн підвищила свої бали. Зрозуміло, що вона працювала. 10. З того часу, як ти отримала листа, ти у поганому настрої. Щось сталося? 11. Останнім часом вони підвищили плату за відвідування басейну, тому зараз туди так мало ходить людей. 12. Джон керує компанією вже п'ятнадцять років і ні у кого навіть думки немає, що це може робити хтось інший. 13. Чому ти такий мокрий? – Я увесь час біг під дощем. 14. Не зважай на безлад у квартирі. Я намагаюся полагодити систему опалювання. 15. А тепер усі йдуть на кухню. Я приготувала пиріг. 16. Поки що ця група випустила два альбоми. Але ми чекаємо на ще один до кінця цього року. 17. Чому вона залізла на стілець? – Вона усе життя боїться мишей. 18. Лікарі безперервно стежать (monitor) за тиском крові у цього пацієнта. Його стан досить важкий. 19. Вона не така досвідчена, як я вважав. 20. Останнім часом він багато часу проводить у клубах та казино. Невже він виграв купу грошей у лотерею?



## LESSON 9

Text: The importance of foreign language study  
Grammar: 1) Modal verbs (can, may, must, should)  
2) Semi-modal verbs (have, need)

### THE IMPORTANCE OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE STUDY

*Those who know nothing of foreign languages, know nothing of their own. ~  
Johann Wolfgang von Goethe*

How many languages do you speak? If your answer is one, then you need to wake up and look around you – the world is getting smaller and the **citizens** of the world are **rapidly** bridging the **boundaries** of language and even social / cultural differences. Learning a new language can mean **broadening** career opportunities, educational opportunities, **enhancing** global exchange of ideas and information and of course enjoying the beauty of a completely **alien** language by getting to know the grammatical as well as sociocultural and historical aspects associated with it. Not just that. Learning a new language might also help to enhance your overall learning abilities and broaden your perspective while looking at the world. German, Japanese, Chinese, English, Hindi, Sanskrit, French, Russian, Portuguese, Spanish or any other language has its own rich **knowledge** base. Learning a foreign language sharpens our overall **cognitive** skills and helps in better understanding of several subjects and concepts associated with the language.

Learning a language is a multi-faceted learning experience, which **enriches** you in many ways. First of all learning a new language brings you closer to the origins of the language, and the cultural, historical and social associations of the language with its place of origin. Thus learning a language is like getting to know an **entire** cultural or social system, with references to the lifestyle, geography, history, arts, economy as well **contemporary** sociocultural practices **including** regional dialects and **diversities**, clothing style, as well as the culinary practices in the area where the language is spoken.

**Forging** new business ties and contacts for trade in various countries can only be possible with familiarity with each other's languages. Job opportunities for people who learn foreign dialects also include profiles like language translators and interpreters or travel guides in the tourism business. In case of international government and politics arena, the people who are conversant with the foreign languages also have a major role to play during important **negotiations**, meetings and can be well qualified to become **ambassadors** in outside countries.

At the end you must know that there are **plenty of** reasons to learn a foreign language, however, never learn a language only with an aim to grab a job opportunity. Remember that you have not mastered a language until you can think in it. It is very easy to think in English, **allow** your brain to translate it into the foreign dialect and then utter a **crude** translation of your thoughts, but the true master of languages is the one who can think in the foreign language that he / she learns. Try and **embrace** the foreign dialect and experience the culture and history associated with it. The way to learn a language might be to **acknowledge** yourself with the basic reading, writing and speaking skills, but mastering a foreign dialect **requires** you to accept the language with an open heart and treat it like your own.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

Citizens, rapidly, boundaries, broadening, enhancing, alien, knowledge, cognitive, enriches, entire, contemporary, including, diversities, forging, travel guides, negotiations, ambassadors, plenty of, allow, crude, embrace, acknowledge, require.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 5. Study the essential vocabulary.**

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Citizen** (noun) [countable] **1. Someone who lives in a particular town, country, or state**, e. g. *We need our schools to teach students to be good citizens.*

**2. Someone who legally belongs to a particular country and has rights and responsibilities there, whether they are living there or not** [national], e. g. *At the time, there were over 2000 British citizens living in Iraq.*

**2. Rapidly** (adverb) **1. Very quickly and in a very short time**, e. g. *The disease was spreading more rapidly than expected;* rapidly growing/changing/expanding etc. e. g. *The rapidly changing world of technology.*

**3. Boundary** (noun) *plural boundaries* **1.** [countable] **The real or imaginary line that marks the edge of a state, country** etc, or the edge of an

area of land that belongs to someone: national/state/city etc boundary; geographical/natural boundary; political boundary (an official recognized boundary), e. g. *We walked through the churchyard towards the boundary wall. The property's **boundary line** is 25 feet from the back of the house.*

**2.** [countable usually plural] **The limit of what is acceptable or thought to be possible** boundary of e. g. *The boundaries of human knowledge; within/beyond the boundaries of something e. g. Within the boundaries of the law.* **3. Push back the boundaries (of something)** (= to make a new discovery, work of art etc that is very different from what people have known before, and that changes the way they think) e. g. *Art that pushes back the boundaries;* **4.** [countable] **The point at which one feeling, idea, quality etc stops and another starts** boundary of/between e. g. *The boundaries between work and play.*

**4. Broaden** (verb) [transitive] **1. To increase something such as your knowledge, experience, or range of activities**, e. g. *The course helps school-leavers broaden their knowledge of the world of work; I'd like to work abroad to broaden my horizons* (=learn, experience, or attempt new things). *Travel broadens the mind* (= helps you to understand and accept other people's beliefs, customs etc) **2.** [intransitive and transitive] **To affect or include more people or things** [= widen, expand], e. g. *Mr Mates said the party must broaden its appeal to younger voters. I want to broaden the discussion to other aspects of the problem.* **3.** [intransitive and transitive] **To make something wider or to become wider** [= widen] e. g. *Mark's smile broadened. The council decided to broaden the pavement.*

**5. Enhance** (verb) [transitive] **to improve something** e. g. *Good lighting will enhance any room. The publicity has enhanced his reputation.*

**6. Alien** (adjective) **1. Very different from what you are used to**, especially in a way that is difficult to understand or accept [= strange], e. g. *The alien environment of the city. Be alien to somebody*, e. g. *A way of life that is totally alien to us.* **2. Belonging to another country or race** [= foreign], e. g. *Alien cultures; an alien multiracial society.* **3.** [only before noun] **Relating to creatures from another world**, e. g. *Alien beings from another planet.*

**7. Knowledge** (noun) [uncountable] **1. The information, skills, and understanding that you have gained through learning or experience**, e. g. *You need specialist knowledge to do this job; knowledge of*, e. g. *His knowledge of ancient civilizations is unrivalled; knowledge about*, e. g. *The need to increase knowledge about birth contro; Salesmen with good technical knowledge of what they are selling; An in-depth knowledge of accounting is not necessary as training will be given; Someone with a background knowledge of engineering.* **2. When you know about a particular situation or event, or the information you have about it**, e. g. *Evans denied all knowledge of the robber. I had no knowledge of this whatsoever until The Times contacted me.*

**In the knowledge that**, e. g. *Kay smiled, secure in the knowledge that she was right.* **Be common/public knowledge** (= be known about by everyone), e. g. *Their affair is public knowledge;* **Not to my knowledge** (= I do not think so) without somebody's knowledge, e. g. *He was annoyed to find the contract had been signed without his knowledge. She acted with the full knowledge of her boss* (= her boss knew about her action).

**8. Cognitive** (adjective) **formal related to the process of knowing, understanding, and learning something**, e. g. *Cognitive psychology.*

**9. Enrich** (verb) [transitive] **1. To improve the quality of something, especially by adding things to it**, e. g. *How can I enrich my vocabulary?* **2. To make someone richer.**

**10. Entire** (adjective) [only before noun] **used when you want to emphasize that you mean all of a group, period of time, amount etc [= whole]**, e. g. *The entire staff agreed. Have you drunk the entire bottle?*

**11. Contemporary** (adjective) **1. Belonging to the present time** [= modern] contemporary music/art/dance etc, e. g. *An exhibition of contemporary Japanese prints. Life in contemporary Britain.* **2. Happening or done in the same period of time** contemporary with, e. g. *The wall hangings are thought to be roughly contemporary with the tiled floors.*

**12. Including** (preposition) **used to introduce something or someone that is part of a larger group or amount you have just mentioned**, e. g. *The price is £ 25.50, including postage and packing.*

**13. Diversity** (noun) **1. [uncountable] the fact of including many different types of people or things**; cultural/ethnic/linguistic etc diversity, e. g. *The curriculum will take account of the ethnic diversity of the population.* **2. [singular] A range of different people, things, or ideas** [= variety] diversity of, e. g. *A diversity of opinions.*

**14. Forge** (verb) [transitive] **1. To form by heating and hammering**; beat into shape. **2. To form or make, especially by concentrated effort**, e. g. *To forge a friendship through mutual trust. In 1776 the United States forged an alliance with France. The two women had forged a close bond.* **3. To imitate** (handwriting, a signature, etc.) fraudulently.

**15. Negotiation** (noun) [countable usually plural, uncountable] **official discussions between the representatives of opposing groups who are trying to reach an agreement**, especially in business or politics; negotiation with, e. g. *The negotiations with the company had reached a crucial stage.* **Negotiation between**, e. g. *This follows private negotiations between the landowner, and the leisure centre.* **Negotiation on/over**, e. g. *He is trying to involve community leaders in negotiations on reform.* **Open/enter into negotiations (with somebody)** (= start official discussions), e. g. *The government opened negotiations with the IMF for another loan. The next round of arms negotiations.*

**16. Ambassador** (noun) [countable] **1.** An important official who represents his or her government in a foreign country. **Ambassador to**, e. g. *The US ambassador to Spain.* **2. Ambassador for**, someone who represents a particular sport, business etc because they behave in a way that people admire, e. g. *He has made some good films and he is a good ambassador for the industry.*

**17. Allow** (verb) [transitive] **1. Can do something, to let someone do or have something, or let something happen** [= permit] allow somebody/something to do something, e. g. *My parents wouldn't allow me to go to the party.* **Allow somebody something**, e. g. *Passengers are allowed one item of hand luggage each. How much time are we allowed?* **Allow somebody in/out/up** etc, e. g. *I don't allow the cat in the bedroom. The audience is not allowed backstage.* **Something is (not) allowed** (= something is or is not officially permitted), e. g. *Are dictionaries allowed in the exam? We don't allow diving in the pool.* **2. To make it possible for something to happen or for someone to do something**, especially something helpful or useful [= permit], e. g. *This adjustment of the figures allows a fairer comparison.* **Allow for**, e. g. *Our new system will allow for more efficient use of resources.* **Allow somebody to do something**, e. g. *A 24-hour ceasefire allowed the two armies to reach an agreement.*

**18. Crude** (adjective) **1. Not exact or without any detail, but generally correct and useful**, e. g. *A crude estimate of the population available for work.* **2. Not developed to a high standard, or made with little skill**, e. g. *A crude wooden bridge; crude workmanship.* **3. Offensive or rude** [= vulgar], e. g. *His language was often crude.* **4. [only before noun] Crude oil, rubber etc is in its natural or raw condition before it is treated with chemicals.**

**19. Embrace** (verb) **1. [intransitive and transitive] To put your arms around someone and hold them in a friendly or loving way** [= hug], e. g. *Jack warmly embraced his son. Maggie and Laura embraced.* **2. [transitive] formal To eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion etc**, e. g. *We hope these regions will embrace democratic reforms.* **3. [transitive] formal To include something as part of a subject, discussion etc**, e. g. *This course embraces several different aspects of psychology.*

**20. Require** (verb) [transitive not in progressive] **1. To need something**, e. g. *Campbell's broken leg will probably require surgery.* **2. Be required to do something** if you are required to do or have something, a law or rule says you must do it or have it, e. g. *You are required by law to wear a seat belt.* require that.

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**1. Broaden out** *phrasal verb* if something, especially a river or road, **broadens out, it becomes wider** [= widen out] e. g. *The river broadens out at this point.*

**2. Plenty of** – a large quantity that is enough or more than enough, e. g. *Make sure she gets plenty of fresh air. No need to hurry – you've got plenty of time.*

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. The mayor urged **citizens** to begin preparing for a major storm. 2. Flynn's appeal **broadened** as the campaign continued into the summer months. 3. As a result, they can manage their resources with agility, and quickly respond to the demands of a **rapidly** changing global market. 4. Divisions and consolidations have been effected, and new **boundary** lines have been formed in other instances. 5. They need to **broaden** their understanding of other cultures. 6. You can **enhance** the flavor of the dish by using fresh herbs. 7. It's completely **alien** to her nature to wish evil of anyone. 8. The equipment is complex and requires specialist **knowledge** to be repaired. 9. Researchers have been aware of the surprising **cognitive** abilities of these crows for some years now. 10. The drink is **enriched** with vitamin C. 11. It was the worst day in my **entire** life. 12. The professor believes the notion that, early cave dwellers were **contemporary** with the dinosaurs, is absurd. 13. What's **required** is a complete reorganization of the system. 14. The city is known for its cultural **diversity**. 15. Back in the 1980s, they were attempting to **forge** a new kind of rock music. 16. The college president was against any **negotiation** with the students. 17. An **ambassador** is an official envoy, especially a highest ranking diplomat who represents a State and is usually accredited to another sovereign State or country. 18. Women are not **allowed** to enter the mosque. 19. They built a **crude** shelter out of branches. 20. It's a subject that **embraces** many areas of learning. 21. The price is £ 13,650, not **including** tax.

**Exercise 7. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. She was a United States citizen but lived most of her life abroad. 2. We have a hardworking research staff that keeps careful track of a rapidly changing world in many ways. 3. These boundary conditions allow convergence between moist maritime air and dry continental air. 4. The police have broadened the scope of the investigation. 5. The image has been digitally enhanced to show more detail. 6. New immigrants with customs alien to the community where they have settled. 7. He did not have much knowledge of American history. 8. Under time pressure, negotiators tend to rely more on stereotypes and cognitive shortcuts. 9. Add fertilizer to enrich the soil. 10. The war affected an entire generation of young Americans. 11. The good news delighted everyone, including me. 12. The school aims for diversity in its student population.

13. At such times, boosting news may seem the cheapest way to forge ahead. 14. The price is generally open to negotiation. 15. Ambassadors were originally regarded as personal representatives of their country's chief executive rather than of the whole country. 16. Don't allow your problems to dominate your life. 17. Nobody was making crude jokes or bragging about. 18. Charity embraces all acts of generous giving. 19. Most house plants require regular watering.

**Exercise 8. Paraphrase the following sentence using the essential vocabulary.**

1. After eight years of residency, you will be granted the status of freeman. 2. We need to get this finished as quickly as possible. 3. Their yards were separated by a line of trees. 4. As far as I know the scope of the investigation has widened. 5. Education can make your life much better. 6. New immigrants have customs foreign to the community where they have settled. 7. She has gained a lot of wisdom over the years. 8. This course was designed for students wishing to improve their English. 9. The doctor assured me that the whole procedure would only take a few minutes. 10. Their latest movie is a modern version of a classic children's story. 11. Four more countries applied to join the EU, among them were Sweden and Austria. 12. I was surprised by the variety of the choices that were available. 13. The Prime Minister is determined to form a good relationship with America's new leader. 14. We have had a meaningful discussion and I believe we are very close to a deal. 15. Embassy officials met with the new representative of Japan. 16. Some people seem to let their kids do whatever they like. 17. Last year an unreasoned summary of the country's history was made. 18. They hugged one last time before going their separate ways. 19. Further research is urgently needed if we are to find a cure.

**Exercise 9. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. Діяти у межах закону. 2. Троє плавців швидко наближалися до корабля. 3. Сухопутна межа між Європою і Азією умовна. 4. Кілька місцевих жителів. 5. Розширювати свій кругозір. 6. Посилювати вплив. 7. Чужорідні культури. 8. Отримувати знання. 9. Пізнавальні процеси. 10. Збагачуватись за чужий рахунок. 11. Я провів цілий час, намагаючись відкрити двері зламаним ключем. 12. Відвідувати клас з сучасного танцю. 13. Сім осіб, включаючи трьох поліцейських, потрапили в ДТП минулого тижня. 14. Жанрова різноманітність. 15. Укласти договір про довгострокове співробітництво. 16. Переговори з іноземними партнерами. 17. На міжнародному форумі в Монако посол Франції нагородив почесних діячів мистецтва. 18. Я не дозволяю своїм дітям повертатися додому так пізно. 19. Сира нафта – це природна легкозаймиста рідина. 20. Ця визначна битва охопила простір в кілька кілометрів. 21. Всяке нове діло вимагає досвіду.

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainianю**

1. The company is looking to enhance its earnings potential. 2. The investigation has broadened to include the mayor's staff. 3. His interests broadened to include art and music, not just sports. 4. How can I enrich my vocabulary? 5. A group of Japanese citizens was arrested yesterday. 6. This kind of emotions is alien to her temperament. 7. The year studying in the US gives students personal knowledge of American culture. 8. Homo sapiens' survival is founded in their filling an evolutionary niche referred to as the cognitive niche. 9. She has dedicated her entire life to helping others. 10. They tried to enrich themselves at the expense of the poor. 11. The largest helium sources in the world are rapidly reaching capacity. 12. The fence runs along the entire length of the building. 13. But they also say it provides a platform on which more complex cognitive tasks can take place relatively easily. 14. – What are you looking for? – I can't find the magazine, I bought yesterday, which is devoted to contemporary fashions. 15. You'll need a variety of skills, including leadership and negotiating. 16. The island has more diversity in plant life than other islands nearby. 17. We need a negotiation between the townspeople and mayor over the site of the new library. 18. During our entire stay of a month in Paris, both the American Ambassador and his wife, as well as several other Americans, were very kind to us. 19. The system allows you to transfer data easily from one computer to another. 20. She first described the procedure in crude terms, and then went into more detail. 21. Most West European countries have embraced the concept of high-speed rail networks with enthusiasm. 22. Regulations require that students attend at least 90 % of the lectures. 23. In the human race, there is no evidence that there is a genetic link, despite attempts to forge such a link.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Останнім часом народна партія розширила свій вплив на всі сторони суспільного життя країни. 2. Як було повідомлено у вечірніх новинах, після пожежі трьох місцевих жителів було госпіталізовано. 3. На сирійсько-турецькому кордоні почали будівництво огорожі висотою в 4 метри і довжиною в 900 км. 4. Хазяїн кав'ярні запропонував нам кави і пішов її варити. 5. Швидко пахощі чорної кави наповнили увесь зал. 6. Це селище буде повністю знесене і на його місці виростуть нові квартали, що розширюватимуть територію міста. 7. Голова місцевої державної адміністрації в межах своїх повноважень заборонив проведення будь-яких масових культурних заходів підчас епідемії грипу у місті. 8. Багряний захід сонця ще більше посилював гаму кольорів осені. 9. Наприкінці вересня мешканці мексиканського півострова спостерігали в нічному небі чужорідний об'єкт, який випускав блакитне світіння. 10. Людина, яка прагне знань, відчуває постійну потребу в їх поповненні. 11. Американськими вченими було проведено дослідження стосовно того, які навички най-



потрібніші для успішної кар'єри, виявилося, що найбільш затребуваними сьогодні та в майбутньому є загальні знання та когнітивні здібності людини. 12. Автор був надзвичайно вимогливий до мови власних творів, невтомно працював над збагаченням свого поетичного словника 13. Під час бунту на кораблі уся команда пішла проти капітана та його помічника. 14. Нещодавно я відвідав виставку робіт сучасних митців та став прихильником цього напрямку. 15. Наша подорож до Франції і перебування на місці протягом 3 тижнів коштуватиме до 300 фунтів, включаючи сюди видатки на паспорт та інші документи. 16. Різноманітність – це те, що відрізняє людину або групу людей: зовнішність, раса, вік, стать, етнічні особливості, релігія, достаток, географічне положення, соціальний клас, сімейний статус, освіта, досвід роботи, сфера діяльності, посада тощо. 17. Між співробітниками фірми склалися дружні відносини. 18. Вибач, але я не зможу піти на виставу разом з с тобою, я забув, на завтра в мене заплановані дуже важливі переговори з керівництвом нашого банку. 19. 16 січня 2014 року посол України в США Олександр Моцик зустрівся з новопризначеним Почесним консулом України в м. Новий Орлеан (штат Луїзіана) Едвардом Томасом Хейзом. 20. Пройти до хворого в палату дозволили тільки комусь одному з його товаришів. 21. Учнів треба ознайомити з найпростішими вимірювальними інструментами для подальшого дослідження. 22. В кінці кінців все з'ясувалося, мати з дочкою підійшли одна до одної та обнялися. 23. Мені постійно дзвонять та шлють повідомлення колектори, вимагають, щоб я сплатив якісь, невідомі мені, рахунки.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Beggars can't be choosers. 2. What should I do? Should I trust him? 3. Can you make the deadline? 4. Can you pay me in advance? 5. Can you reach the ceiling? 6. Even I can't believe that. 7. Happiness can't be bought. 8. He can also speak Russian. 9. He can run faster than me. 10. He can speak 10 languages. 11. No one must disturb him while he's sleeping. 12. We must never forget how much we owe to these brave men. 13. I can swim as well as you. 14. I can't explain it either. 15. I can't live without a TV. 16. I can't remember his name. 17. This book must not be removed from the library. 18. That fact can't be denied. 19. You can go if you want to. 20. I may be late, so don't wait for me. 21. White wine, not red, should be served with fish. 22. There may not be enough money to pay for the repairs. 23. Well, I may have been wrong. 24. They may have called while you were out. 25. It may be that Minoan ships were built and repaired here. 26. Try phoning Robert - he should be home by now. 27. There is a set of rules to show what members may

and may not do. 28. You may sit down or stand, just as you wish. 29. No one may own more than 10 % of the shares. 30. All passengers must wear seat belts. 31. It's getting late. I really must go. Let's hurry up. They must be waiting for us. 32. Every sentence should start with a capital letter. 33. We must all be patient. 34. I must have slept in an awkward position – I'm aching all over. 35. For the engine to work, the green lever must be in the "up" position. 36. Accidents must be reported to the safety officer. 37. You mustn't talk to your mother like that. 38. Passengers should proceed to Gate 12. 39. Some chemicals may cause environmental damage. 40. Children shouldn't be allowed to play in the street. 41. "I don't care what people think." "Well, you should." 42. Can you mail these for me? 43. You should read his new book. 44. Your job may well involve some travelling. 45. Australia should win this match. 46. You must work hard. 47. What do you mean, there are only ten tickets? There should be twelve. 48. It could've been much worse. 49. You could have fetched me from the airport! 50. Mike could have won the race if he hadn't had a crash. 51. I think I must have caught this cold from you. 52. The bottle must have leaked because the bag's all wet.

**Exercise 2. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. There will have to be a complete ceasefire before the Government will agree to talks. 2. Going to the dentist need not necessarily be a painful experience. 3. I am not sure I need read the report. 4. It'll have to be on a Sunday. 5. Do you think I need quit this job? 6. You've got to believe me! 7. Jim need never find out what I said. 8. You don't have to go with us if you don't want. 9. You need not answer any his questions. 10. I hate having to get up early in the morning. 11. If you earn more than £5000, you will have to pay tax. 12. I've got to be at the hospital at 4 o'clock. 13. You need not buy mineral water, we have plenty. I'll be working every other day. 14. There has to be an end to the violence. 15. You needn't have spent all that money. 16. You needn't stay long. 17. You have to be smart to succeed in this game. 18. First of all you have to mix the flour and the butter. 19. You needn't bother, I'll do it myself. 20. You'll have to come and meet my wife some time. 21. We don't have to rush – there's plenty of time.

**Exercise 3. Complete the sentences below choosing the correct modal verb.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ I have more cheese on my sandwich? 2. You \_\_\_\_\_ eat more vegetables. 3. \_\_\_\_\_ we buy the same television for our new flat. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ I have a coffee please? 5. You \_\_\_\_\_ smoke near children. 6. The passengers \_\_\_\_\_ wear their seatbelts at all times. 7. We \_\_\_\_\_ go to the concert if the rain stops. We don't know for sure. 8. I \_\_\_\_\_ ice skate very well. 9. The boys \_\_\_\_\_ wake up earlier than 7:30 am. They have class at 8:00 am. 10. The rock band \_\_\_\_\_ not play

very well last year. Now they are much better. 11. \_\_\_\_\_ you lend me \$ 10 please? 12. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the party tonight, but I am not sure. 13. She \_\_\_\_\_ play the piano. She is a very good player. 14. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ visit Olympic Games in Sochi when she is in Russia. 15. You \_\_\_\_\_ take your passport when you go on an airplane. 16. You \_\_\_\_\_ eat many vegetables if you want to be healthy. 17. Amanda \_\_\_\_\_ not go to the park tomorrow. She does not know for sure. 18. \_\_\_\_\_ I have another glass of juice? 19. You \_\_\_\_\_ not smoke inside a hospital. 20. You \_\_\_\_\_ visit Niagara Falls when you go to Canada. 21. You \_\_\_\_\_ bring your tracksuits when you have PE (Physical Education) classes. 22. The desks \_\_\_\_\_ to be left clean before going home. 23. My mother told me I \_\_\_\_\_ not forget to buy some bread.

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentences below choosing the correct semi-modal verb.**

1. Tom says he \_\_\_\_\_ to finish his essay by tomorrow. 2. We \_\_\_\_\_ walk all the way home. We can take a taxi. 3. He is in a hurry with his work; he \_\_\_\_\_ to give the report by tomorrow morning. 4. Take your time. You \_\_\_\_\_ be back before eight. 5. You don't \_\_\_\_\_ to cook all the cakes Tom, there are still a lot of them in the kitchen. 6. The workbooks \_\_\_\_\_ be brought to the class if there is no homework. 7. If they want to buy a bigger house next year they \_\_\_\_\_ to save money. 8. The washing-machine has been repaired, we \_\_\_\_\_ to buy a new one. 9. At this school, girls \_\_\_\_\_ to wear a grey skirt and black shoes. 10. Students \_\_\_\_\_ to pay for the transportation because it is free. 11. You \_\_\_\_\_ wash these fruits. I've already washed them. 12. You \_\_\_\_\_ translate that. I understand what you say. 13. You \_\_\_\_\_ lend me your umbrella. I love walking in the rain. 14. You \_\_\_\_\_ call me. I will call you when I get home so that you save some money. 15. We've got plenty of time. We \_\_\_\_\_ leave yet. 16. We've got plenty of time. We \_\_\_\_\_ hurry. 17. Ann's line is engaged, she \_\_\_\_\_ to talk to her mother. 18. We have enough food at home. We \_\_\_\_\_ go shopping today. 19. That's not a secret. You \_\_\_\_\_ whisper. 20. There's plenty of time for you to make up your mind now. You \_\_\_\_\_ to decide now. 21. Students \_\_\_\_\_ stay at school during lunch break and they may go out. 22. I know what you mean. You \_\_\_\_\_ explain further. 23. I can go on my own. You \_\_\_\_\_ come with me.

**Exercise 5. Read the text below. Pay attention to the examples of the modal verbs use.**

I remember going to the British Museum one day to read up the treatment for some slight ailment of which I had a touch. I read all I came to read and then I began to study diseases, generally, turning the leaves idly.

I came to typhoid fever, read the symptoms and discovered I **must have had** it for months without knowing it. Cholera I had with severe complications and diphtheria I **must have been born** with. I was relieved to find that Bright's

disease I had only in a modified form and, so far as that was concerned, I **might live** for years. The only disease I **could conclude** I had not got was housemaid's knee.

I sat and pondered. I thought what an interesting case I **must be** from a medical point of view. I was hospital in myself. All students **need do** would be to walk round me and after that take their diploma.

I tried to feel my heart. I **could not feel** my heart. I think now that it **must have been** there all the time, and **must have been beating**, but **cannot account for it**.

I had walked into that reading-room a happy, healthy man, I crawled out a decrepit wreck.

*(After "Three Men in a Boat" by Jerome K. Jerome)*

### **Exercise 6. Insert articles where necessary.**

... first universities were established in ... 13<sup>th</sup> century in Oxford and Cambridge. Oxford was already an important town geographically, commercially and favoured by royalty. Cambridge was established as ... seat of learning when some Oxford students had ... quarrel with Oxford citizens and moved to Cambridge.

There were no further universities created in England for about 600 years until universities were established at London and Durham in the 1830's. In the mean-time Scotland had created four universities starting with St. Andrews in 1413 followed by Glasgow, Aberdeen and Edinburgh. ... Queen's University of Belfast was established as ... college in 1845 as part of ... federal Queen's University of Ireland and achieved independence in 1908. The federal university of Wales was founded in 1893 and remained so until 2007 when it's component institutions became independent.

Manchester became ... headquarters of ... federal Victoria University in 1880 which had colleges in Leeds and Liverpool. After problems Leeds and Liverpool set up there own universities in ... first decade of ... 20<sup>th</sup> century along with Birmingham, Sheffield and Bristol. These were collectively called "civic" universities as they were founded to bring benefits of higher education to provincial life. Younger civic universities created later were founded in Reading, Nottingham, Southampton, Hull, Exeter and Leicester.

There were 24 universities created in ... 1960's and 40 in ... 1990's when ... Polytechnics were given university status as a result of the Further and Higher Education Acts 1992. In August 2004, the government made it easier for university colleges to gain university status. A university gives the image of a town a great boost and in ... new millennium so far over 40 new universities have come into existence, either from mergers or improved status.

**Exercise 7. Complete the text below choosing the correct prepositions.**

As the oldest university ... the English-speaking world, Oxford is a unique and historic institution. There is no clear date ... foundation, but teaching existed ... Oxford ... some form ... 1096 and developed rapidly from 1167, when Henry II banned English students ... attending the University of Paris.

In the 13th century, rioting ... town and gown (townspeople and students) hastened the establishment of primitive halls of residence. These were succeeded by the first of Oxford's colleges, which began as medieval "halls of residence" or endowed houses under the supervision ... a Master. University, Balliol and Merton Colleges, which were established ... 1249 and 1264, are the oldest.

Less than a century later, Oxford had achieved eminence ... every other seat of learning, and won the praises ... popes, kings and sages ... virtue of its antiquity, curriculum, doctrine and privileges. In 1355, Edward III paid tribute ... the University ... its invaluable contribution ... learning; he also commented ... the services rendered ... the state by distinguished Oxford graduates.

... its early days, Oxford was a centre for lively controversy, ... scholars involved ... religious and political disputes.

From 1878, academic halls were established ... women and they were admitted to full membership ... the University ... 1920. Five all-male colleges first admitted women in 1974 and, ... then, all colleges have changed their statutes to admit both women and men.

During the 20th and early 21st centuries, Oxford added ... its humanistic core a major new research capacity in the natural and applied sciences, including medicine. In so doing, it has enhanced and strengthened its traditional role ... an international focus ... learning and a forum ... intellectual debate.

**Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Ганна, ти і твій брат повинні повернутися додому до 10:00 вечора. Ти обіцяла татові, бути слухняною та поводитися добре. 2. Чи повинні студенти приходити завтра? 3. Боюся, ми повинні вже йти, таксі чекає на нас. 4. Ти не повинен робити це знову. 5. Я повинен поговорити з тобою про дещо, це дуже важливо і не може більше чекати. 6. Чи можна мені написати цей тест олівцем? – Ні, не можна. 7. У дитинстві батьки подарували мені гітару, та, на жаль, я досі не вмію грати на ній. 8. Чи повинні ми робити письмове завдання на 5 сторінці? – Ні, не треба, ви повинні зробити тільки усні вправи. 9. Добре, що нам не потрібно робити все самостійно, ми маємо достатньо волонтерів, які можуть нам допомогти. 10. Ти не повинна приходити до офісу кожного дня, в тебе мають бути вихідні дні, коли ти маєш відпочивати. 11. –Чому ти сам, Марія не прийде? – Я телефонував їй, вона, мабуть, зайнята, не відповідає на дзвінки. 12. Зараз, мабуть, близько дванадцятої години. Де Майк? Він

має бути вже дома. 13. Поглянь на небо, погода чудова, ти даремно взяв парасоль. 14. – Даремно я туди ходив, мені не вдалося дізнатися нічого нового про нього. 15. Чи не могли б Ви допомогти мені, я не можу визначитися з кольором сукні. 16. О котрій годині тобі необхідно піти завтра до лікаря? 17. В мене завтра вихідний, тому мені не потрібно вставати рано. 18. Я не говорю італійською, хоча завжди мріяла вивчити цю мелодичну мову та вміти вільно спілкуватися на ній. 19. Давай поїдемо на велосипедах у гори? Я б з радістю, але, на жаль, я не вмію кататися. 20. Щоб досягти успіху, потрібно володіти знаннями, досвідом і терпінням. 21. А звідки мені знати, що ти говориш правду мені? 22. Я вважаю, що, перш за все, він повинен був проконсультуватися з фахівцем, перш ніж приймати таке важливе рішення. 23. Чи можу я побачитися з режисером у його офісі зараз? 24. Можна мені ще кави, будь ласка. 25. Якщо тобі знадобиться телефон, ти можеш скористатися моїм. 26. Ми могли б йому допомогти, але подумали, що він негідний цього. 27. Якщо ти не почнеш працювати зараз, ти не зможеш закінчити все через декілька днів.

## LESSON 10

Text: "GREAT BRITAIN"

Grammar: 1) Past Perfect

2) Degrees of comparison

### GREAT BRITAIN

United Kingdom, constitutional monarchy in northwestern Europe, is officially called the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. Great Britain is an island in the group of islands, known as the British Isles.

The British Isles **lie** in the north-west of Europe. They consist of two large islands, Great Britain and Ireland, and many smaller ones. Great Britain, the largest island in Europe, includes England, Scotland, and Wales. It is **separated** from Ireland by the Irish Sea, and from the Continent by the English Channel and the Strait of Dover. Great Britain and Northern Ireland form the United Kingdom (UK). The capital of the United Kingdom is the city of London, situated near the southeastern **tip** of England.

England is the largest and most populous **division** of the island of Great Britain, making up the south and east. Wales is on the west and Scotland is to the north. Northern Ireland is located in the northeast corner of Ireland, the second largest island in the British Isles. The surface of England and Ireland is flat, but the surface of Scotland and Wales is mountainous. The mountains are almost all in the western part. The highest mountain in the United Kingdom is Ben Nevis in Scotland (1343 m). The longest river is the Severn. It is in the south-west of England. The Thames is not so long as the Severn, it is shorter. The sea enters deeply into the land and has a great **influence** on the climate, which is damp but milder than in other European states: the winter is less cold and the summer is less hot.

More than 57 million people **live** in the United Kingdom. Most of the people of Great Britain live in big towns and cities. The capital of the country is London. The main industrial centres are Sheffield and Birmingham where iron goods are made, Manchester, the cotton centre of England, and others. The important ports of the country are London, Liverpool, Glasgow and others.

Britain's common historical population is called Anglo-Saxon. Germanic peoples from Europe – the Angles, the Saxons, and the Jutes – **arrived in** Britain between the 5th and 7th centuries AD. These people **tended** to be tall,

blond, and blue-eyed. Their language became the foundation of the basic, shorter, everyday words in modern English. These groups invaded Roman Britain, choosing to **settle** on the plains of England because of the mild climate and good soils. Native Britons including Celts who had absorbed the earliest peoples on the island, the prehistoric people **known as** Iberians, fled to the hills. Celts tended to be shorter than Anglo-Saxons and have rounder heads with darker or red hair.

After the Anglo-Saxon **conquest**, the Celts remained in Wales, Scotland, Ireland, and the West Country (the southwestern peninsula of Britain), where Celtic languages and culture are still celebrated. A great number of Scandinavians raided and settled in Great Britain and Ireland during the 9th century. In 1066 the Normans, French-speaking invaders of Norse origin, **conquered** England, adding yet another ethnic component. After the Normans **waves** of other foreigners and refugees had immigrated to Britain for religious, political, and economic reasons by the beginning of the 20th century.

Britain's mineral **resources** were historically important, but today most of these resources are either **exhausted** or produced in small quantities. Britain currently **relies** upon imports from larger, cheaper foreign supplies. Before and during the Roman occupation, about 2,000 years ago, Britain was noted for its tin mines, which were concentrated in Cornwall. The tin was mixed with **copper** to produce **bronze**, a most important material in **ancient times** used for weapons and jewelry. Nearly all tin mines in Britain had been exhausted by the middle of the twentieth century.

The British system of parliamentary government, often **referred** to as the Westminster model, was originally a vehicle for royal authority, though gradually **evolved** into a representative government and finally became **a means** through which democracy could be **exercised**. Today legislative **power** comes from the lower house of Parliament, known as the House of Commons. The freely elected members of the House of Commons select the nation's chief **executive**, the prime minister. He or she in turn **appoints** members of the House of Commons to the Cabinet, a body of advisers. Because the executive is not separated from the legislature, the government is efficient **as well as** responsive to the electorate.

Despite its relatively small size, Britain is highly developed economically, **preeminent** in the arts and sciences, **sophisticated in technology**, and highly **prosperous** and peaceful. In general, British subjects belong to one of the more affluent states of Europe and **enjoy** a high standard of living compared to the rest of the world.



## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

constitutional monarchy, officially called, known as, lie in the north-west, the English Channel, southeastern tip, populous, surface, great influence on climate, main industrial centres, iron goods, common historical population, to settle, to invade, to absorb, prehistoric people, to flee to hills, the Anglo-Saxon conquest, peninsula, foreigners and refugees, exhausted, cheaper foreign supplies, in ancient times, weapons and jewelry, parliamentary government, referred to as, a vehicle for royal authority, gradually, a means, legislative power, electorate, preeminent, a high standard of living, British subjects.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words and word combinations from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the essential vocabulary.**

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Separate** (verb) [transitive] 1) if something separates two places or two things, it is between them so that they are not touching each other: *e. g. The lighthouse is separated from the land by a wide channel.* 2) to divide or split into different parts, or to make something do this: *e. g. This will keep your dressing from separating. Separate the students into four groups. First, separate the eggs (= divide the white part from the yellow part).* 3) if two people who are married or have been living together separate, they start to live apart: *e. g. Jill and John separated a year ago.* 4) to recognize that one thing or idea is different from another: *e. g. She finds it difficult to separate fact from fantasy.* 5) if people separate, or if someone or something separates them, they move apart: *e. g. Ed stepped in to separate the two dogs. In the fog, they got separated from the group.* 6) to be the quality or fact that makes someone or something different from other people or things: *e. g. The capacity to think*

*separates humans from animals.* 7) if an amount separates two things, one thing is better or older than the other by that amount: *e. g. Three points now separate the two teams.*

**Separate the sheep from the goats** (British English) *also separate the wheat from the chaff* – to separate the good things from the bad things.

**2. Division** (noun) 1) the act of separating something into two or more different parts, or the way these parts are separated or shared.

**Division of something between/among/into something:** *as the division of words into syllables; the traditional division of labour (= the way that particular tasks are shared) between husband and wife.*

2) disagreement among the members of a group that makes them form smaller opposing groups

**Division between/within/among something:** *e. g. Can he heal the deep divisions among Republican ranks?*

**Racial/class/gender etc division:** *e. g. The old class divisions had begun to break down. The Army was plagued by internal divisions.*

3) the process of finding out how many times one number is contained in another. 4) a group that does a particular job within a large organization: *e. g. the Computer Services Division.* 5) a large military group: *e. g. a tank division.*

**3. Arrive** (verb) [intransitive] 1) to get to the place you are going to: *e. g. Give me a call to let me know you've arrived safely.*

**Arrive in/at**

*e. g. What time does the plane arrive in New York?*

**Arrive late/early**

*e. g. He arrived late as usual. By the time the police arrived on the scene, the burglars had fled.*

2) if something arrives, it is brought or delivered to you: *e. g. The card arrived on my birthday.* 3) if an event or particular period of time arrives, it happens: *e. g. When her wedding day arrived, she was really nervous.* 4) if a new idea, method, product etc arrives, it begins to exist or starts being used: *e. g. Since computers arrived, my job has become much easier.* 5) to be born: *e. g. Sharon's baby arrived just after midnight.*

**Arrive at a decision/solution/promise etc** – to reach a decision, solution etc after a lot of effort: *e. g. After much consideration, we have arrived at a decision.*

**4. Settle** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) to end an argument or solve a disagreement *as to settle a dispute/lawsuit/conflict/argument etc:* *e. g. Rodman met with Kreeger to try and settle the dispute over his contract. We hope the factions will be able to settle their differences (= agree to stop arguing) by peaceful means.* 2) to decide what you are going to do, especially so that you

can make definite arrangements: *e. g. Nothing's settled yet. It's settled then. I'll go back to the States in June. "She's only 15." "That settles it! (= that is enough information for a definite decision to be made) We're not taking her with us!"* 3) to go to a place where no people have lived permanently before and start to live there: *e. g. This territory was settled in the mid-1850s by German immigrants.* 4) to go to live in a new place, and stay there for a long time as to settle in: *e. g. Many Jewish people settled in the Lower East Side.* 5) to put yourself or someone else in a comfortable position as to settle yourself in/on etc something: *e. g. Donna did not dare settle herself too comfortably into her seat, in case she fell asleep. The dog settled on the grass to enjoy its bone. A nurse settled the old man into a chair.* 6) to become quiet and calm, or to make someone quiet and calm: *e. g. When the children had settled, Miss Brown gave out the new reading books. She breathed deeply to settle her nerves (= stop herself from feeling worried or frightened).* 7) to deal with all the details of a business or of someone's money or property, so that nothing further needs to be done: *e. g. When it is finally settled, the Marshall estate may be worth no more than \$ 100,000. After her husband's death, Jackie went to the city to settle his affairs.* 8) if a quality or feeling settles over a place or person, it begins and has a strong effect as to settle over/on: *e. g. An uneasy silence settled over the room. Depression settled over her like a heavy black cloud.*

**Settle (somebody) down** to become quiet and calm, or to make someone quiet and calm: *e. g. Shh! Settle down please! Now turn to page 57. When Kyle was a baby we used to take him for rides in the car to settle him down.*

**5) Conquer** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) to get control of a country by fighting: *e. g. The Normans conquered England in 1066. Egypt was conquered by the Persian king Kambyses.*

2) to defeat an enemy: *e. g. The Zulus conquered all the neighbouring tribes.*

3) to gain control over something that is difficult, using a lot of effort as to conquer your nerves/fear: *e. g. efforts to conquer inflation; drugs to conquer the disease; She was determined to conquer her fear of flying.* 4) to succeed in climbing to the top of a mountain when no one has ever climbed it before: *e. g. an attempt to conquer the peaks of Everest.* 5) to become very successful in a place: *e. g. In the last few years, the company has succeeded in conquering the European market.*

**6) Wave** noun 1) a line of raised water that moves across the surface of the sea: *e. g. a ship riding the ocean waves. Dee watched the waves breaking on the shore. A powerful tidal wave (= very large wave) struck Jamaica, killing 2000.* 2) a sudden increase in a particular type of behaviour, activity, or feeling

**A wave of anger/sympathy/relief etc:** *e. g. There was a wave of public sympathy for her when she died.*

**A wave of terror/fear/panic:** *e. g. A wave of panic spread through the crowd.*

**A wave of nausea/dizziness/tiredness:** *e. g. A wave of nausea swept over me.*

**A wave of violence/attacks/bombings:** *e. g. the recent wave of terrorist bombings; the latest crime wave to hit New York.*

3) a movement in which you raise your arm and move your hand from side to side: *e. g. He dismissed her with a wave of the hand.* 4) a feeling or activity that happens again and again in a series: *e. g. The pain swept over him in waves. Wave after wave of aircraft passed overhead.*

**7) Exhaust** (verb) [transitive] 1) to make someone feel extremely tired: *e. g. A full day's teaching exhausts him.*

**Exhaust yourself:** *e. g. He'd exhausted himself carrying all the boxes upstairs.*

2) to use all of something: *e. g. We are in danger of exhausting the world's oil supply. Having exhausted all other possibilities, I asked Jan to look after the baby.*

3) exhaust a subject/topic etc to talk about something so much that you have nothing more to say about it: *e. g. Once we'd exhausted the subject of Jill's wedding, I didn't know what to say.*

**8) Exercise** (verb) [transitive] 1) to use a power, right, or quality that you have: *e. g. There are plans to encourage people to exercise their right to vote. People who can exercise some control over their surroundings feel less anxious.* 2) to do sports or physical activities in order to stay healthy and become stronger: *e. g. It's important to exercise regularly.* 3) to make an animal walk or run in order to keep it healthy and strong: *e. g. people exercising their dogs in the park.* 4) to make someone think about a subject or problem and consider how to deal with it: *e. g. It's an issue that's exercised the mind of scientists for a long time.*

**9) Execute** (verb) [transitive] 1) to kill someone, especially legally as a punishment *as to execute somebody for something:* *e. g. Thousands have been executed for political crimes. 13 people were summarily executed (= killed without any trial or legal process) by the guerrillas.* 2) to do something that has been carefully planned: *e. g. The job involves drawing up and executing a plan of nursing care.* 3) to perform a difficult action or movement *as beautifully/skilfully/poorly etc executed:* *e. g. The skaters' routine was perfectly executed.* 4) to make sure that the instructions in a legal document are followed.

**10) Appoint** (verb) [transitive] 1) to choose someone for a position or a job: *e. g. officials appointed by the government.*

**Appoint somebody to something:** *e. g. He's been appointed to the State Supreme Court.*

**Appoint somebody to do something:** *e. g. A committee was appointed to consider the plans.*

**Appoint (somebody) as something:** *e. g. O'Connell was appointed as chairman.*

2) to arrange or decide a time or place for something to happen: *e. g. The committee appointed a day in June for celebrations. Everyone assembled in the hall at the appointed time (= at the time that had been arranged).*

**11) Power** (noun) 1) the ability or right to control people or events: *e. g. We all felt that the chairman had too much power.*

**power over:** *e. g. People should have more power over the decisions that affect their lives. Workers had little political power. He was engaged in a bitter power struggle with the director (= a situation in which groups or leaders try to get control). Nothing will change until there are more women in positions of power.*

**Power-mad/power-crazy/power-hungry:** *as power-hungry politicians..*

2) the position of having political control of a country or government: *e. g. The bishops had almost absolute power*

**In power:** *as the party in power; e. g. The dictator had been in power for seven years.*

**Come/rise to power** (= start having political control): *e. g. De Gaulle came to power in 1958. They seized power in a military coup.*

3) the ability to influence people or give them strong feelings *as the power of his writing; the immense power of television; the pulling power (= ability to attract people or attention) of major celebrities.* 4) the right or authority to do something: *e. g. The police have been given special powers to help them in the fight against terrorism. The committee has the power to order an enquiry. The chairman has the power of veto on all decisions.* 5) energy that can be used to make a machine work or to make electricity *as nuclear/wind/solar etc power: e. g. Many people are opposed to the use of nuclear power.* 6) electricity that is used in houses, factories etc: *e. g. Make sure the power is switched off first.*

**Power cut/failure/outage** (= a short time when the electricity supply is not working): *e. g. Parts of the country have had power cuts because of the storms. The power came back on.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**Constitutional monarchy** – a country ruled by a king or queen whose power is limited by a constitution.

**Populous** – a populous area has a large population in relation to its size: *e. g. Hong Kong is one of the most populous areas in the world.*

**To be celebrated** – to praise someone or something: *e. g. poems that celebrate the joys of love.*

**In large/small/sufficient etc quantities** – *e. g. Buy vegetables in small quantities, for your immediate use. Your work has improved in quantity and quality this term.*

**To be noted for** – well known or famous, especially because of some special quality or ability: *e. g. The city is noted for its 18th-century architecture.*

**To be referred to as** – to mention or speak about someone or something: *e. g. He likes to be referred to as "Doctor Khee".*

**In turn** – one after the other, especially in a particular order: *e. g. Each of us in turn had to describe how alcohol had affected our lives.*

**Affluent** – having plenty of money, nice houses, expensive things etc, wealthy: *e. g. affluent families*

**Preeminent** – much more important, more powerful, or better than any others of its kind: *e. g. his preeminent position in society.*

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. **Separating** prisoners from each other is sometimes the only way of preventing riots. 2. A tall fence **separates** the two houses. 3. After years of abuse, Ginny finally **separated** from her husband. 4. He sat at a desk, **separating** a pile of mail into "urgent" and "non-urgent". 5. If you two don't stop talking during class, I'll have to **separate** you. 6. Items in the list should be **separated** by commas. 7. The diaphragm is the strong muscular wall that **separates** the chest from the stomach. 8. The milk had soured and **separated**. 9. I work in the administration **division** as a mail mover. 10. The company's Credit Data **Division** is based in Orange County. 11. The entire **division** of 18,000 troops will be home in about a month. 12. Did my package **arrive**? 13. Has your sister's baby **arrived** yet? 14. It was already dark by the time they **arrived** at their hotel. 15. When Uncle Guy **arrived** from Dublin he brought them an enormous box of chocolates. 16. A look of fury **settled** on his face. 17. After her husband's death, Jackie went to the city to **settle** her husband's affairs. 18. Historians are unsure when the territory was first **settled**. 19. Try to **settle** the puppy **down** here before going to bed. 20. We wound up taking him for long rides in the car to **settle him down**. 21. Ari not only **conquered** his drinking problem, but he's found a new career. 22. Disney's quest is to **conquer** the worlds of entertainment and leisure. 23. Hernan Cortes led Spanish troops to **conquer** the Aztecs. 24. I gave him a friendly **wave**. 25. Kelly's hair has a natural **wave** to it. 26. Leona dismissed the servants with a **wave** of the hand. 26. It **exhausted** him to talk for too long, but he loved hearing all the theater gossip. 27. Over-intensive farming had **exhausted** the supply of nutrients in the soil. 28. A lot of managers spend long hours in their cars and **exercise** very little. 29. Even people who start **exercising** quite late in life notice considerable benefits. 30. Karl **exercises** by playing racquetball twice a week. 31. Brock's attorney has yet to **execute** the will. 32. Franklin is in charge of **executing** the company's reorganization plan. 33. King Charles I was **executed** on 30th January 1649. 34. A committee was **appointed** to consider changes to the Prison Service. 35. Judge Bailey **appointed** a new time for the trial. 36. Pope

John Paul II **appointed** several new bishops. 36. A **power** struggle developed between the president and the generals. 37. A dynamometer is used to measure muscle **power**. 38. China has threatened to use its veto **power** in the Security Council. 39. Do you think the police have too much **power**? 40. Doctors cannot explain why some people lack the **power** to fight off the disease.

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. There are signs of growing division within the administration about the best strategy to adopt. 2. As the milk turns sour, it separates into thick curds and watery liquid. 3. At this point, the satellite separates from its launcher. 4. Kids are put under a tremendous emotional strain when their parents separate. 5. Linda and George have only been married for a year and they're already thinking of separating. 6. She looked over the picket fence that separates her lawn from the neighbor's. 7. For there was a scramble for individual honours with just two ounces separating the leading four. 8. He was motivated by greed, envy, and the lust for power. 9. The two were not separated until Dan was kept back at Groton so Harry could enter Harvard first. 10. To obtain serum, we permit the blood to clot and then separate the clot from the residual serum. 11. The sales and advertising departments are both part of the marketing division. 12. Ten-foot waves crashed against the shore. 13. Anne and I separated for three months, but we are now together again. 14. Our flight arrived in Osaka two hours ahead of schedule. 15. Supply ships have started arriving at ports along the East coast. 16. The baby arrived at five minutes past midnight. 17. The British Prime Minister arrived in Tokyo today. 17. What time does his flight arrive? 18. When I first arrived here none of the other students would talk to me. 19. When the day of the wedding arrived, everything was ready. 20. I settled the bill and left the restaurant. 21. In the end we settled the deal on very favorable terms. 22. Many Jewish immigrants settled in the Lower East Side. 23. Nothing is settled yet. 24. Julius Caesar conquered Gaul, which we know today as France. 25. Sailors travelled to the New World with the urge to conquer and explore. 26. Sir Hillary and Sherpa Tenzing made history in 1953 by conquering Mount Everest. 27. Security chiefs fear a new wave of terrorist bombings. 28. The Warriors are currently first in the Pacific division. 29. The country has been brought to a standstill by the latest wave of strikes. 30. The effort of swimming against the current exhausted him. 31. The organization has exhausted all its funds. 32. The trip totally exhausted us. 33. We are in danger of exhausting the world's oil supply. 34. Many people are exercising their right to leave the state pension plan. 35. Our manager exercised her influence to get Rigby the position. 36. Parents sometimes need to exercise their authority and say "no" to their children. 37. The directors make the decisions, but it's the

managers who have to execute them. 38. The goal of landing people on Mars will not be an easy one to execute. 39. The show's dance routines were well executed. 40. Schreiber was appointed director of human resources. 41. Simpson has been appointed to the Memphis Branch board for a three-year term. 42. The committee was appointed to make recommendations on housing development in the area. 43. France was the only European power not to sign the treaty. 44. Germany's strong industrial base has helped maintain its status as a major world power. 45. In order to separate a lunar effect the team looked at the lunar day, the position of the Moon.

**Exercise 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. Only Parliament has the authority to make new laws. 2. The process of finding out how many times one number is contained in another is a common procedure in Mathematics. 3. The ostrich is a bird that no longer has the ability of flight. 4. We got to the palace, went in, and got to the dressing-room. 5. That night they slept in two not connected bedrooms. 6. For the past three years they have been leading totally different lives. 7. Raw meat mustn't be kept together with cooked meat. 8. First, divide the yolk from the white. 9. South America and Africa moved apart 200 million years ago. 10. The war moved many families apart. 11. She claims to have psychic abilities. 12. The company's sales section is a large and important unit of our organization. 13. There are deep disagreements in the party over the war. 14. Huge lines of water were breaking on the shore. 15. They were promoted to the First League last season. 16. All units of the army were taking part in that fierce battle. 17. A chocolate treat came in the mail, just in time for the post-holiday body fat meltdown. 18. Grimma and Dorcas, almost the last to come, sidled their way into the crowd. 19. And kings, in particular, have both the incentive and the influence to achieve their wishes. 20. We are all glad that she has come back safely and has all his belongings! 21. That present was brought on my birthday. 22. The wedding day finally came. 23. The baby was born very early that day, almost at dawn. 24. When his method was first introduced the research became much easier. 25. After much thought, we have made our decision. 26. The family choose a small Nevada town as their permanent home where they opened a store. 27. We lived in Thailand, then Singapore, and finally started to live in Hong Kong. 28. We talked to the carpenter to decide plans for the expansion of the restaurant. 29. I ask the children to calm down and listen to the questions. 30. Last year the Department of the Environment was brought in to help end the argument about the case. 31. Well, it's arranged then, we are going on a walking tour tomorrow! 32. This region was made a permanent home by the Dutch in the nineteenth century. 33. He made himself comfortable in his usual chair. 34. He was the eldest son in the family and he had to deal with all the



details of the family business. 35. Dust had fallen on everything in the room. 36. His gaze remained on her face for some time. 36. So, if legions from the north had got control of the south, the spirit of the south was defeating the north. 37. He says that we can enslave only those we defeat in battle. 38. Disagreements between the two classes caused the beginning of an armed conflict. 39. A sudden increase of fear swept over him. 40. She declined all his offers with one movement of her hand. 40. Even a short walk made her tired. 41. Within three days they had used all their supply of food. 42. I think we've talked enough about that particular topic. 43. When she appeared in court she used her right to remain silent. 44. They have chosen a new head teacher at my son's school. 45. The ship was helpless against the strength of the storm.

**Exercise 10. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. конституційна монархія; 2. на північному заході Європи; 3. так званий; 4. Ла-Манш; 5. Ірландське море; 6. найбільш населений; 7. Британські острови; 8. гірський; 9. промислові центри; 10. вироби з заліза; 11. бавовна; 12. історичне населення; германські народи; 13. юти; 14. прибути до Британії; 15. мати тенденцію; 16. повсякденна мова; 17. вторгнутися; 18. оселитися; 19. ґрунт; 20. відомі як; 21. завоювання; 22. хвилі втікачів; 23. півострів; 24. мінеральні ресурси; 25. вичерпати ресурси; 26. у невеликій кількості; 26. зараз, у цей час; 27. бути відомим чимось; 28. засіб; 29. законодавча влада; 30. призначати членів; 31. видатний; 32. підданий; 33. заможний.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Break an egg into a bowl and separate the white from the yolk. 2. Farmers separate calves from their mothers when they are only a few days old. 3. Hair conditioner helps your curls to separate. 4. Some of the pages had got stuck together and I couldn't separate them. 5. Steaks and meat patties should be separated by wax paper before freezing. 6. Teachers thought it best to separate Paul and Fred and put them in different classes. 7. Mam Tor is the first objective on the walk along the ridge which separates the Hope and Edale valleys. 8. She was distressed and anxious at being separated from her friends, and rapidly developed colic. 9. The reactive tannins precipitate with the protein, and the improved wine can then be separated from the sediment. 10. There was a deep division in the Republican Party over policy on Central America. 11. But he is giving no clues at present as to the composition of his full back line and forward division. 12. Indeed, there is little differentiation by class at all in domestic divisions of labour. 13. The housebuilding division is already being wound down. 14. To me, this club is as good as any team in our division. 15. The packages arrived the day before Christmas. 16. The train isn't due to

arrive until 4.30. 17. Toy sales have doubled since computer games arrived. 18. What time do you think we'll arrive? 19. Please settle this account within two weeks. 20. She settled herself by an oak tree on a hill overlooking the town. 21. So that settles it. We'll pay you half the purchase price now, and the rest over two years. 22. Consider this stirring quotation and its possible ecological implications: We must discover and conquer the country in which we live. 23. Each country has its own geography where the spirit dwells and where physical force can never conquer even an inch of ground. 24. He was using the treaty not so much to conquer as to acquire legitimately what he regarded as his own by right. 25. The mayor has promised tough action in response to the city's rising crime wave. 26. What will happen when we have exhausted all our natural resources? 27. Raise your knee to exercise the upper leg and hip. 28. The Congress must decide whether to exercise its veto or not. 29. You should exercise every day and get plenty of fresh air. 30. The two young men spent 6 months in jail waiting to be executed. 31. This is a backward and cruel society, in which people are executed for homosexuality and adultery. 32. This program automatically executes the commands once a day. 33. We will not be able to execute the programs without more funding. 34. The company has appointed a new sales director. 35. The French president has appointed a new Minister for Culture. 36. They have appointed Jane Staller as their new East Coast manager. 37. This is the first time that a woman has been appointed to the post. 38. When he was governor, Brown appointed Rose Bird as chief justice of the California Supreme Court. 39. Iran is a major power in the Persian Gulf region. 40. It sounds like you've got a lot of power at work.

**Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Цей імператор завоював багато народів та ще більше територій по всьому світу. 2. Іноді майже неможливо розрізнити справжні почуття та мінливості характеру. 3. Під час авіашоу над ними промайнула ціла хвиля літаків різного розміру та кольору. 4. М'ясо та яйця тримають окремо від інших продуктів. 5. До вечора всі теми для розмов були вичерпані, й в кімнаті повисли напруження і зніяковілість. 6. Тепер їх розділяли тисячі кілометрів, але вони звикли жити окремо. 7. Морські хвилі билися о скелю, а вітер не вщухав. 8. Усю інформацію про нашу конференцію ви знайдете в окремому файлі. 9. Традиційний розподіл праці між чоловіками та жінками вже давно перестав існувати. 10. Ми призначимо нового віце-президента компанії упродовж двох тижнів. 11. Діти ніяк не хотіли заспокоюватися, тож учительці довелося підвищувати голос. 12. Він працює у страховому підрозділі нашої компанії. 13. Гравці прем'єр-ліги завжди мріють взяти участь у чемпіонаті світу. 14. Перша танкова дивізія одержала перемогу у тому напруженому бою після чотирьох годин наступу. 15. Нарешті настав

день королівського весілля, і всі піддані вирушили до палацу. 16. Він прийшов останнім, коли на нього вже не чекали. 17. На її день народження несподівано прийшла коробка шоколадних цукерок від таємничого шанувальника. 18. Ми прибули до будівлі муніципалітету, де на нас вже чекала святкова процесія. 19. Дитина народилася пізно ввечері, й батько першим дізнався про цю щасливу новину. 20. Ми дійшли компромісу тільки після тривалих перемовин. 21. Ми сподіваємося владнати всі наші суперечки до початку офіційних переговорів. 22. Ще нічого не вирішено! 23. Домовилися! Я поїду до міста зранку, а ти залишишся вдома з дітьми. 24. Багато століть тому цю територія заселяли невідомі істоти з розвиненим інтелектом. 25. На початку сторіччя тут оселилися емігранти з багатьох країн. 26. Вона взяла ковдру та влаштувалася на канапі біля телевізору. 27. Ділення часто використовується у багатьох науках, наприклад, у математиці. 28. Її чоловік займається всіма родинними справами, зверніться до нього. 29. Дивна тиша повисла у кімнаті, коли він зайшов. 30. На його обличчі з'явився вираз незадоволення, і всі це помітили. 31. Відділіть жовток від білка та додайте солі. 32. Він не в змозі побороти свою звичку палити. 33. Його спроба подолати цю гірську вершину виявилася успішною лише з третього разу. 34. Компанія вже завоювала європейський ринок і зараз розширюється на схід. 35. Ви повинні навчитися розрізняти зерна від плевелів, якщо хочете займатися науковою діяльністю. 36. Його охопила хвиля паніки і страху, коли він не почув довгоочікуваних слів коханої. 37. Він одразу відмахнувся від неї, коли вона почала ставити незручні питання. 38. Пацієнтів, що страждають на нежить, необхідно ізолювати від інших. 39. Довгі прогулянки виснажували її, тому вона виходила тільки в садок. 40. Ми вичерпали всі запаси їжі, треба йти в ліс на пошуки провіанту. 41. Поліція ніяк не могла розділити двох бешкетників, що спричинили галас у тихому районі міста. 42. Вона використовувала свій вплив на людей у різних ситуаціях та масштабах. 43. Вам необхідно регулярно тренуватися, аби підтримувати оптимальну фізичну форму. 44. Розбіжності між членами цієї політичної партії не дозволяють їм досягти консенсусу по жодному з питань у порядку денному.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian paying attention to the form of the verb.**

1. She had lived in Peru for 30 years before she moved here. 2. By the time I came back she had cleaned up her room and was reading a book. 3. We had finished translating that article by 12 o'clock yesterday. 4. By the evening we

had eaten almost all of your cake. 5. They had finished repainting their room by Friday. 6. By the end of the year I had passed all my exams and could enjoy my vacation. 7. He had had breakfast before he went to school. 8. I went to meet his classmates after I had done my homework. 9. He had worked at the factory before he entered the college. 10. She got an unsatisfactory mark for her test because she had made a lot of mistakes in it. 11. She had never been to the theatre before she moved to a big city. 12. I didn't go to the Smiths with you yesterday because we had quarrelled. 13. I was terribly hungry because I hadn't had breakfast. 14. By the beginning of the party the rain had finally stopped. 15. Ann went to the post-office only after her mother had written all the letters.

**Exercise 2. Practise forming Participle II of the following verbs.**

to be, to have, to take, to make, to choose, to lose, to fly, to buy, to write, to hide, to eat, to come, to build, to see, to leave.

**Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks using verbs in the Past Perfect tense and translate the following sentences.**

1. The girl was late for classes because she ... (to miss) the schoolbus. 2. I went to bed after I ... (to finish) reading the book. 3. She couldn't go to bed until she ... (to finish) reading such an interesting book. 4. She wasn't able to fall asleep because she .... ( to watch) a horror movie. 5. The child ... (to fall) asleep before the parents came home. 6. They ... (to marry) before they bought this car. 7. He ... (to graduate) from the university already, when he got offered this job. 8. I ... (to wash) the dishes by the time Mom got home. 9. I went back home after I ... (to see) her off. 10. He couldn't get into his flat because he ... (to leave) his keys inside. 11. They ... ( to move) to our city before they got married. 12. I was excited when the plane took off because I... never ... (to fly) before. 13. I didn't get a mark for my essay because I ... (to leave) it at home. 14. Ann wasn't at home last week because she ... (to go) to visit her uncle. 15. By the time I got to the theatre the performance ... (to start) already.

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentences using the Past Perfect tense of the verbs below.**

I watched TV after...

I went to see my brother after...

They went home after...

He called me after...

She went to the disco after...

He wrote a composition after...

They repainted the house after...

They went for a walk after...

to pass an exam

to have breakfast

to move to this city

to get home

to put on make up

to read all the necessary books

to buy a house

to have dinner

**Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the form of the verb.**

1. Після того, як він повернувся з Андорри, він написав цікаву статтю про свої пригоди. 2. Я дивився телевизор тільки після того, як зробив усе домашнє завдання. 3. Він зателефонував мені після того, як дізнався результати іспиту. 4. Він зміг написати твір про цю книгу тільки після того, як прочитав її до кінця. 5. Вони пішли додому, коли закінчили ремонт. 6. Я був дуже схвицьований під час свого першого польоту, адже ніколи не літав. 7. Він ніколи не бачив своїх сестер, тому що вони поїхали з країни ще до його народження. 8. Вона пішла спати, коли вивчила всі слова для тесту в середу. 9. Коли я прийшов, її не було вдома, вона поїхала до бабусі вранці. 10. Я не захотіла йти з тобою в кіно, тому що вже бачила цей фільм. Він мені не сподобався. 11. Мері дуже зраділа, бо вранці не загубила ключі на вулиці. 12. Він не виступав на засіданні, він забув свої нотатки вдома. 13. До восьмої години всі гості розійшлися і вона змогла відпочити. 14. Я вже чув цю новину, коли ти мені зателефонував. 15. До того часу, як батьки повернулися додому, вона так і не прибрала в своїй кімнаті. 16. Вони жили в Англії протягом 30 років, коли вирішили переїхати на Північ. 17. Він був дуже задоволений. У нього раніше ніколи не було такої цікавої роботи.

**Exercise 6. Fill in the blanks using verbs in the Past Perfect tense and translate the following sentences.**

1. Ann ... (to type) six letters by lunchtime. 2. After we ... (to buy) the tickets, we went to the platform. 3. When our delegation arrived at the university, the conference ... (already to begin). 4. There were no oranges left because Jane and Max ... (to eat) them all. 5. Mary ... (to give) me a warm blanket before I went to bed. 6. The lawyer ... (to prepare) all the documents by 4 o'clock yesterday. 7. The workers ... (to finish) the reconstruction of the bridge by the beginning of June. 8. I ... (to see) that man somewhere before I met him at the presentation. 9. By the time the police arrived, the burglars ... (to escape). 10. The rain started after we ... (to catch) a taxi.

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

- 1) My bag is heavier than Anna's bag.
- 2) She is tidier than her little brother.
- 3) This text is more difficult than that exercise.
- 4) Cars are more expensive than bicycles.
- 5) Giraffes are taller than elephants.
- 6) My granny's parrot is cleverer than her cat.
- 7) My elder brother is stronger than me.

- 8) She is more serious than her younger sister.
- 9) Summer days are longer than winter days.
- 10) Travelling by train is tiring than driving.
- 11) This is the least attractive part of the coast.
- 12) John is the most careful driver in the family.
- 13) A basketball court is usually bigger than a tennis court.
- 14) He sings badly, but I sing worse.
- 15) She talks less than he does, but he thinks more.
- 16) I live further from the centre than you.
- 17) His sister isn't as pretty as she is.
- 18) Bill lives nearer to school than Pete, but he gets up later.

**Exercise 8. Practise forming degrees of comparison of the following adjectives.**

Hard, warm, cold, long, short, light, dark, old, hot, wet, thin, red, fat, dim, sad, fine, ripe, noble, gentle, late, large, brave, safe, white, wise, wide, thin, fat, large, silly, lazy, crazy, bad, little, safe, good, great, dark, dirty, clean, sweet, sad, fast, happy, pretty.

**Exercise 9. Practise forming degrees of comparison of the following adverbs.**

Quietly, clearly, dangerously, politely, slowly, well, badly, early, soon, well, far, much, fast, hard.

**Exercise 10. Fill in the blanks using the appropriate degree of comparison and translate the following sentences.**

1. The Nile is the ... (long) river in the world. 2. The Dead Sea is the ... (salty) sea in the world. 3. The Pacific Ocean is the ... (deep) ocean in the world. 4. The Tiger Shark is the ... (dangerous) of all sharks. 5. Dogs are the ... (good) friends of people. 6. Blue Whales are the ... (large) animals in the world. 7. Summer is the ... (hot) season of the year. 8. Winter is the ... (cold) season of the year. 9. February is the ... (short) month of the year. 10. Max is the ... (tall) boy in the class. 11. Rita is the ... (intelligent) girl in the class. 12. Our class is the ... (friendly) in our school.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the degree of comparison.**

1. Лекція довше за семінар, але іспит триває найдовше. 2. Увечері на вулицях столиці більш галасно, ніж у нашому місті. 3. Його собака сильніше та небезпечніше за мого kota. 4. Бігати вранці корисніше за паління. 5. Сьогодні ти перекладаєш краще, ніж вчора. Тобі потрібно більше практикуватися. 6. Ця сукня дорожча та гарніше за твою, але тобі вона не по кишені. 7. Наш сільський будиночок менше, ніж їхня міська

квартира. 8. Дні взимку коротші за дні восени. 9. У цьому готелі дешевше та затишніше, ніж в попередньому. 10. Найслабший гравець в команді – це загроза виграшу. 11. Твоя сестра не така привітна, як ти. Чому? 12. Ти кажеш, що твій будинок такий же високий, як мій, але ти неправий. 13. Її папуга такий ж балакучий, як і вона сама. 14. Це найвідоміше та найглибше озеро в світі. Тут найчистіша вода та найнижчий рівень забрудненості. 15. Найбільш зайнятий він вранці, тому приходить після обіду. 16. Він щасливіше та розумніше за тебе, тому що він вміє керувати своїм часом. 17. Саме цей роман письменниці став більш відомим за десятки інших, які вона написала згодом, можливо тому, що вона писала про себе саму, і немає нічого краще та чесніше за книгу про особисте. 18. Найстарша дівчинка в їхній родині найрозумніша та найпривабливіша. Вона часто приглядає за малечою і поводить себе так само гідно, як і дорослі. 19. Концерт скасували та жодної подальшої інформації поки що немає. 20. Він старший за мене та більш уважний. 21. Останнє видання цієї книги виявилось гіршим за попереднє, яке я вже позичив своєму старшому братові минулого місяця. 22. Я прийшов так швидко, як міг. – Немає значення, вона пішла раніше, ніж ми гадали. 23. Аби досягти успіху, треба працювати наполегливіше. 24. Поводься з ним обережніше, він сьогодні хитріший, ніж завжди. 25. Ви не могли б читати голосніше? – Я читаю так голосно і так швидко, як тільки можу.

## LESSON 11

Text: "The Climate of Great Britain"

Grammar: 1) Future Perfect, Future Perfect Continuous

2) Negative questions

3) Tag questions

### THE CLIMATE OF GREAT BRITAIN

The Atlantic Ocean has a **significant** effect on Britain's climate. Although the British Isles are as far north in **latitude** as Labrador in Canada, they have a mild climate throughout the year. This is **due to** the Gulf Stream, a **current** of warm water that flows up from the Caribbean past Britain. Winds from this warmer water bring moisture and **moderate** temperatures year-round in the British Isles, making the UK warmer in winter and cooler in summer than other areas at the same latitude.

Great Britain's western coast **tends** to be warmer than the eastern coast, and the southern regions tend to be warmer than the northern regions. **In general**, temperatures are ordinarily around 15°C (60°F) in the summer and around 5°C (40°F) in the winter. Temperatures rarely ever exceed 32°C (90°F) or **drop** below -10°C (14°F) anywhere in the British Isles, so frosts are rare. The climate in Britain is usually described as cool, temperate and humid, but **scientists predict** that by the end of this century it will have **changed dramatically**. British people say: "Other countries have a climate, in England we have weather".

The weather in Britain changes very quickly. One day may be fine and the next day may be wet. The morning may be warm and the evening may be cool. Therefore it is natural for the people to use the **comparison** "as **changeable** as the weather" of a person who often changes their mood or **opinion** about something.

The weather is the **favourite** topic of conversation in Britain. When two Englishmen are **introduced** to each other, if they can't think of any thing else to talk about, they talk about weather, for example, "It is lovely weather we are having, isn't it? Don't you **agree**?" When two people meet in the street they will often say something about weather as they **pass**, just to show their **friendliness**. Every daily paper **publishes** a weather forecast. Both the radio and television give the weather **forecast** several times each day.

The English also say that they have three variants of weather: when it rains in the morning, when it rains in the afternoon or when it rains all day long. Sometimes it rains so **heavily** that they say "**It's raining cats and dogs**". **Rainfall** is more or less even throughout the year. In the mountains there is heavier rainfall than in the plains of the south and east.



The driest period is from March to June and the wettest months are from October to January. The average **range** of temperature (from winter to summer) is from 15 to 23 degrees above zero. During a normal summer the temperature sometimes **rises** above 30 degrees in the south. Winter temperatures below 10 degrees are **rare**. It seldom snows heavily in winter, the frost is rare. January and February are usually the coldest months, July and August the warmest. Still the wind may bring winter cold in spring or summer days. Sometimes it brings the **whirlwinds** or **hurricanes**.

The worst thing about the climate in Great Britain is the thick fog they so often have in autumn and in winter. In London it often **mixes** with the smoke of plants and factories and they call it the "smog". It is sometimes so thick that cars may **run into** one another.

The climate has **affected settlement** and development in Britain for thousands of years. The mild, wet climate **ensured** that thick forests rich in game, as well as rivers and streams **abundant** with fish, were available to prehistoric **hunters** and gatherers. Britain was regarded as a cold, **remote**, and distant part of the ancient Roman Empire in the first few centuries AD, so relatively few Romans were motivated to move there for trade, administrative, or military reasons. Preindustrial settlements **clustered** in southern England, where the climate was milder, the growing season longer, and the rich soil and steady rainfall produced **bountiful harvests**. After the Industrial Revolution began in the 18th century, populations grew enormously in areas with rich resources beneath the ground, particularly coal, even though these resources were sometimes located in the colder, harsher northern regions of England or the western Lowlands of Scotland.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

to have a significant effect on, latitude, throughout the year, due to, the Caribbean, moisture, in general, to exceed, to drop, to change dramatically, changeable, mood or opinion, to show friendliness, daily paper, weather forecast, "It's raining cats and dogs", average range, whirlwinds or hurricanes, smog, settlement, to ensure, rich in game, abundant with fish, hunters and gatherers, remote, relatively, to cluster, bountiful harvests, enormously, Lowlands of Scotland.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words and word combinations from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the essential vocabulary.**

## ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

### Vocabulary notes

**1. Significant** (adjective) 1) having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future: *e. g. His most significant political achievement was the abolition of the death penalty. Please inform us if there are any significant changes in your plans.*

**Significant for:** *e. g. The result is highly significant for the future of the province.*

**It is significant that:** *e. g. It is significant that the writers of the report were all men.* 2) large enough to be noticeable or have noticeable effects: *e. g. A significant number of drivers fail to keep to speed limits. A significant part of Japan's wealth is invested in the West. There is a significant difference between the number of home births now and ten years ago. The rise in temperature is not statistically significant.* 3) a significant look, smile etc has a special meaning that is not known to everyone: *e. g. He gave me a significant look.*

**2. Drop** (verb) *past tense and past participle dropped* [transitive] 1) to stop holding or carrying something so that it falls: *e. g. He dropped his briefcase on a chair. She screamed and dropped the torch.* 2) to make something such as a bomb fall from a plane: *e. g. U.S. planes began dropping bombs on the city. Supplies are being dropped for the refugees.* 3) to fall suddenly onto the ground or into something *as drop from/off:* *e. g. The apples are beginning to drop from the trees. Your button has dropped off.* 4) to lower yourself or part of your body suddenly *as drop down/onto/into:* *e. g. He dropped down onto the floor and hid under the table. She dropped her head back against the cushion.* 5) to fall to a lower level or amount, especially a much lower level or amount *as drop suddenly/sharply/dramatically:* *e. g. The number of deaths on the roads has dropped sharply. Temperatures drop quite dramatically at night, so bring some warm clothing.*

**Drop to:** *e. g. Their share of the market dropped to 50 percent this year.*

6) to reduce the level or amount of something: *e. g. You might be able to get them to drop the price. As soon as she saw the police car she dropped her speed.* 7) to decide not to include someone or something: *e. g. His name was dropped from the list.* 8) to stop doing something, discussing something, or continuing with something: *e. g. The proposal was dropped after opposition from civil liberties groups.*

**Drop charges/drop a case:** *e. g. New evidence was presented to the court and the case was dropped.*

**Drop a subject at school/university** (stop studying it): *e. g. Students are allowed to drop history in Year 9. You can't expect me to drop everything (completely stop doing whatever I am doing) whenever you're in town. Oh, drop the "Senator" (stop calling me "Senator") – just call me Gordon. Some time later, the matter was quietly dropped.*

**Drop the subject:** *e. g. To her relief, Julius dropped the subject.*

**Drop it** (stop talking about a subject): *e. g. Just drop it, will you? I don't want to talk about it any more. "What about the money?" "We've agreed to let it drop (we have agreed not to talk about it any more)."*

9) to visit someone you know, usually without arranging a particular time *as drop by/round: e. g. I just dropped by to see how you were getting on. The kids drop round and see her from time to time.*

**Drop into:** *e. g. Jan dropped into the office this morning to tell me her news.*

**Drop in (on somebody):** *e. g. Why don't you drop in for a drink one evening?*

**Drop your eyes/gaze** – to stop looking at someone and look down, usually because you feel embarrassed or uncomfortable: *e. g. Ben looked at me in horror for a moment and then dropped his gaze.*

**3. Change** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) to become different, or to make something become different: *e. g. Susan has changed a lot since I last saw her. Changing your eating habits is the best way to lose weight. The rules won't change overnight (change quickly). The leaves on trees change colour in the autumn.*

**Change (from something) to something:** *e. g. He changed from being a nice lad to being rude and unhelpful.*

**Change drastically/radically/profoundly/dramatically etc:** *e. g. By the age of 30 his work had changed radically and he withdrew all his previously published music.*

2) to stop doing or using one thing, and start doing or using something else instead: *e. g. She changed jobs in May. The ship changed course and headed south. The company has had to change direction because of developments in technology. Piper awkwardly tried to change the subject.*

**Change your mind** – to change your decision, plan, or opinion about something: *e. g. Her father tried to get her to change her mind.*

3) to take off your clothes and put on different ones: *e. g. Francis came in while Jay was changing. Change your dress – that one looks dirty. Sara changed into her swimsuit and ran out for a quick swim. You'd better go and get changed.*

4) to get smaller units of money that add up to the same value as a larger unit: *e. g. Can you change a £ 20 note?*

**Change places (with somebody)** to give someone your place and take their place: *e. g. Would you mind changing places with me so I can sit next to my friend?*

5) to get off one train, bus, or aircraft and into another in order to continue your journey *as change at*: *e. g. Passengers for Liverpool should change at Crewe.*

**Change trains/buses/planes etc:** *e. g. I had to change planes in Denver.*

**4. Dramatic** (adjective) 1) great and sudden *as dramatic change/shift/improvement*: *e. g. Computers have brought dramatic changes to the workplace.*

**Dramatic increase/rise/fall/drop/reduction etc:** *e. g. Universities have suffered a dramatic drop in student numbers.*

**Dramatic effect/results:** *e. g. A serious accident can have a dramatic effect on your family's finances.*

2) exciting or impressive: *e. g. A superb goal by Owen earned United a dramatic victory yesterday. Some of the most dramatic events in American history happened here.* 3) connected with acting or plays: *e. g. the amateur dramatic society, the dramatic arts.* 4) intended to be impressive, so that people notice: *e. g. She needed a stunning dress to help her make a dramatic entrance. Tristan threw up his hands in a dramatic gesture.*

**Dramatically** adverb: *e. g. Output has increased dramatically.*

**5. Opinion** (noun) 1) your ideas or beliefs about a particular subject: *e. g. The two women had very different opinions about drugs. What's your opinion of Cathy? He asked his wife's opinion on every important decision. It's a terrible shame, in my opinion, that the building was knocked down. The general opinion is that the new law is a good thing. Politicians should listen to popular opinion. These are just my own personal opinions. Whether or not this is useful is a matter of opinion. Everyone has the right to express an opinion. Contrary to popular opinion, chocolate is quite good for you. Jody is a person with very strong opinions.* 2) judgement or advice from a professional person about something: *e. g. When choosing an insurance policy it's best to get an independent opinion.*

**Have a high/low/good/bad etc opinion of somebody/something** – to think that someone or something is very good or very bad: *e. g. They have a very high opinion of Paula's work.*

**Be of the opinion (that)** – to think that something is true: *e. g. I was firmly of the opinion that we should not give Jackson any more money.*

**6. Comparison** (noun) 1) the process of comparing two or more people or things: *e. g. Comparison with his previous movies shows how Lee has developed as a director.*

**In comparison (with/to something):** *e. g. In comparison to other recent video games, this one isn't very exciting. He was a loud friendly man. In comparison, his brother was rather shy.*

**By comparison (with something):** *e. g. By comparison with other European countries, car prices in the UK are very high. After months of living in a tropical climate, Spain seemed cool by comparison.*

**For comparison (with something):** *e. g. These figures are provided for comparison with the results of previous studies. He showed us the original text for comparison.*

2) a statement that someone or something is like someone or something else *as* (make/draw) a comparison between somebody/something: *e. g. The writer draws comparisons between the two presidents. You can't make a comparison between American and Japanese schools – they're too different.* 3) a word used in grammar meaning the way an adverb or adjective changes its form to show whether it is comparative or superlative

**7. Pass** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] 1) to come up to a particular place, person, or object and go past them: *e. g. The crowd parted to let the truck pass. He gave me a smile as he passed. We passed a group of students outside the theatre. I pass the sports centre on the way to work.* 2) to go or travel along or through a place: *e. g. He passed along the corridor to a small room at the back of the building. We passed through the gates into a courtyard behind. We were just passing through and thought we'd drop in to see you.* 3) a road, river, or railway line that passes a place goes through or near the place: *e. g. The road passes right through the town centre. The main railway line passes just north of Manchester.* 4) to hold something in your hand and give it to someone else: *e. g. Pass the salt, please. Can you pass me that bag by your feet? She passed a cup of tea to the headmaster. I passed the note back to her.* 5) if time passes, it goes by: *e. g. The days passed slowly. She became more ambitious as the years passed. They sat in silence while the minutes passed.* 6) if you pass time or pass your life in a particular way, you spend it in that way: *e. g. We passed the winter pleasantly enough. We played cards to pass the time.* 7) to succeed in an examination or test: *e. g. Did you pass all your exams? He hasn't passed his driving test yet. She passed with flying colours (got very high marks).*

**8. Heavily** (adverb) 1) in large amounts, to a high degree, or with great severity: *e. g. I became heavily involved in politics. The report was heavily criticized in the press. His wife was heavily pregnant at the time.*

**It rains/snows heavily:** *e. g. It's been raining heavily all day.*

**Drink/smoke heavily:** *e. g. Paul was drinking heavily by then.*

**Heavily dependent/influenced:** *e. g. Britain is heavily dependent on imports for its raw materials.*

**Breathe heavily** – to breathe slowly and loudly: *e. g. Breathing heavily, I stopped and sat down to rest.*

2) if you do or say something heavily, you do it slowly and with a lot of effort, especially because you are sad or bored: *e. g. He was walking heavily, his head down. Emily sighed heavily. "I suppose so," she said heavily.*

**9. Range verb** 1) to include a variety of different things or people in addition to those mentioned *as range from something to something: e. g. The show had a massive audience, ranging from children to grandparents.*

**Range in age/size/price etc:** *e. g. The shoes range in price from \$ 25 to \$ 100.*

2) if prices, levels, temperatures etc range from one amount to another, they include both those amounts and anything in between *as range from something to something: e. g. There were 120 students whose ages ranged from 10 to 18.*

**Range between something and something:** *e. g. The population of these cities ranges between 3 and 5 million.*

3) to deal with a wide range of subjects or ideas in a book, speech, conversation etc *as range over: e. g. The conversation had ranged over a variety of topics, from sport to current affairs.*

**10. Range (noun)** 1) a number of people or things that are all different, but are all of the same general type *as range of: e. g. The drug is effective against a range of bacteria.* 2) the limits within which amounts, quantities, ages etc vary: *e. g. Your blood pressure's well within the normal range.* 3) the distance over which a particular weapon can hit things: *e. g. missiles with a range of 3000 km.* 4) a group of mountains or hills, usually in a line: *e. g. a land of high mountain ranges and deep valleys. The longest range of hills in the Lake District.*

**Out of/beyond range (of something):** *e. g. Joan hoped that the others were out of range of her mother's voice.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**Due to** – because of something: *e. g. The restaurant's success was due largely to its new manager.*

**Latitude** – an area at a particular latitude: *e. g. The birds breed in northern latitudes.*

**In general** – usually or in most situations: *e. g. In general, about 10 % of the candidates are eventually offered positions. We're trying to raise awareness about the environment in general and air pollution in particular.*

**Changeable** – likely to change, or changing often: *e. g. changeable weather*

**It's raining cats and dogs** *spoken* (it is raining very hard)

**To run into somebody** – to meet someone by chance: *e. g. Guess who I ran into in town today!*

**Abundant** – something that is abundant exists or is available in large quantities so that there is more than enough: *e. g. an abundant supply of fresh water*

**Remote** – far from towns or other places where people live: *e. g. a remote border town*

**Bountiful** – if something is bountiful, there is more than enough of it: *e. g. bountiful harvests.*

**The Lowlands** – the central part of Scotland which is lower than the land surrounding it.

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. A **significant** number of drivers still refuse to wear seat belts. 2. There has been a **significant** change in the tone of the media's coverage. 3. They exchanged **significant** glances. 4. A few pine cones had already **dropped** to the ground. 5. Allied planes began **dropping** bombs at midnight Tuesday. 6. As soon as she saw him she **dropped** her suitcases and ran towards him. 7. I don't think this article will be of interest to our readers. Let's **drop** it. 8. "Have you got your bathing suit on?" "No, I'll **change** when we get there." 9. "The telecommunications industry is **changing** at lightning speed," said Richard Miller, the company's chief financial officer. 10. Agriculture must be **changed** to reduce damage to the environment. 11. All drivers should really know how to **change** a flat tire. 12. "Voice of the Heart" is a **dramatic** story of two women that sweeps from New York to Europe and back again. 13. Firemen carried out a **dramatic** rescue of the boy trapped in the burning house. 14. Rosa made a **dramatic** entrance into the room, wearing a tiny red dress. 15. **Opinion** seemed to be moving in favor of the president's accusers. 16. **Opinions** vary widely on this matter. 17. About 100 people showed up to express their **opinions** about the project. 18. Between treatment **comparisons** were made using signed rank tests and correlations were sought using Spearman's rank correlation test. 19. From Augustus to Peter the Great, the history books were ransacked to find suitable **comparisons**. 20. "Do you want to go fishing Saturday?" "Sorry, I'll have to **pass** this time." 21. "I'm taking my driving test today." "Do you think you'll **pass**?" 22. A big Cadillac **passed** us as we walked up the hill. 23. A police car **passed** us doing 90 miles an hour. 24. Fifty houses were **heavily** damaged in the hurricane. It's been raining **heavily** all day. 25. Joe slept **heavily** for eight hours. 26. The air is **heavily** polluted. 27. The southern region is **heavily** dependent on tourism. 28. All five kids, **ranging** in age from 10 to 19, were in this wedding. 29. Bidets are scarcely inexpensive, **ranging** from \$ 250 to \$ 800 just for the fixture. 30. Children are **ranged** in order of their performance in the last test. 31. A typical radio signal has a **range** of about 100 miles. 32. As soon as the tanks came within **range**, the soldiers opened fire. 33. Sansui planned to broaden its product **range** to include video equipment.

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. Do you really want my opinion? 2. But at labs that draw business from artists, the proportion of work involving nudity can be significant. 3. Corporate leaders were planning to close it unless they could get significant wage concessions from the workers. 4. Barbara dropped her voice so Nelson wouldn't hear. 5. Be careful not to drop that bowl, it's very valuable. 6. Rates range from \$ 195 for a single

room to \$ 400 for two in a suite. 7. Can you change a \$ 10 bill? 8. Can you change this light bulb for me? I can't reach. 9. Do you mind waiting while I change my clothes? 10. Ed went into the bedroom to change out of his work clothes. 11. Going to college changed him a lot. It made him much more mature. 12. Rumpole produced the evidence with a dramatic flourish. 13 She raised her hands in a dramatic gesture of despair. 14. Stop being so dramatic. It's embarrassing. 15. Volunteer tutoring programs can have a significant impact on student achievement. 16. He's entitled to his opinion, of course, but it does not give him the right to be offensive. 17. He acknowledged that he had no evidence to support his opinion. 18. In 10 years of teaching, I have never been asked my opinion on any matter of policy. 19. The point of making these comparisons is that artistic practices affect how a critic should describe a landscape. 20. The Warriors' point guards seem more like foot soldiers in comparison. 21. These comparisons form the basis for the determination of prevalence estimates for anemia, growth retardation, or overweight. 22. As time passes, the disease progresses through several distinct stages. 23. Congress has passed an education-reform law. 24. Could you pass the salt, please? 25. Dan's worried he won't pass calculus. 26. Details of the attack had been passed to enemy agents. 27. Do you think you'll pass? 28. In too many instances in the past the interests of beauty have been heavily outweighed by commercial considerations. 29. It is important to know whether this will impinge heavily on the poor. 30. His animals were ranged around the room. 31. Prices range from around £ 5 for a door in pine, to £ 7.50 in cherry. 32. Because of strong opposition, the government has dropped plans to increase taxes on fuel. 33. The demonstrators were hurling rocks but the police stayed out of range. 34. The enemy were just out of range of our cannon.

**Exercise 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. I think we'd better stop discussing the subject. 2. It is noticeable that girls generally do better in examinations than boys. 3. It is particular that he changed his will only days before his death. 4. He gave me a meaningful look and left. 5. Be careful not to let that plate fall. 6. The climber slipped and fell to the ground. 7. The temperature has decreased considerably. 8. Give me that book, please. 9. His voice reduced to a whisper. 10. She looked down to her lap. 11. I stopped studying German when I was 14. 12. Look, can we just stop talking about it? 13. There are no important differences between the two groups of students. 14. Rick hasn't become different at all. He looks exactly the same as he did at school. 15. Accommodation varies from tourist class to luxury hotels. 6. Can I exchange seats with you? 17. I went into the bedroom to put on different clothes. 18. She put on her swimsuit. 19. Where do I have to get on another plane? 20. Nothing will make me change my opinion. 21. The announcement had a great effect on house prices. 22. They watched exciting



pictures of the police raid on TV. 23. He flung out his arms in an exaggerated gesture. 24. Prices have fallen suddenly. 25. We were invited to give our points of view about how the work should be done. 26. I've recently changed my feelings about her. 27. Everyone had a point of view on the subject. 28. People have different opinions about whether to do it or not. 29. I'd like a piece of advice from another person before I make a decision. 30. I enclose the two plans for you to compare. 31. The road was so narrow that cars were unable to move past each other. 32. At last the wind became weaker. 33. Six months went by and we still had no news of them. 34. She hasn't achieved the required standard in her driving test yet. 35. It was raining cats and dogs. 36. He was snoring loudly. 37. The hotel offers a wide variety of facilities. 38. Most of the students are in the 17–20 age limit. 39. Let me present you our new set of hair products. 40. The child was now not near enough for her to see. 41. Look at the great group of mountains of the Alps. 42. Computers have made the way people work different.

**Exercise 10. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. Мати значний вплив на; 2. Британські острови; 3. на широті; 4. упродовж року; 5. завдяки чомусь; 6. Гольфстрім; 7. течія; 8. вологість; 9. пом'якшувати клімат; 10. загалом; 11. температура зрідка перевищує; 12. температура падає; 13. рідкість; 14. науковці; 15. різко змінитися; 16. тому; 17. порівняння; 18. мінливий; 19. настрої; 20. думка про щось; 21. улюблена тема для бесід; 22. познайомити когось; 23. пройти повз; 24. продемонструвати дружелюбність; 25. щоденна газета; 26. прогноз погоди; 27. йде сильний дощ; 28. ллє наче з відра; 29. опади у вигляді дощу; 30. температурний діапазон; 31. вихор; 32. буревій; 33. туман; 34. змішуватися з димом; 35. густий туман; 36. розселення; 37. багатий на дичину; 38. мисливці; 39. віддалений; 40. наша ера; 41. зосереджуватися; 42. багатий врожай; 43. промислова революція; 44. багаті ресурси; 45. вугілля.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Please phone in with your comments and opinions. 2. She wanted to come across as the only significant person in Jett's life. 3. The Mason-Dixon poll shows a significant gender gap for Dole. 4. These were far more significant than any item projected in the development plans. 5. Getz dropped McCallum with a right blow to the jaw. 6. Each car has to be passed by a team of inspectors before it leaves the factory. 7. Her hands shake constantly and she keeps dropping things. 8. I'll drop you at the corner, okay? 9. I'm too busy to just drop everything and go out for the day. 10. I dropped my sunglasses and they broke. 11. I think I may drop French next year and concentrate on my other languages. 12. If you take four classes you can drop one later if you need to. 13. Going to college really changed my life. 14. Having a baby changes your

life completely, whatever your age. 15. Her expression did not change, and she answered me calmly. 16. How does the President plan to change the tax system? 17. I'll just change my shirt and I'll be with you in a minute. 18. I'm just going upstairs to change. 19. I can't believe it's been ten years – you haven't changed at all. 20. I think the batteries need changing. 21. I tried to follow him but he kept changing direction. 22. If the trousers are the wrong size you can always change them. 23. The movie starts with a dramatic car chase across the desert. 24. There has been a dramatic increase in homelessness over the past few years. 25. In my opinion, most lawyers are overpaid. 26. Many board members said they had no opinion on Goldman's proposal. 27. Medical opinion is divided as to the effectiveness of the new drug. 28. Perhaps more significant are the events in the remaining and short history of the Rochdale Co-operative Manufacturing Society. 29. Politicians generally have a low opinion of the press. 30. The coroner was of the opinion that the man had been dead for only 24 hours. 31. The rating a film gets reflects the opinions of our reviewers. 32. Their refusal to obey UN regulations had a major effect on world opinion. 33. They have very different opinions about religion. 34. This is, in the opinion of the critics, their best record for years. 35. This is an attempt to distance themselves from comparisons with those doing research in brain modeling. 36. Dr. Todd said the pain would pass in a day or two. 37. He couldn't run fast enough, so the coach dropped him. 38. Ellis quickly passed the note to the woman, looking around to check that no one had noticed. 39. Hey, pass me the ball! 40. His blood pressure was rather high so the doctor couldn't pass him as fit for the job. 41. I'll get you some aspirin – I pass the drugstore on the way to work. 42. I pass her house every day on my way to school. 43. If he stays injuryfree, Stumpel should pass his personal best of 76 points. 44. Johnson passes to White, White passes to Eliot, and Eliot scores! 45. Our software is heavily date-dependent. 46. The need to understand design is often heavily stressed during conversations or articles about desktop publishing. 47. The locations range from former weapons production facilities to fuel tanks to federal landfills. 48. What's the gun's range? 49. Williams is blessed with a 2¼ - octave range.

**Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Почався сезон фруктів. Червоні стиглі яблука падали на землю.
2. Результати їх експерименту мають велике значення для життя наступних поколінь.
3. Хто може розміняти мені двадцятку?
4. Значна кількість студентів виступила проти цього нововведення.
5. Нам потрібна думка експерта у цій справі.
6. Він налякав її, та вона випустила ліхтарик із рук.
7. Вступити до університету було для нього значним досягненням і його батьки пишалися ним.
8. Вона помітила його у натовпі, й він впав на

підлогу. 9. У цій крамниці ціни варіюються від п'яти до сотень тисяч доларів за одиницю товару. 10. Ціна на акції впала до рекордно низької сьогодні вранці. 11. Помітивши поліцейську машину, вона знизилла швидкість. 12. Після інциденту в літаку ім'я цього тенісиста надовго викреслили з усіх важливих змагань. 13. Жодних нових доказів не було, тож справу закрили. 14. Він кинув китайську ще на першому курсі, щоб натомість вивчати італійську. 15. Досить цих титулів та прізвищ, для Вас я просто Стенлі. 16. Через якийсь час він облишив тему свого весілля, і ми усі зітхнули з полегшенням. 17. Досить про це, гаразд? Я вже не можу чути про твого дорогоцінного Джона. 18. Після роботи він заскочив до мене з пляшкою вина. 19. Заходь сьогодні до Мо на чарочку – я там влаштовую холостяцьку вечірку. 20. Побачивши мене, пліткарка сором'язливо опустила очі. 21. З нашої останньої зустрічі він зовсім не змінився. 22. Вам вкрай необхідно змінити стиль життя та раціон харчування. 23. У його зрілих працях ви побачите, як різко змінився його світогляд. 24. Я помітила, що він зняковів, і спробувала змінити тему розмови. 25. Що я можу зробити, аби ти передумала? 26. Виявилось, що нас запросили на святкову вечерю, тож мені довелося перевдягнутися. 27. Той факт, що він сам виконав усі роботи, є дуже значущим. 28. Давайте поміняємося місцями – так ви зможете поговорити зі своїм другом. 29. У Сіетлі мені довелося пересісти на інший літак. 30. З часом різкі зміни стали для нього чимось звичним і буденним. 31. Різке зниження кількості бажаючих змучило його закрити свій салон татуювання. 32. Драматичний кружок нашої школи оголошує набір охочих взяти участь у постановці п'єси «Ромео і Джульєтта». 33. Вона вирішила зомліти для більш драматичного ефекту. 34. Він не прислухався до думки своєї дружини і скоро пошкодував про це. 35. Він кинув на мене значущий погляд, і я зрозуміла, що між ними щось трапилось. 36. Він ненавидів її як жінку, але був дуже високої думки про її роботу. 37. Хворобливе порівняння себе зі своїми суперниками ніколи нікому не допомагало. 38. У порівнянні з роботами інших студентів його переклад відрізнявся творчим підходом. 39. Для порівняння погляньте на графіки минулих років. 40. У цьому творі письменник постійно проводить порівняння між головним героєм та його батьком. 41. Літо скоро скінчиться, тож температура тут часто падає вночі, одягайтеся тепліше. 42. Вона намагалася зателефонувати чоловікові, але в джунглях її телефон був поза межами досяжності оператора зв'язку.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. We will have played two sets of tennis by 6 o'clock tomorrow. 2. They will have left the country by next Monday. 3. Sheila will have returned from her

jogging by 8 o'clock tomorrow. 4. We will have done the cleaning up by 5 o'clock tomorrow. 5. Marian will have passed all her exams by next month. 6. You will have known the results of the test by tomorrow evening. 7. Rebecca will have written the essay by Tuesday. 8. The designers will have finished furnishing our flat by next month. 9. The performance will have finished by 8 o'clock. 10. The weather will have changed by tomorrow evening. 11. The police will have arrested the thief by next morning. 12. If they can do it then they will have fulfilled their mission by the beginning of the ceremony. 13. The boy will have finished his essay by three o'clock in the morning. 14. Peter will have managed the team for seven years by next month. 15. We're late. The film will already have started by the time we get to the cinema. 16. By that time you will have been living in that country so long so you could get citizenship. 17. Next month we will have been living together for 25 years. 18. By 2015 you will not have been living in this country long enough to participate in the election. 19. James will have been teaching at the university for more than a year by the time he leaves for Asia. 20. Jason will be tired when he gets home because he will have been jogging for over an hour.

### **Exercise 2. Make up sentences after the model.**

**Model:** George/to have/the test/by next Tuesday.

George will have had the test by next Tuesday.

1. We/to wash/the dishes/by the time of your arrival tomorrow. 2. Ann/to print/all the documents/by the beginning of the meeting tomorrow. 3. The movie/to finish/ by 10 o'clock tomorrow. 4. They/to redecorate/the walls/by the beginning of the exam period/next week. 5. Doris/to sew/your dress/by next Friday. 6. I/to move/to a new house/by Christmas. 7. Brian/to start/his own business/by the time he is twenty-nine. 8. Daniel/to repair/his car/by Thursday. 9. The boat/to reach/the port/ by 4 o'clock tomorrow. 10. They/to deliver/our pizza by the beginning of the party tomorrow. 11. Jack and Monica/to send/all the invitations /by next Tuesday. 12. I/ to read/your report/by morning. 13. The workers/to unload/the lorries/by the end of the working day. 14. We/to analyse/the results of the experiment/by next Friday.

### **Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences into English, paying attention to the form of the verb.**

1. Заспокойся! Майкл пофарбує твоє авто в інший колір до вечора. 2. Ми не завершимо книгу до кінця цього року. 3. Мій секретар підготує всі необхідні документи до початку засідання. 4. Мішель отримає Ваше повідомлення до кінця робочого дня та обов'язково зателефонує Вам. 5. Мама приготує обід до третьої? – Так, я гадаю вона встигне. 6. Хто з Вас забронює номер в готелі до ранку понеділка? – Я забронюю. 7. До

котрої години в понеділок Ви доставите моє замовлення? – Ви отримаєте його до шостої години, чекайте на дзвінок кур'єра. 8. Ви підготуєте звіт до початку засідання? – Так. 9. Вона опублікує результати свого експерименту до п'ятниці? – Ні, вона ще не повернеться з відрядження до п'ятниці. 10. У четвер буде п'ять років, як я працюю у вашому відділенні. 11. У 2019 році буде п'ятнадцять років, як вони працюють пліч о пліч. 12. Як довго ти будеш вчитися, коли закінчиш навчальний заклад? 13. Коли ти прийдеш додому? – Я закінчу до восьмої години, тож буду вдома о дев'ятій. 14. У мене багато роботи, я не закінчу до півночі.

#### **Exercise 4. Make up sentences after the model.**

**Model:** He works in this building. – Doesn't he work in this building?

You know my cousin John. – Don't you know my cousin John?

1. He is my colleague. 2. Anna is her secretary. 3. She lives nearby. 4. We have already met in the driveway. 5. He rents our guesthouse. 6. They work together in the same office. 7. Sheila is cooking dinner in the kitchen. 8. She has always dreamed to become a famous dancer. 9. You are going to join us on our trip. 10. He slept in the guestroom last night. 11. He scratched her car last night. 12. They know each other from school. 13. His blood pressure was rather high yesterday. 14. Her expression changed when she answered my question. 15. He gave this book last year.

#### **Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Невже Ви не знаєте цю славнозвісну плітку? 2. Чи ти мене взагалі не розумієш? 3. Чи вона помітила його в парку того вечора? 4. Пане Сміт, невже Ви не бачите всю абсурдність цієї ситуації? 5. Невже твоя донька ще не закінчила школу? Їй скоро 18! 6. Невже Ви не поїдете з нами в гори влітку? 7. Чи вона не бачить, хто він насправді? 8. Чи Стелла нічого не запідозрила у його поведінці? 9. Невже завтра буде погана погода? 10. Невже я знову не кататимуся на роликах у парку завтра через негоду? 11. Невже ви ще не розмовляли зі своїм керівником? Треба поспішати! 12. Невже вона нічого так і не дізнається? 13. Невже ніхто нічого не скаже їй про його нескінченні зради? 14. Невже він наважиться запросити її на танець? 15. Невже Ви та незнайомка, яку бачив в театрі вчора? 16. Невже Діксон не зможе вмовити її? 17. Невже ніхто з вас не в змозі допомогти другові?

#### **Exercise 6. Make up sentences after the model.**

**Model:** It is lovely weather we are having. – It is lovely weather we are having, isn't it?

1. Spring is a wonderful time of the year. 2. It was terrible! 3. It wasn't my idea. 4. I haven't seen you for ages. 5. Apparently it's cheaper to fly than to go by train. 6. It's a pity you couldn't come. 7. It seems that we are not welcome here. 8. It's my birthday today. 9. It's over 200 miles from London to Manchester. 10. It gets dark very early in the winter. 11. I am the most beautiful girl at this party! 12. He gets a lot of good marks in English. 13. We need more vegetables. 14. He said it himself. 15. You have done it before. 16. They will move to LA next year. 17. He works with your husband. 18. Andy will have taken his driving license test by next month. 19. You've been waiting for me here for hours, poor thing. 20. He did the same thing last night again. 21. You can't play football. 22. He can't argue with you. 23. You weren't there last night. 24. You haven't done it by yourself. 25. Sheila couldn't call me yesterday. 26. Let's wait. 27. Help him with his report.

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Я ж Вас знаю, чи не так? 2. Він насправді це зробив, так? 3. Ви нічого і нікого там не бачили, так? 4. Ви працюєте разом з чоловіком, так? 5. Ви ж не читаете ранкову пресу, правда? 6. Гарно тут, правда? 7. Я найщасливіша жінка в світі, чи не так? 8. Почекай на мене хвилинку, гаразд? 9. Нікуди не йди, добре? 10. Допоможи їй з домашнім завданням, добре? 11. Ходімо ввечері в театр, добре? 12. Піди до крамниці за продуктами, гаразд? 13. Давайте заспіваємо цю різдвяну щедрівочку разом, гаразд? 14. Давайте зателефонуємо йому та самі спитаємо в нього, гаразд? 15. Ми разом вчилися в школі, чи не так? 16. Ми з Вами вже зустрічалися, чи не так? 17. Він не вміє кататися на велосипеді, чи не так? – Ні, вміє. 18. Ви цього року були на Рів'єрі, чи не так? 19. Ми дійсно щось бачили, так? Але було так темно, що ми нічого не розгледіли. 20. Ти вважаєш мене найрозумнішою в нашому класі, справді?

## LESSON 12

---

Text: London

Grammar: 1) The Passive voice

2) Request and order in indirect speech

### LONDON

London is the capital city of the United Kingdom and Europe's largest city with an **area** of 620 **square** miles. Its history begins with the **arrival** of the Romans soon after their **invasion** of Britain in AD43. London is **located** in southeast England, on both sides of the Thames River. It **offers** many **exciting** attractions, fascinating museums, great galleries, clubs, pubs and restaurants, cinemas, opera and ballet. London is a **growing** and **diverse** metropolis with a population of 7.5 million people.

Today the Greater London administrative area **comprises** the City of London and 32 London **boroughs including** the City of Westminster. The City of London is the historical center of London. It is built on the **site** of a Roman outpost named Londinium. Today this area is one of the world's leading financial centers.

London has been built up gradually **in the course of** many centuries. It was **ruled** over by the Romans, the Anglo-Saxons, the Danes and the Normans. They each **added** something to English life.

London was rebuilt after the Great Fire of 1666 by the great architect Christopher Wren. He **designed** 52 City churches and London's Cathedral, St. Paul's.

Less than a mile upstream from the City is Westminster, which has been the **seat** of **government** for nine hundred years. Standing on the site of the old royal palace of Westminster, the House of Parliament is a very large and **majestic** building, a fine example of 19th century Gothic **architecture** in Britain. It stands on the left bank of the river Thames and it **stretches** for about 100 **feet**.

**Across** the road is Westminster Abbey. The resting place of the royals, Westminster Abbey is one of the most visited churches in the Christian world. Since 1066, when William the Conqueror was crowned there, the Abbey has been the traditional setting for the coronation of British kings and queens and for Royal weddings too.

The University of London is not so famous or so **ancient** as Oxford and Cambridge Universities, but is, in fact, much larger than either of them. It is made up of a number of **colleges, schools**, and attached institutes, which **range** from the London School of Economics and Political Science to King's College

and several medical schools. The University of London has an outstanding international reputation founded on the quality of its teaching and research.

The traffic in London, as in all big cities, is very heavy. Many English people use double-decker buses but most people **prefer** the Underground or the Tube. London was the first city in the world to have an underground railway.

London is so large and has so many historical monuments that even people who have lived in London all their lives often **discover** something new.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

area square arrival invasion located offers exciting growing diverse  
comprises boroughs site in the course of ruled added seat designed majestic  
stretches feet Across ancient colleges, schools range

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the vocabulary notes.**

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Area** 1) a particular part of a country, town etc, e. g. *Hannah grew up in a beautiful area of Ireland. Crime rates are significantly higher in urban areas.* 2) a part of a house, office, garden etc that is used for a particular purpose, e. g. *Their apartment has a large kitchen area.* 3) a particular subject, range of activities, or group of related subjects, e. g. *Nordstrom does research in the area of heart disease.* 4) the amount of space that a flat surface or shape covers, e. g. *The settlement covered an area of 2,000 square miles.*

**2. Offer** (verb) 1) to ask someone if they would like to have something, or to hold something out to them so that they can take it, e. g. *They offered him a very good job, but he turned it down.* 2) to say that you are willing to do something, e. g. *I don't need any help, but it was nice of you to offer.* 3) to provide something that people need or want (**offer advice/help/support** etc) e. g. *Your doctor should*



*be able to offer advice on diet.* 4) **have something to offer (somebody)**, to have qualities, opportunities etc that people are likely to want or enjoy, e. g. *He felt he had nothing to offer her that she wanted.* 5) to say that you are willing to pay a particular amount of money for something (**to offer (somebody) something for something**), e. g. *They've offered us £ 75,000 for the house.* 6) **to offer your hand (to somebody)** to hold out your hand in order to shake hands with someone, e. g. *Jane offered him her hand, but he just turned round and left.*

**Offer** (noun) 1) a statement saying that you are willing to do something for someone or give them something, e. g. *Have you had any job offers?* 2) an amount of money that you are willing to pay for something, e. g. *I'll sell the car if I get a good offer.*

**3. Attract** (verb) 1) to make someone interested in something, or make them want to take part in something, e. g. *Disney World attracts millions of tourists each year.* 2) to make someone like or admire something or feel romantically interested in someone, e. g. *I guess it was his eyes that attracted me first.* 3) to make someone or something move towards another thing, e. g. *Children are excited to see the magnet attracting paper clips, coins etc. The food mixture will attract a variety of wild songbirds.*

**Attraction** (noun) 1) [uncountable and countable] a feeling of liking someone, especially in a sexual way, e. g. *The attraction between them was almost immediate.* 2) [countable] something interesting or enjoyable to see or do, e. g. *The beautiful beaches are the island's main attraction.* 3) [uncountable and countable] (technical) a force which makes things move together or stay together, e. g. *gravitational attraction.*

**Attractive** (adjective) 1) someone who is attractive is good looking, especially in a way that makes you sexually interested in them, e. g. *Women seem to find him attractive.* 2) pleasant to look at, e. g. *Kitchen utensils should be attractive as well as functional.*

**4. Grow** (verb) 1) [intransitive] to increase in amount, size, number, or strength, e. g. *China's economic output continues to grow at a remarkable annual rate.* 2) (person/animal) [intransitive] to become bigger, taller etc over a period of time in the process of becoming an adult, e. g. *You've really grown since I last saw you.* 3) (plants) [intransitive] if plants grow, they exist and develop in a natural way, [transitive] to make plants or crops develop and produce fruit or flowers, e. g. *The plants grow wild by the river. Many families own plots of land to grow food.* 4) to change and become different quite slowly, e. g. *The sound was growing louder.* 5) to gradually become better, bigger etc (grow as), e. g. *She's grown tremendously as a musician.*

**Growth** (noun) 1) [singular, uncountable] an increase in amount, number, or size (growth in/of), e. g. *Eating nutritious food is important for healthy growth in children.* 2) an increase in the value of goods or services produced and sold by a business or a country, e. g. *There was an urgent need to take*

*measures to stimulate economic growth.* 3) size/strength [singular, uncountable] the development of the physical size, strength etc of a person, animal, or plant over a period of time, e. g. *Vitamins are essential for healthy growth.*

**5. Seat** (noun) 1) [countable] a place where you can sit, especially one in a vehicle or one from which you watch a performance, sports event etc, e. g. *Our seats were right at the front of the airplane.*

### COLLOCATIONS

**Back/rear/front seat** (= the back or front seat in a car), **passenger seat** (= the seat next to the driver's seat in a car), **window/aisle seat** (= a seat next to the window or aisle, for example on a plane), **empty/vacant seat**, **front-row seat** (= in a theatre, sports ground etc), **good seat** (= one from which you can see well), **ringside seat** (= a seat in the front row for a sports event, especially a boxing match), **have/take a seat**, **show somebody to their seat**, **book/reserve a seat.** 2) [countable] a position as an elected member of a government, or as a member of a group that makes official decisions, e. g. *Promotion would mean a seat on the board of directors.* 3) [countable usually singular] the flat part of a chair etc that you sit on, e. g. *Don't put your feet on the seat!*

**6. Govern** (verb) 1) [intransitive and transitive] to officially and legally control a country and make all the decisions about taxes, laws, public services etc, e. g. *the leaders who govern the country.* 2) [transitive] if rules, principles etc govern the way a system or situation works, they control how it happens, e. g. *The universe is governed by the laws of physics.*

**Government** (noun) 1) [countable, usually singular also + plural verb British English] the group of people who govern a country or state, e. g. *The country now has a democratic government for the first time.* 2) [uncountable] a form or system of government, e. g. *Most people in the country support the return to democratic government.*

**Governmental** (adjective) 1) of a government, or relating to government, e. g. *The ultimate decisions will be taken at governmental, even presidential, level.*

**7. School** (noun) 1) a place where children are taught, e. g. *His mother always used to pick him up from school.*

### COLLOCATIONS

go to school, attend school, school children/pupils/teacher, school uniform, school playground/library/bus etc., school meal/dinner, school holiday(s).

2) time at school, e. g. *School begins at 8.30.* 3) a department or group of departments that teaches a particular subject at a university, e. g. *She went to School of Foreign Languages, so she has a good command of the English language.* 4) a place where a particular subject or skill is taught, e. g. *You have a choice: you could go to university, or you could go to an evening language school in Brighton.*

**8. Heavy** (adjective) 1) weighing a lot, e. g. *The wardrobe was too heavy for me to move on my own.* 2) in amount, degree, or severity.

### COLLOCATIONS

1) heavy traffic, heavy rain/snow, heavy fighting, heavy drinking, heavy drinker, heavy smoking, heavy smoke, heavy burden/demands/pressure, heavy fine, heavy casualties (=a lot of deaths or injuries), heavy losses, heavy defeat, heavy cold.

2) needing a lot of physical strength and effort, e. g. *My son does most of the heavy outdoor work.* 3) not easy or entertaining and needing a lot of mental effort, e. g. *I want something to read on holiday - nothing too heavy.*

**9. Site** (noun) 1) a place where something important or interesting happened, e. g. *an archaeological site.* 2) an area of ground where something is being built or will be built (site of/for), e. g. *a site for a new airport. He managed to get himself a job on a building site.* 3) a place that is used for a particular purpose, e. g. *a camping site.* 4) website, e. g. *You can browse websites searching for information.*

5) **On site** – at the place where people work, study, or stay, e. g. *There's a bar, restaurant, and gym on site.*

**Site** (verb) to place or build something in a particular place, be sited in/on/at/near etc something, e. g. *Some of this new housing has been sited in inner city areas.*

**10. Number** (noun) 1) a word or sign that represents an amount or a quantity [numeral, figure], e. g. *They wrote various numbers on a large sheet of paper. Five was her lucky number. An even number (= 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 etc), an odd number (= 1, 3, 5, 7, 9 etc).* 2) a phone number, e. g. *My new number is 502-6155. Somebody's home/office/work number, mobile/fax number, e. g. I gave him my home number. What's your mobile number?* 3) a number used to show the position of something in an ordered set or list, e. g. *Answer question number 4. A number 17 bus.*

**Number** (verb) 1) to give a number to something that is part of an ordered set or list, e. g. *All the seats in the theatre are numbered.* 2) if people or things number a particular amount, that is how many there are, e. g. *The population of the town numbered about 5,000.* 3) to count something, e. g. *Who can number the stars?*

**11. Research** (noun) 1) serious study of a subject, in order to discover new facts or test new ideas (research into/on), e. g. *research into the causes of cancer.* 2) the activity of finding information about something that you are interested in or need to know about, e. g. *It's a good idea to do some research before you buy a house.*

**Research** (verb) 1) to study a subject in detail, especially in order to discover new facts or test new ideas, e. g. *He's been researching material for*

a documentary. *Ten years ago I began researching into the role of women in trade unions.* 2) to get all the necessary facts and information for something, e. g. *This book has been very well researched.*

### WORD COMBINATIONS AND PHRASES

**To be the seat (seat of government/power)** formal a city where a country's government is based

**Resting place** the place where someone is buried, e. g. *His final resting place alongside 19 generations of his family dating back before the Norman Conquest.*

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. She knows the local **area** very well. 2. Move the cursor to a blank area of the computer screen. 3. Mr. Brown is an expert in this **area**. 4. It was pouring with rain so I accepted his **offer** of a lift. 5. He categorically rejected our offer. 6. Computers **offer** a much greater degree of flexibility in the way work is organized. 7. If you want to **attract** more customers, try advertising in the local paper. 8. Buckingham Palace is a major tourist **attraction**. 9. His **attraction** to you is obvious. 10. He has decided to **grow** a beard and a moustache. 11. The plants **grow** best in cool, damp conditions. 12. I'm sure you'll **grow** to like her in time. 13. Economic **growth** is expected to average 2 % next year. 14. The height of the bicycle **seat** is adjustable. 15. It is undemocratic to **govern** an area without an electoral mandate. 16. After years of corrupt **government**, people are tired of politics. 17. Did you have a good day at **school**? 18. The town is under **heavy** artillery fire. 19. After today's **heavy** snow, many roads are still blocked. 20. She wore a **heavy** gold chain around her neck. 21. Do you want to bookmark this **site**? 22. This **site** has been chosen for the new school. 23. Do check on wind direction when **siting** your barbecue. 24. She left her name and **number** on his answerphone. 25. Can you read a car **number** plate at fifty metres? 26. Fifteen years ago, Kenya's elephant population **numbered** 65,000. 27. This **research** has done much to advance our understanding of language learning. 28. The first stage in **research** is data collection. 29. Doctors **researching** into the causes of the disease believe they may have found a cure. 30. It is important to **research** the market fully before offering a new product for sale.

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. Finance is Mark's **area**. 2. The remote desert **area** is accessible only by helicopter. 3. She knows the local **area** very well. 4. The hotel reception **area** was **overcrowded**. 5. The **offer** was too enticing to refuse. 6. I'll give you \$ 500

for it, and that's my final **offer**! 7. Computers **offer** a much greater degree of flexibility in the way work is organized. 8. It was generous of him to **offer** to pay for us both. 9. We **offer** customers a free home delivery service. 10. I've had an **offer** of \$ 2 500 for the car. 11. These birds have colourful feathers to **attract** a mate. 12. The local tourist board is trying to **attract** more people to the town. 13. The local tourist board is trying to **attract** more people to the town. 14. Sophie was plainly the centre of **attraction** in the room. 15. I don't find him physically **attractive**. 16. He was trying to make it look like an **attractive** proposition. 17. He has decided to **grow** a beard and a moustache. 18. You cannot **grow** crops on exhausted land. 19. Economic **growth** is expected to average 2 % next year. 20. The constant winds had reduced the **growth** of plants and bushes. 21. Washington is the **seat** of government of the US. 22. The height of the bicycle **seat** is adjustable. 23. The height of the bicycle **seat** is adjustable. 24. He accused the opposition party of being unfit to **govern**. 25. Biting winds governed the climate in that area. 26. The **government's** main aim is to beat inflation. 27. She wasn't very academic and hated **school**. 28. There's a **school** just across from our house. 29. There is **heavy** traffic in the downtown area tonight. 30. She got off the bus, burdened with two **heavy** suitcases. 31. The monument was moved to a new **site**. 32. Do you want to bookmark this **site**? 33. This **site** has been chosen for the new school. 34. All the materials are on **site** so that work can start immediately. 35. The company's head office is sited in Geneva. 36. What's your account **number** please? 37. She left her name and **number** on his answerphone. 38. He was carrying a **number** of files under his arm. 39. There were a large **number** of candidates for the job. 40. The **number** 57306 contains five digits. 41. The **research** shows that computer games may cause aggression. 42. I'm doing some **research** on the subject. 43. He spent several years researching a rare African dialect.

**Exercise 9. Work in pairs. Go through the essential vocabulary. Make up a sentence with a word or a phrase from the vocabulary notes.**

Model:

One student: "*heavy casualties*"

The other student: "*Both sides had suffered heavy casualties.*"

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Одяг має бути не тільки комфортним, але і подобатися людям. 2. У неї було місце біля вікна, тому вона у продовж усього польоту милувалася синім небом. 3. Вони запропонували нам дві тисячі фунтів за автівку. 4. Сильні снігопади заважали рятувальникам приходити на допомогу туристам. 5. Він не міг отримати інформацію, тому що сайт був заблокований. 6. Джон ненавидів шкільні роки, він вважав, що вчителі його нерозуміли. 7. Перед тим як купувати автівку треба гарно вивчити ринок

автомобілів. 8. Кількість протестувальників нараховувала не менш ніж три сотні людей. 9. Економіка країни демонструвала стійке зростання за останні три роки. 10. Нам вдалося купити квитки в театрі ближче до сцени. 11. Вона не була фахівцем у галузі фізики, тому не могла пояснити це явище. 12. Що вона вирощує на городі поза будинком? 13. Вона була така обурена, що навіть не подала руки своїй дочці. 14. Якщо у мене буде гарна пропозиція, я продам будинок. 15. Магніт притягує тільки предмети, зроблені з заліза. 16. Вона запропонувала будь-яку допомогу у разі необхідності. 17. Вона схудла, тому що була дуже занепокоєна. 18. Ви будете працювати у офісі, там є все необхідне. їдальня, кімната відпочинку, та кімната для гри у теніс. 19. Вона навчалася на фізичному факультеті університету. 20. Я не можу їй подзвонити, тому що не знаю її мобільного номера.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

**Exercise 1.** Translate the following exercises into Ukrainian paying attention to the form of the predicate.

1. John told his younger brother to stop weeping. 2. The brigade leader ordered the soldiers to start crossing the river. 3. Such things are never said in public. 4. Have the students been informed about the module test in due time? 5. The little girl was not allowed to go out without her grandma. 6. Will the students be examined on Saturday? 7. The manager was requested to comment on the changes to the statute. 8. The teacher told the pupils to bring the paints. 9. Peter/s parents asked him not to be late. 10. Will the deliveries be made in time? 11. The passengers were told to refrain from smoking during the flight. 12. Were the damages mentioned in the governor/s speech? 13. The queen commanded the lords to gather in the castle. 14. Not a single familiar fact was mentioned in the professor/s speech. 15. The administration was requested to prolong the action.

**Exercise 2. Put the following sentences into negative and interrogative forms.**

1. Simon has been shown the picture several times. 2. The new opera house was built fifteen years ago. 3. This festival is held every year. 4. She likes to be talked about. 5. Homework is assigned to students after each lesson. 6. A new library will soon be built in their town. 7. This work can be done in different ways. 8. The doctor has been sent for. 9. This play is much talked about. 10. They will be examined on Thursday. 11. Some new details were added to the description. 12. Chinese and Japanese have been taught at our department for five years. 13. He will be taken to the British Museum in a week. 14. John has been informed about the incident in time. 15. This writer/s novels are translated into all European languages.

**Exercise 3. Change the following sentences from direct speech to indirect speech.**

*Model: Peter said to me: "Come to my place at 5 pm". – Peter asked me to come to his place at 5 pm. Peter said to me: "Don't come to my place at 5 pm". – Peter asked me not to come to his place at 5 pm.*

1. "Don't leave these plates on the table, wash them up," Mother said to my elder sister.
2. "Please, help me to make a report," Ann asked her roommate.
3. "Do the exercises in writing," the teacher said to her class.
4. The boss said to the chief engineer: "Prepare the draft project for tomorrow."
5. "Be a good girl and listen to your teachers," the mother said to the child.
6. "Don't discuss this question now," said the manager.
7. The fireman said to the builders: "Phone in case of great emergencies".
8. "Don't be so silly," the father said to his son.
9. "Leave your telephone number with the secretary," the managing director said.
10. "Leave your things here," my companion advised me.
11. She said: "Don't come on Sunday as I will be busy."
12. "Leave me alone," the wife said angrily.
13. He said: "Meet me at the station tomorrow."
14. The guide said to the tourists: "Look to right."
15. He said to his friend: "Remember about the meeting."

**Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps with appropriate articles.**

1. John did ... right thing when he divorced her.
2. They did not speak to each other for ... last three days.
3. Do you have ... dictionary of your own.
4. Do you like ... cat?
5. How many flats are there in this block?
6. We are going to see ... new film about wild animals today.
7. What is ... weather like today? Fine. I do not like ... dull weather.
8. What ... clever student!
9. ... water is precious in this area and must be paid for.
10. ... silence grew oppressive.
11. It was ... good news.
12. I like ... tea. I like ... hot tea.
12. ... wine is sour. Take it away.
13. We had ... breakfast early in ... morning and left at once.
14. They decided on ... light supper.
15. You have made ... mistake again. Be careful.

**Exercise 6. Fill in the gaps with appropriate prepositions.**

1. You can write ... both sides ... the sheet.
2. We never go out ... such bad weather.
3. It is pleasant to lie ... the grass.
4. They lay ... the sun long, and then had problems with their skin.
5. She saw a plane flying ... her head.
6. Can you see a dog ... the photo?
7. He is always ... work, I never see him ... rest.
8. Your hair is in disorder. Can't you see it ... the mirror?
9. He took a cigarette ... his pocket and lit it.
10. Not a cloud was ... the sky.
11. The church was clearly seen ... the blue sky.
12. Barking dog ran ... the poor man until he disappeared ... the house.
13. The temperature was 10 degrees ... zero, so they were freezing ... cold.
14. It was easy to do well ... the beginning of the semester.
15. She was planning to go ... a party ... the weekend, so she bought a nice blue dress.

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Вона заявила, що не їсть цукерки, бо хоче схуднути.
2. Телевізори купують не кожного дня, тому що вони коштують недешево.
3. Цю тему ретельно вивчали п'ять років тому.
4. Коли увійшла директор школи, учням пояснювали нові граматичні правила.
5. Коли побудували приміщення нової школи? Його звели місяць тому.
6. Вчителька наказала Петрику витерти з дошки.
7. Вікна у класі будуть пофарбовані вчасно?
8. Вона згадала, що не зможе відвідати збори у неділю.
9. Не входьте до кабінету, там зараз оглядають хворого.
10. Бабуся спитала чи він випив молоко.
11. Після війни у місті збудували багато нових будинків та шкіл.
12. Усі документи були надруковані, до того як керівництво з'явилося у офісі.
13. Мати попросила доньку не приходити додому дуже пізно.
14. У цьому парку вирощують кращі види квітів. Деякі з них навіть відправляють за кордон.
15. Хлопець сказав, що не знає, де він загубив гроші.
16. Коли вона увійшла до зали, Петро укладав останні речі у валізи.
17. Ця проблема зараз обговорюється, тому зачекайте трохи.
18. У цій крамниці продають і купують багато речей кожного дня.
19. Вона нагадала присутнім, усі підрахунки вже були зроблені.
20. Секретар запевнила, що усі документи будуть підписані завтра.



## LESSON 13

Text: British Royal Family

Grammar: 1) Impersonal Sentences

2) Article with Proper Names

### BRITISH ROYAL FAMILY

Queen Elizabeth II became Queen of the United Kingdom and Head of the Commonwealth on February 6, 1952. As of today she has reigned for 60 years, and she is celebrating the Diamond (60th) Jubilee of her reign in 2012. She is head of the British Royal Family, has 4 children, 8 grandchildren and 2 great-grandchildren, and is 86 years.

She is the 32nd great-granddaughter of King Alfred the Great who was the first **effective** King of England 871-899. On 21st December 2007 she became the oldest reigning British monarch having outlived her great-great-grandmother Queen Victoria who died 22nd January 1901 aged 81 years, 7 months and 29 days.

On 12th May 2011 Queen Elizabeth II became the 2nd longest reigning monarch in over 1,200 years of British History. She will have **to reign** until 10th September 2015 when she will be 89 years old to reign longer than her great-great-grandmother Queen Victoria who reigned for 63 years and 216 days from 1837 – 1901.

Her eldest son Prince Charles who was 63 years old on 14th November 2011 is **currently** the longest waiting and 2nd oldest ever **heir apparent**, and would by that time be the oldest heir apparent at 66 years old.

The Queen's husband Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh celebrates his 91st birthday on 10th June 2012. He is the longest ever serving Royal Consort and oldest serving spouse of a reigning British monarch.

On 29th April 2011 the Queen's grandson Prince William, who is 2nd in line to the throne, married Catherine Middleton in Westminster Abbey. They are now the Duke and Duchess of Cambridge.

Elizabeth II is Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, and Head of the Commonwealth of Nations. Great Britain was formed 305 years ago by the Act of Union between England and Scotland on 1st April 1707.

As well as the United Kingdom, she is Queen of more sixteen countries which are known as Commonwealth Realms, and their **combined** population is 134 million. She is Head of the Commonwealth of Nations **comprising**

54 member states in North America, South America, Europe, Africa, Asia and Oceania. The **aims** of the Commonwealth include the **promotion** of democracy, human rights, good governance, the rule of **law**, individual liberty, egalitarianism, free **trade**, multilateralism, and world peace. The 2.1 billion people in the member states **account** for almost a third of the current world population.

Her reign of over more than half a century has seen 12 Prime Ministers of the United Kingdom, and numerous Prime Ministers in the Commonwealth Realms of which she is (or was) also Head of State; between them she has had a total of 140 Prime Ministers during her reign. There have been 12 US Presidents during her reign.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

Effective, to reign, currently, heir apparent, Duke, Consort, spouse, Commonwealth Realms, combined population, comprising, aims, promotion, good governance, law, trade, account, 12 Prime Ministers, Head of State, 12 US Presidents.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 5. Study the essential vocabulary.**

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Effective** (adjective), **successful, and working in the way that was intended** [ $\neq$  ineffective], e. g. *Training is often much less effective than expected. The most effective ways of reducing inner city congestion.*

**2. Reign** (verb) [intransitive] **1. To rule a nation or group of nations as their king, queen, or emperor**, e. g. *George VI reigned from 1936 to 1952.* **Reign over**, e. g. *Pharaohs reigned over Egypt for centuries.* **2. literary If a feeling or quality reigns, it exists strongly for a period of time**, e. g. *For several minutes confusion reigned.*

**3. Currently** (adverb) **at the present time**, e. g. *The products that are currently available. He is currently working on his first novel.*

**4. Heir apparent** (noun) *plural* heirs apparent [countable] **1. An heir whose right to receive the family property, money, or title cannot be taken away** **2. Someone who seems very likely to take over a person's job, position etc. when that person leaves**, e. g. *The presidential heir apparent has not won the election yet.*

**5. Combine** (verb) **1.** [intransitive and transitive] **If you combine two or more different things, or if they combine, they begin to exist or work together** [combination] combine something with something, e. g. *Diets are most effective when combined with exercise.* **Combine to do something** e. g. *A number of factors have combined to create this difficult situation. Ruth hesitated, uncertain of how to combine honesty and diplomacy in her answer.* **Combined effect/effects** (= the result of two or more different things used or mixed together) e. g. *The combined effects of the war and the drought resulted in famine.* **2.** [transitive] **To have two or more different features or qualities at the same time** [combination] **combine something with/and something** e. g. *Good carpet wool needs to combine softness with strength.* **3.** [intransitive and transitive] **If two or more different substances combine, or if you combine them, they mix or join together to produce a new single substance** e. g. *Different amino acids combine to form proteins. Combine all the ingredients in a large bowl.*

**6. Comprise** (verb) [not in progressive] *formal* **1.** [linking verb] **To consist of particular parts, groups etc.**, e. g. *The house comprises two bedrooms, a kitchen, and a living room.* **Be comprised of somebody/something**, e. g. *The committee is comprised of well-known mountaineers.* **2. To form part of a larger group of people or things** [constitute, make up], e. g. *Women comprise a high proportion of part-time workers.*

**7. Aim** (noun) **1.** [countable] **Something you hope to achieve by doing something**; aim of, e. g. *The aim of the research is to find new food sources.* **With the aim of doing something**, e. g. *A campaign with the aim of helping victims of crime*; **2. Take aim (at)** to point a gun or weapon at someone or something you want to shoot, e. g. *Alan took aim at the target.*

**8. Promotion** (noun) **1.** [uncountable and countable] **A move to a more important job or position in a company or organization**, e. g. *I want a job with good prospects for promotion.* **Promotion to**, e. g. *Your promotion to Senior Editor is now official.* **2.** [uncountable and countable] **An activity intended to help sell a product**, or the product that is being promoted, e. g. *A winter sales promotion.* **3.** [uncountable] **The activity of persuading people to support something, promotion of**, e. g. *The promotion of energy conservation.*

**9. Govern** (verb) **1.** [intransitive and transitive] **Officially and legally control a country and make all the decisions about taxes, laws, public services etc** [rule], e. g. *The leaders who govern the country.* **2.** [transitive]

**If rules, principles etc govern the way a system or situation works, they control how it happens**, e. g. *Legislation governing the export of live animals.*

**10. Law** (noun) **1. System of rules** also the law [uncountable] **the whole system of rules that people in a particular country or area must obey**, e. g. *Should people do what they think is right even when it means breaking the law? Elected officials ought to obey the law. The Suicide Act became law in 1961. By law, seatbelts must be worn by all passengers.* **2. A rule** [countable] a rule that people in a particular country or area must obey **immigration/labour/libel etc law. Under a law**, e. g. *Five people arrested under anti-terrorism laws were released without charge.* **Law on**, e. g. *European laws on equal opportunities.* **Law against**, e. g. *The laws against drug use were very severe. Laws passed by Parliament.* **3. Law and order** a situation in which people respect the law, and crime is controlled by the police, the prison system etc, e. g. *We are concerned about the breakdown of law and order in the country.* **4. Law of** what always happens [countable] something that always happens in nature or society, or a statement that describes this, e. g. *The law of supply and demand. The laws of nature. The law of gravity.*

**11. Trade** (noun) **1. Buying/selling** [uncountable] the activity of buying, selling, or exchanging goods within a country or between countries [commerce] **trade between**, e. g. *There has been a marked increase in trade between East and West. International trade agreements; unfair trade practices.* **Trade in**, e. g. *Trade in ivory has been banned since 1990.* **The arms/drug/slave etc trade** (the buying and selling of weapons, drugs etc) **2. The hotel/tourist etc trade** the business done by companies, hotels etc [industry], e. g. *Working on Saturdays is usual in the retail trade.* **3. Amount of business** [uncountable] **business activity, especially the amount of goods or products that are sold** [business], e. g. *A lot of pubs nowadays do most of their trade at lunchtimes.*

**12. Account** (verb) **account for something** *phrasal verb* **1. To form a particular amount or part of something**, e. g. *Afro-Americans account for 12 % of the US population.* **2. To be the reason why something happens** [explain], e. g. *Recent pressure at work may account for his behavior. Can you account for your movements on that night?* **3. To say where all the members of a group of people or things are**, especially because you are worried that some of them may be lost, e. g. *Three days after the earthquake, more than 150 people had still to be accounted for.*

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. It is a simple but **effective** technique. 2. She was a popular ruler throughout her **reign**. 3. We **currently** have an awful national team, but we do not suffer from a lack of talent. 4. The **heir apparent** deposed his father to become ruler

in June 1995. 5. The efforts of students, teachers and parents **combined** to ensure that the event was one that would be remembered for a long time to come. 6. Each army division **comprised** 4,500 troops. 7. The **main aim** of the course is to improve your writing. 8. There was little chance for **promotion** within the company. 9. The universe is **governed** by the laws of physics. 10. Federal **law** protects workers who are disabled. 11. The Tigers made a few good **trades** this season and picked up some promising players. 12. Everyone was **accounted** for after the floods.

**Exercise 7. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. He gave an effective speech. 2. The lion reigns as king of the jungle. 3. He is currently trying to design and build a vehicle to land on the surface of the planet Mercury. 4. The coach named her assistant as her heir apparent. 5. The basis of such unionism is rooted in the notion that as employees, workers combine for the purposes of production and the provision of services. 6. The play comprises three acts. 7. A policy that sets out the school's aims and objectives. 8. She was given a well-deserved promotion. 9. The party had been governing for seven months. 10. I think she may be in trouble with the law. 11. Trade accounts for half of our gross national product. 12. I had to account for every penny I spent.

**Exercise 8. Paraphrase the following sentence using the essential vocabulary.**

1. Some staff members of our company are more productive than others. 2. A dynasty ruled over this region during the 11th century. 3. We now have four paper millionaires and it is all young men out of universities. 4. The CEO's successor used to be the vice president here. 5. His music blends traditional and modern melodies. 6. The National Congress is composed of ten senators. 7. The company has instituted several new policies with the goal of reducing waste. 8. The job offers many opportunities for professional advancement. 9. We now have rules and regulations against racism, and more people are taught not to be racist. 10. Last year I was a member of the government agency in charge of regulating interstate commerce. 11. Her whole life seemed to be ruled by fear. 12. Her visit could not be taken for a success.

**Exercise 9. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. Ефективні методи подолання кризи. 2. Голод та бідність царювали у той страшний час у нашій країні. 3. На даний момент його новий роман знаходиться у типографії та скоро з'явиться у книгарнях. 4. Законний спадкоємець усього роду. 5. Найбільш вірогідний наступник президента. 6. Ти повинен тримати себе в руках. 7. Торгівля контрабандними товарами. 8. Вам вже відомо місцезнаходження всіх постраждалих? 9. Надавати

юридичну кваліфікацію правопорушення. 10. Одержати підвищення по службі 11. Спосіб просування товарів. 12. Для досягнення поставленої мети нам потрібно об'єднати наші зусилля. 13. Олія і вода не змішуються.

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. These commercials were extremely effective as marketing tools, but we now know that chocolate swimming pools and candy-coating showers play no part in the manufacture of real M&M's. Instead, the ellipsoid chocolate centres of plain M&M's are formed by machines. 2. The king reigned in a time of peace and prosperity. 3. In England the sovereign reigns but does not rule. 4. Silence reigned while we waited for news. 5. The service is currently aimed at men, but is set to expand into the ladies' market soon. 6. There is currently no suggestion that he was involved in illegal trading in drugs. 7. His eldest son Chris, the heir apparent, has been acting as chairman for the last couple of years. 8. Currently Edward owns and controls the Duchy of Cornwall, established in the fourteenth century to provide an income for the heir apparent. 9. The aim of this technology demonstration system is to build a single unit that combines sensor components with advanced signal processing and target recognition tools. 10. Today we represent a new product that combines the benefits of a hairspray and a gel. 11. The new board will comprise twelve members, including four worker directors. 12. The 25-member team mostly comprises students in their early twenties. 13. They say that teamwork is required in order to achieve these aims. 14. I started this business with the aim of making a profit. 15. The company is offering a special promotion to increase sales. 16. Our Prime Minister contributed greatly to the promotion of better relations between the neighbouring countries. 17. We will be studying the forces that govern the Earth's climate. 18. He allows himself to be governed by his emotions. 19. She has proposed a new law to protect people from being evicted unfairly. 20. Schools are required by law to provide a safe learning environment. 21. She suggested changing the state's laws controlling the sale of alcohol. 22. The new centre will provide vocational training in creative industries and manual trades. 23. Coffee is the second most traded commodity in the world after oil. 24. Yesterday my cousin was brought before the Board to account for his behavior. 25. In our country social security accounts for about a third of total public spending.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Минулого року Джейн направили на стажування до провідної рекламної компанії нашого міста та нажалі навчання виявилось не таким ефективним, як очікувалося. 2. На зустрічі в мерії посадовці обговорювали найбільш ефективні шляхи зниження автомобільних заторів у місті. 3. Емоції взяли гору над нею та вона піддалася спокусі помститися йому. 4. Людвіг II

правив Баварією з 1864 року. Під час його царювання Баварія стала частиною Німецької імперії. 5. Сьогодні вранці я запізнився на співбесіду через те, що мешкаю зараз у передмісті та через погані погодні умови транспортне сполучення було порушене. 6. На сьогодні рівень інфляції складає 12 відсотків та аналітики дають невтішні прогнози. 7. Багато студентів старших курсів поєднують роботу з навчанням. 8. Приблизно сім відсотків особового складу американських збройних сил складають жінки. 9. Мета досліджень – знайти нові джерела енергії. 10. Щоб отримати підвищення по службі, він цілодобово сидів за комп'ютером, розробляючи нові технології та системи продажів. 11. Новий уряд прийняв низку законів, щоб вивести країну з економічної кризи. 12. Банківські рахунки одного з найбільших імпортерів медичних препаратів були заблоковані за незаконну торгівлю забороненими речовинами. 13. Після трагічної загибелі короля розпочалась жорстка боротьба між його дітьми за трон, адже він так і не встиг назвати ім'я свого спадкоємця. 14. Ти не повинен дозволяти собі керуватися емоціями, адже це серйозна справа, яка потребує холодного розуму. 15. Завданням мого дипломного дослідження є вивчення природних процесів, які управляють кліматом Землі. 16. Головним завданням судів є підтримка, інтерпретація та застосовування закону. 17. Як ви поясните причини цього нещасного випадку? – Катастрофа сталася через фатальну помилку пілота літака. 18. Просування нових торгових марок на ринок є надзвичайно складним завданням, тому власники дистрибуторських компаній наймають професійних маркетологів. 19. Практична частина має складати 70 відсотків вашого дослідження. 20. Вчора ми здавали екзамен з англійської мови, який складався з декількох аспектів, а саме з диктанту, перекладу та аудіювання. 21. Сталь виробляється шляхом об'єднання заліза з вуглецем.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. It is spring. 2. It is cold in winter. 3. We find it possible to finish this experiment before 5 pm. 4. It is difficult to imagine the world we live in without radio, telephone and television. 5. It was getting dark. 6. In Sweden it is against the law to hit a child. 7. It will be winter soon. 8. It will be hot in summer. 9. It is difficult for the child to lift the heavy box. 10. It is impossible to finish this work in a day. 11. It is difficult for me to breath. 12. It is too early to get up. 13. It is late to go for a walk. 14. Is it dark out of doors? 15. It was not snowing. 16. It is 11 o'clock now. 17. It was half past 4. 18. When I return it will be 10 o'clock already. 19. It often rains in autumn. 20. It is drizzling I must

take an umbrella. 21. It takes her an hour to get to her work. 22. It will take my mother half a day to bake so many cakes. 23. It is never late to say "excuse me". 24. It seemed to be late to change anything. 25. One must not smoke here. 26. One should wash hands before having meals. 27. One cannot do all the work at once. 28. How far is it from your office to the bank? 28. It is dangerous crossing the street with red lights on. 29. It is surprising that he did not take your advice. 30. It was necessary to lay cables across the Atlantic Ocean as there was no radio or satellites at that time.

**Exercise 2. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Зараз літо, на вулиці дуже тепло, погода чудово підходить для прогулянок по парку. 2. Була дев'ята вечора, коли ми прийшли додому, але його все ще не було. 3. На вулиці дуже холодно, йде сніг, надягни шапку та рукавички! 4. Мамо, а в південній частині світу зараз теж зима? 5. Зараз же тільки 16:00, а фільм вже йде, коли він розпочався? – Вже 16.15, перевір свій годинник. 6. У грудні завжди холодно. 7. Вчора йшов дощ, тому ми вирішили залишитися вдома та подивитися кіно по телевізору. 8. На мою думку, неможливо завершити всі роботи до вечора. 9. Потрібно перетинати вулицю на зелений сигнал світлофора. 10. Слід зазначити, що комп'ютери грають все більш важливу роль в нашому житті та праці. 11. Батьки вважають, що мені необхідно прочитати як можна більше фахової літератури, перш ніж розпочати роботу над моїм дослідженням. 12. Важко перелічити всі галузі науки і техніки, які засновані на електроніці. 13. Це добре відомо, що "Ватт" є одиницею названою на честь Джеймса Ватта, винахідника з Шотландії. 14. У наш час неможливо вирішити багато складних завдань без допомоги комп'ютерів. 15. Ще не стемніло, коли ми повернулися.

**Exercise 3. Translate the following into Ukrainian, pay attention to the article usage.**

Kamchatka, Eistein's theory of relativity, Everest, Ellis Island, Elbrus, Lincoln Elementary School, Ford High School, Amherst College, Teachers College, Harvard University, London University, Buckingham Palace, Westminster Palace, Saint Peter's Basilica, Saint Paul's Cathedral, Westminster Abbey, Lake Baikal, Rockefeller Centre, Lincoln Centre for the Performing Arts, London Bridge, Tower Bridge, Heathrow Airport, Frankfurt International Airport, National Geographic, Harper's Bazaar, Christmas, New Year's Eve, Saint Patrick's Day, Easter, April Fools' Day, Lake Michigan, Great Pond.

The Rocky Mountains, the Lincoln Highway, the Gulf Stream, the Southern Hemisphere, the Indian Ocean, the Amazon / the Amazon River, the Nile / the Nile River, the English Channel (La Manche), the Sahara Desert, the



Sea of Japan, the Great Lakes, the Canary Islands, the Strait of Gibraltar, the Alaska Peninsula, the Apennine Peninsula, the Great Plains, the state of California, the Central Siberian Plateau, the University of Chicago, the United Nations (the UN), the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), the Congress of the United States, the Senate, the House of Representatives, the Parliament of Great Britain (but: Parliament), the House of Commons, the European Parliament, the Teachers' Association, the National Basketball Association (the NBA), the Mitsubishi Manufacturing Company, the World Bank, the Bank of New York, the Louvre Museum, the British Museum, the National Gallery, the Tretyakov Gallery, the Cathedral of Notre Dame de Paris, the Palace of Versailles, the Empire State Building, the Eiffel Tower, the Tower of London, the Botanical Gardens, the Brooklyn Bridge, the Golden Gate Bridge, the John F. Kennedy International Airport, the Los Angeles International Airport, the New York Times, the Washington Post, the Daily Telegraph, the Guardian, the Nobel Prize in Literature, the Nobel Prize for Peace, the Pulitzer Prize for Music, the Academy Award for Best Actor, the British people, the Arabs, the Grammy Award, the Hubble telescope, the Kelvin scale, the Netherlands, the Dominican Republic, the Philippines.

1. There are two Mexicans, a Greek, and a Chinese in Tom's class.
2. French Canadians constitute about 80 percent of the population of Quebec.
3. Germans and Norwegians began to settle in Minnesota in the 19th century.
4. I want to travel to the Greece and Egypt. It would be wonderful to swim in Mediterranean Sea, travel down Nile River, and see the Suez Canal.
5. The Danes constitute about 95 percent of the population of Denmark.
6. The Italians were the first nation in Europe to develop nutritious and tasty cuisine that required little cooking time.
7. The French started to settle in Quebec in the 17th century.
8. New York was settled by the Dutch in the 17th century.
9. The Statue of Liberty was a gift from the French people to the American people.
10. Bruce is the only boy at school who can speak Chinese.

**Exercise 4. Insert articles where necessary.**

1. She did not study \_\_\_ Literature.
2. The population of \_\_\_ Slovakia is more than 5 million people.
3. The pub is somewhere on \_\_\_ Union Street.
4. \_\_\_ Sloping Island Group is a group of small islands in south-eastern \_\_\_ Australia.
5. The staff of \_\_\_ William B. Bankhead National Forest told us much interesting.
6. The teacher told us about \_\_\_ Bactrian Empire.
7. There is a nice hotel on \_\_\_ Bardsey Island.
8. There is a winding road leading to \_\_\_ Buffalo Hill.
9. They bought the tickets to \_\_\_ Genesis Cinema.
10. They saw \_\_\_ Lake Chad.
11. They stayed at \_\_\_ Americas Best Value Inn in \_\_\_ Azusa.
12. They went snorkeling in \_\_\_ Adriatic Sea.
13. They were driving down \_\_\_ Calf Mountain Road when they suddenly had an accident.
14. We did not have time to visit \_\_\_ Egyptian

Museum of Berlin. 15. We heard about \_\_\_ Atlas Mountains in \_\_\_ Algeria in \_\_\_ Morocco and in \_\_\_ Tunisia. 16. There are many poems about \_\_\_ Volga. 17. I have never studied \_\_\_ Performing arts. 18. They took a picture of me on \_\_\_ Franklin Square. 19. Have you heard of \_\_\_ Kingdom of Gwent? 20. Have you ever swum in \_\_\_ Labrador Sea? 21. I rested at \_\_\_ Lake Kariba. 22. They closed down \_\_\_ Pergamon Museum. 23. She visited \_\_\_ Point Au Roche State Park. 24. They got married on \_\_\_ Skomer Island. 25. They got a visa to \_\_\_ Socialist Republic of Vietnam. 26. \_\_\_ St. Lawrence River flows from \_\_\_ Lake Superior to \_\_\_ Atlantic Ocean. 27. He joined \_\_\_ Psychology Department at \_\_\_ University of Victoria after he graduated from \_\_\_ Queens University in \_\_\_ Ottawa. 28. I am from \_\_\_ Mexico, but my friend is from \_\_\_ United Arab Emirates. I would like to visit him in his country after I leave United States. 29. I hear \_\_\_ Seattle is really a beautiful place. I want to go hiking in \_\_\_ Olympic National Forest. 30. This September I am going to visit \_\_\_ Harvard University. Then I will travel around \_\_\_ Boston and Vermont.

**Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Підчас нашої подорожі, окрім відомих курортів, ми також відвідали село в Андах. 2. На свій медовий місяць мої друзі відправились до Філіппін. 3. Республіка Корея знаходиться поруч з Японією і Китаєм. 4. Ви коли-небудь бачили гору Фуджі? 5. Азорські острови – це група островів в Атлантичному океані. 6. Вчора ми зустрічали Ганну в аеропорті Хітроу, вона приїхала до Великобританії по програмі з обміну студентів для вивчення англійської мови. 7. Минулого року ми з дружиною об'їхали навколо Корсики на старенькому авто. 8. Австралія – дійсно величезна країна. 9. Які країни мають спільний кордон з Норвегією? 10. У Греції влітку стоїть нестерпна спека. 11. Баффінова Земля є частиною Канади. 12. Я ніколи не був у Сполучених Штатах та наступного місяця збираюся до Каліфорнії, отримав запрошення на весілля старого друга. 13. Коли ми подорожували по Ірландії, ми зупинялися у готелі у центрі Дубліна. 14. Еверест – найвища гора в світі. 15. Вона завжди любила кататися на лижах в Альпах. 16. Він працював в Індії доктором протягом 5 років, але потім все ж таки вирішив повернутися до України.

**Exercise 8. Insert articles where necessary.**

Catherine, \_\_\_ Duchess of \_\_\_ Cambridge was born 9 January 1982, is \_\_\_ wife of \_\_\_ Prince William, \_\_\_ Duke of \_\_\_ Cambridge. Following his father Charles, \_\_\_ Prince of Wales, William is \_\_\_ second in line to succeed his grandmother, Queen Elizabeth II, as monarch of \_\_\_ United Kingdom and 15 other Commonwealth realms.

Middleton grew up in \_\_\_ Chapel Row, \_\_\_ village near Newbury, \_\_\_ Berkshire, England. She attended \_\_\_ Marlborough College, \_\_\_ co-educational independent boarding school in Wiltshire, and graduated in 2005, from \_\_\_ University of St Andrews in Fife, Scotland, with \_\_\_ undergraduate MA in \_\_\_ History of Art. In November 2006, Middleton accepted \_\_\_ position as \_\_\_ accessory buyer with \_\_\_ clothing chain Jigsaw, where she worked part-time until November 2007.

**Exercise 9. Complete the text below by choosing the correct prepositions.**

\_\_\_ 2001 Middleton met Prince William \_\_\_ they were students at the University of St. Andrews. The couple began dating \_\_\_ 2003, although their relationship remained unconfirmed. Their engagement was announced \_\_\_ 16 November 2010. Prince William gave Middleton the engagement ring that had belonged to his mother, Diana, Princess of Wales. The couple married in Westminster Abbey \_\_\_ 29 April 2011, (St. Catherine's Day) \_\_\_ the day declared a bank holiday \_\_\_ the United Kingdom. Estimates \_\_\_ the global audience \_\_\_ the wedding ranged around 300 million or more, whilst 26 million watched the event live in Britain alone.

Nowadays Kate has had a major impact \_\_\_ British and American fashion which has been termed the “Kate Middleton effect”, \_\_\_ 2012 she was selected as one \_\_\_ the “Most Influential People in the World” \_\_\_ Time magazine. \_\_\_ 22 July 2013, Kate gave birth \_\_\_ a boy, Prince George of Cambridge, who is now the third \_\_\_ the line \_\_\_ succession \_\_\_ the British throne. Her second pregnancy was announced \_\_\_ Kensington Palace on 8 September 2014.

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. У твоєму новому класі є іноземці? – Так, у нас в класі два хлопчика з Італії та дівчинка з Домініканської республіки. 4. Яке місто є столицею Нідерландів? 5. Як ви святкуєте свято Нового року? 6. Мій брат Джон закінчив Єльський університет всього півроку тому та зараз він вже займає ключову посаду у виробничій компанії “Форд”. 7. Батьки вже повернулись? – Так, вони провели два місяці на озері Онтаріо та залишились вкрай задоволені відпусткою. 8. Цей розкішний будинок належить Браунам. Вони переїхали до нашого штату місяць тому з Філіппін. 9. Бразилія є найбільшою країною в Південній Америці. 10. Відвідувачам Лувру для перегляду всесвітньовідомих витворів мистецтва потрібно відстояти у довжелезних чергах, спочатку до каси, щоб купити вхідний білет, а потім для того, щоб потрапити до основних залів. 11. Мохаве – пустеля на південному заході Сполучених Штатів Америки, займає значну частину південної Каліфорнії, південного заходу Юти, півдня Невади та північного заходу Аризони. Свою назву пустеля отримала на честь індіанського племені Мохаве.

Площа пустелі становить понад 35 000 км<sup>2</sup>. 12. Коринфський канал – найкоротший європейський канал довжиною 6,3 км, що з'єднує Іонічне й Егейське моря. Проритий через Істмійський перешийок, що відділяє півострів Пелопоннес від материка. 13. Музей Соломона Гуггенгайма – художній музей у США, одне з провідних зібрань сучасного мистецтва у світі. Засновником музею був меценат Соломон Роберт Гуггенгайм. 14. Національний географічний журнал – міжнародний науково-популярний часопис, видається з 1888 року, виходить 12 разів на рік. Видання доступне у традиційному друкованому, а також електронному інтернет-форматі. 15. У Мері багато друзів закордоном. – Тоді, вона, напевно, знає багато мов? – Так, і є, зараз вона почала вивчати китайську. – О, це не просто вивчати китайську мову, адже вона дуже складна. 16. У наш час важко зрозуміти мотиви багатьох політиків. 17. У ті часи у Німеччині було майже неможливо отримати дозвіл та виїхати за кордон. 18. Теду було важко прийняти його хворобу та він взяв себе в руки та почав боротися з недугою.

## LESSON 14

---

Text: Family

Grammar: 1) The Complex object

2) Use of articles with abstract and material nouns

### FAMILY

The family is one of the most important **aspects** of a person's life and is **equally** one of the most **crucial** factors in determining how a child turns out as an adult.

Your family **defines** who you are as a person. Family **enables** us to feel a sense of belonging and about who we are. They're a source of comfort and support warmth, security and protection and they help us to make sense of the world in which we live. Within the family unit, each member has their own individual **aspirations** in addition to being part of the collective. Each member should be made to feel unique and special and **encouraged** to follow their goals and dreams.

Whilst work and school provide the main academic lessons in life, the lessons we learn in family life are to do with guiding us towards our own set of clearly defined personal values and behaviours. We **gain** discipline from our family structure and it helps us to develop positive interpersonal relationships outside the **confines** of the family home as well as within **in addition to** teaching us **appropriate** behaviour and helping to form our values and belief system.

As well as us all being individuals, families can mean totally different things from one person to the next. This can be shaped by religious background, different moral and cultural backgrounds, economic situation, living conditions and the make up of the family unit itself, e. g. the traditional mother and father as head of the family or a single parent as well as many other factors.

Our family, where we came from and where their families came from before them all help us to make background sense of who we are in the world which is why so many people who have been **adopted** want to find out more about their biological family at some point as it helps to give them a sense of identity and enables them to discover why they are as they are.

Some families will **thrive** more than others. Some families fail in their objectives. Some families get on famously and are very close, some families lose touch but, **regardless** of the nature of your relationship with your family members, including extended family, it's hard not to **appreciate** the importance of family in how they have shaped our world, be it for better or worse.

For those of us fortunate to have been part of a loving, caring and supportive family unit, however, it provides us with **confirmation** that we **are on the right track** in life and provides us with a solid example and support when it comes to **bringing up** our own family.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

Aspects, equally, crucial, defines, enables, aspirations, encouraged, whilst, values, gain, interpersonal relationships, confines, appropriate, background sense, adopted, point, thrive, fail, objectives, famously, regardless, extended, to appreciate, fortunate, confirmation.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 5. Study the essential vocabulary.**

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Aspect** (noun) **1.** [countable] **One part of a situation, idea, plan etc that has many parts;** aspect of, e. g. *Alcoholism affects all aspects of family life.* **2.** [countable] **The direction in which a window, room, front of a building etc faces,** e. g. *A south-facing aspect.* **3.** [singular, uncountable] **literary The appearance of someone or something,** e. g. *The storm outside gave the room a sinister aspect.*

**2. Equally** (adverb) **1. To the same degree or amount,** e. g. *You must have a good education, but practical training is equally important.* In equal parts or amounts, e. g. *We agreed to divide the money equally between everyone.* **2.** [sentence adverb] **Used when introducing a second idea or statement that is as important as your first one,** e. g. *We want the economy to grow, but equally we want low inflation.*

**3. Crucial** (adjective) **Something that is crucial is extremely important, because everything else depends on it;** crucial to, e. g. *This aid money is crucial to the government's economic policies.* **Crucial in/to doing something,**

e. g. *The work of monks was crucial in spreading Christianity.* **Play a crucial role/part in something**, e. g. *The city of Mycenae played a crucial role in the history of Greece. The conservation of tropical forests is of crucial importance.*

**4. Define** (verb) [transitive] **1. To describe something correctly and thoroughly**, and to say what standards, limits, qualities etc it has that make it different from other things, e. g. *The ability to define clients' needs. The duties of the post are difficult to define. Clearly/well defined, define something as something*, e. g. *A budget is defined as 'a plan of action expressed in money terms'. 70 % of the workers can be defined as low-paid.* **2. To explain exactly the meaning of a particular word or idea** [definition], e. g. *I'll now try to define the term 'popular culture'. Define precisely what you mean by 'crime'.*

**5. Enable** (verb)[transitive] **To make it possible for someone to do something, or for something to happen**; enable somebody/something to do something, e. g. *The loan enabled Jan to buy the house.*

**6. Aspiration** (noun) **1.** [countable usually plural, uncountable] **A strong desire to have or achieve something** [= ambition], e. g. *A high level of political aspiration. Aspiration of*, e. g. *The aspirations of the working classes. Aspiration for*, e. g. *Their hopes and aspirations for the future.*

**7. Encourage** (verb) [transitive] **1. To give someone the courage or confidence to do something** [ $\neq$  discourage], e. g. *I want to thank everyone who has encouraged and supported me. Encourage somebody to do something*, e. g. *Cooder was encouraged to begin playing the guitar by his father. Encourage somebody in something*, e. g. *Fleur encouraged Dana in her ambition to become a model.* **2. To persuade someone to do something** [ $\neq$  discourage], e. g. *Cantor didn't mind if they worked late; in fact, he actively encouraged it.* **3. To make something more likely to exist, happen, or develop**, e. g. *Violent TV programmes encourage anti-social behaviour.*

**8. Gain** (verb) [transitive] **1. Get something** to obtain or achieve something you want or need; **gain control/power**, e. g. *Radical left-wing parties gained control of local authorities. Gain a degree/qualification etc.*, e. g. *He gained a doctorate in Chemical Engineering.* **2. Get gradually** [intransitive and transitive] **to gradually get more and more of a quality, feeling etc, especially a useful or valuable one**, e. g. *An opportunity to gain experience in a work environment. The youngsters gradually gain confidence in their abilities; gain in*, e. g. *The sport has gained in popularity in recent years.* **3. Advantage** [intransitive and transitive] **to get an advantage from a situation, opportunity, or event**; gain (something) from (doing) something, e. g. *There is much to be gained from seeking expert advice early. An attempt to gain a competitive advantage over their rivals. There's nothing to be gained (= it will not help you) by losing your temper.* **4. Increase** [transitive] to increase in weight, speed, height, or value, e. g. *Carrie's gained a lot of weight recently. The dollar*

*has gained 8 % against the yen.* **5. Gain access/entry/admittance etc (to something)** to manage to enter a place, building, or organization, e. g. *Methods used by burglars to gain entry to houses.* **6. Gain an understanding/insight/impression etc of** to learn or find out about something, e. g. *We are hoping to gain a better understanding of the underlying process. This enabled me to gain an overall impression of the school.*

**9. Confine (verb)[transitive]** **1. Limit, to keep someone or something within the limits of a particular activity or subject [= restrict]; confine something to something**, e. g. *The police cadet's duties were confined to taking statements from the crowd. We confined our study to 10 cases.* **Confine yourself to (doing) something**, e. g. *Owen did not confine himself to writing only one type of poem.* **2. Be confined in something** keep somebody in a place that they cannot leave, such as a prison; confine somebody to something, e. g. *Any soldier who leaves his post will be confined to barracks (= made to stay in the barracks).* **3. Stay in one place** [usually passive] if you are confined to a place, you have to stay in that place, especially because you are ill, e. g. *Vaughan is confined to a wheelchair. She's confined to bed with flu.*

**10. Appropriate (adjective)** **Correct or suitable for a particular time, situation, or purpose** [ $\neq$  inappropriate] **appropriate for**, e. g. *Clothes appropriate for a job interview.* **Appropriate to**, e. g. *an education system which is more appropriate to the needs of the students; it is appropriate (for somebody) to do something*, e. g. *It would not be appropriate for me to discuss that now.* **It is appropriate (that)**, e. g. *It seemed somehow appropriate that we should begin our journey here.* **Appropriate time/place etc.**, e. g. *I didn't feel that this was an appropriate time to mention the subject of money.* **Highly/entirely appropriate**, e. g. *I thought his remark was highly appropriate, given the circumstances.*

**11. Adopt (verb)** **1. Child** [intransitive and transitive] **to take someone else's child into your home and legally become its parent**, e. g. *Sally was adopted when she was four. The couple are unable to have children of their own, but hope to adopt.* **2. Adopt an approach/policy/attitude etc** [transitive] to start to deal with or think about something in a particular way, e. g. *The courts were asked to adopt a more flexible approach to young offenders. The store recently adopted a drug testing policy for all new employees. California has adopted a tough stance on the issue.* **3. Style/Manner** [transitive] **to use a particular style of speaking, writing, or behaving, especially one that you do not usually use**, e. g. *Kim adopts a southern accent when speaking to family back home.* **4. Law/Rule** [transitive] to formally approve a proposal, especially by voting, e. g. *Congress finally adopted the law after a two-year debate.* **5. Name/Country etc** [transitive] to choose a new name, country, custom etc., especially to replace a previous one, e. g. *Stevens became a Muslim and adopted the name Yusuf Islam. Becoming a member of a society means adopting its values.*



**12. Thrive** (verb) [**throve, thrived**] [intransitive] *formal to become very successful or very strong and healthy*, e. g. *Plants that thrive in tropical rainforests. A business which managed to thrive during a recession.* **Thrive on something** *phrasal verb*; to enjoy or be successful in a particular situation, especially one that other people find difficult or unpleasant, e. g. *I wouldn't want that much pressure, but she seems to thrive on it.*

**13. Appreciate** (verb) **1.** [transitive not in progressive] **To understand how serious or important a situation or problem is or what someone's feelings are** [= realize] **appreciate the significance/importance/value of something**, e. g. *He did not fully appreciate the significance of signing the contract.* **Appreciate that**, e. g. *We appreciate that caring for children is an important job.* **Appreciate what/how/why**, e. g. *It is difficult to appreciate how bad the situation had become.* **2.** [transitive] **Used to thank someone in a polite way or to say that you are grateful for something they have done**, e. g. *Thanks ever so much for your help, I really appreciate it. I appreciate your concern, but honestly, I'm fine.* **3.** [transitive] **To understand how good or useful someone or something is**, e. g. *Her abilities are not fully appreciated by her employer. I'm not an expert, but I appreciate fine works of art.*

**14. Regardless** (adverb) **1. Without being affected or influenced by something** regardless of, e. g. *The law requires equal treatment for all, regardless of race, religion, or sex.* **2. Carry on/go on regardless** (= continue what you are doing), e. g. *You get a lot of criticism, but you just have to carry on regardless.*

**15. Confirmation** (noun) [uncountable and countable] **1. A statement, document etc that says that something is definitely true**; confirmation of; confirmation that, e. g. *Verbal confirmation that payment has been made.* **2. A letter etc that tells you that an arrangement, date, time etc is now definite**, e. g. *Most hotels require confirmation from a prospective guest in writing.*

### WORD COMBINATIONS AND PHRASES

**1. To be on the right/wrong track**, e. g. *We've had the initial test results and it looks as though we're on the right track.*

**2. To bring somebody/something up** (phrasal verb) **1. To mention a subject or start to talk about it** [= raise], e. g. *Why did you have to bring up the subject of money?* **2. To look after and influence a child until he or she is grown up** [= raise], e. g. *He was brought up by his grandparents.*

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. Her work has been **crucial** to the project's success. 2. Your rights and responsibilities are **defined** in the citizens' charter. 3. In an ideal world, would

everyone get treated **equally**? 4. The inheritance money was shared **equally** among the three sisters. 5. Which **aspects** of the job do you most enjoy? 6. We've only had five **confirmations** for the conference so far. 7. His illness affects almost every **aspect** of his life. 8. Your role in the project will be strictly **defined**. 9. Computerization should **enable** us to cut production costs by half. 10. I've never had any political **aspirations**. 11. By closing the infected farms we're hoping to **confine** the disease to the north of the region. 12. The council is **encouraging** the development of the property for both employment and recreation. 13. The Nationalist Party have **gained** a lot of support in the south of the country. 14. What do you hope to **gain** from the course? 15. Alternative medicine has only just started to **gain** respectability in our society. 16. Please **confine** your use of the phone to business calls. 17. We were **encouraged** to learn foreign languages at school. 18. Is this an **appropriate** occasion to discuss finance? 19. Please complete the **appropriate** parts of this form and return it as soon as possible. 20. They have no children of their own, but they're hoping to **adopt**. 21. His business **thrived** in the years before the war. 22. There's no point buying him expensive wines – he doesn't **appreciate** them. 23. The plan for a new office tower went ahead **regardless** of local opposition.

**Exercise 7. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. I would hate to feel that I was defined by my job. 2. Lighting is a vitally important aspect of filmmaking. 3. You looked equally nice in both dresses. 4. Not all businesses are legitimate. Equally, not all customers are honest either. 5. That is the most worrying aspect of the situation. 6. In this dictionary 'reality' is defined as 'the state of things as they are, rather than as they are imagined to be'. 7. It is a story about the lives and aspirations of poor Irish immigrants. 8. They have always encouraged me in everything I have wanted to do. 9. It was her performances in Aida which gained her an international reputation as a soprano. 10. After you have gained some experience teaching abroad you can come home and get a job. 11. We appreciate the need for immediate action. 12. Let us confine our discussion to the matter in question, please! 13. The hostages had been confined for so long that they could not cope with the outside world. 14. Is this film appropriate for small children? 15. I didn't think his comments were very appropriate at the time. 16. They have adopted a baby girl. 17. I appreciate that it is a difficult decision for you to make. 18. I don't think you appreciate how much time I spent preparing this meal. 19. It is crucial that the problem is tackled immediately. 20. We'll send you written confirmation of our offer shortly. 21. She knew it was dangerous to visit him at night, but she set out regardless. 22. This job is open to all, regardless of previous experience. 23. She seems to thrive on stress.

**Exercise 8. Paraphrase the following sentence using the essential vocabulary.**

1. Dealing with people is the most important part of my work. 2. A class evenly divided between girls and boys. 3. Many of his ideas have got popular support. 4. The tasks will be clearly determined by the tutor. 5. The rope gives you an opportunity to secure yourself when you climb the mountain. 6. His ambition is to own his own business. 7. The terrorists held the journalists for ransom. 8. She has got a reputation as a good communicator. 9. In chess cool nerves are of the essence. 10. I limit you to two visits to the pub a day. 11. I am promoting the use of computers in the classroom. 12. The successful copywriter is a master of apposite and evocative verbal images. 13. When will the new President assume office? 14. When will the new President assume office? 15. They took into their family two children from Nicaragua. 16. The deer population in this area is increasing steadily. 17. I prize these old photographs. 18. Does she realize how important this decision is? 19. He carried on disregarding the difficulties. 20. There has still been no official approval of the report.

**Exercise 9. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. Правовий аспект. 2. Рівноцінний обмін. 3. Отримати підтримку більшості. 4. Бути чітко визначеним. 5. Надати можливість для подальшого розвитку. 6. Ключовий момент. 7. Прагнення особистості. 8. Заохочувати молодь до занять спортом. 9. Отримати науковий ступінь. 10. Обмежувати імпорту товарів. 11. Прийняти належні міри. 12. Цінувати своїх близьких. 13. Йти вперед не зважаючи ні на що. 14. Отримати офіційне підтвердження. 15. Процвітати під час кризи.

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Have you thought about the problem from every aspect? 2. She is certainly gained confidence over the last couple of years. 3. These two models are equals in computing power. 4. This attitude seems to be confined to the upper classes. 5. The town has appropriated funds to repair the bridge and work should begin this summer. 6. He took the crucial step of asking her to marry him. 7. Lack of witnesses enabled him to get away with the crime. 8. Before I answer your question, could you define your terms a little more. 9. The Court must define the limits of its authority. 10. We know that the illness is not confined to any one group in society. 11. Poverty often encourages crime. 12. These beautiful exotic plants thrive with relatively little sunlight. 13. Words are defined in a dictionary. 14. Regardless of what was previously agreed to, we now refuse to sign the contract. 15. A scholarship enabled her to attend college. 16. The sick child was confined to bed. 17. Final confirmation came only after the investigation was completed. 18. The presidency is the traditional aspiration of young American boys. 19. The next game is crucial – if we lose it we lose the

match. 20. One of the chief duties of a teacher is to encourage students. 21. Confine your efforts to finishing the book. 22. From the late 19th century, European powers began to gain control of parts of the Ottoman Empire. 23. Her clothes were appropriate to the occasion. 24. Experience is equally as valuable as theory. 25. Last year we adopted a new line of English textbooks. 26. The presidency had been John's aspiration since college. 27. Going to a school for gifted students will help him thrive as a musical prodigy. 28. The thieves gained entrance through an upstairs window that was left open. 29. I don't think you appreciate the complexity of the situation. 30. Since they had no children of their own they decided to adopt a little girl. 31. The weather looked bad, but they were resolved to go on with their picnic regardless. 32. How exactly do you define reasonable behaviour? 33. You will receive confirmation of your order by e-mail. 34. I appreciate what the artist is trying to do, but I think the painting fails to do it.

### **Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Який аспект англійської мови для тебе є найскладнішим на заняттях?
2. Педагогіка – багатогалузева наука, яка охоплює всі аспекти навчання і виховання особистості.
3. Львівські представники національної партії переконані, що гроші – неголовний аспект у виборчій кампанії.
4. Термін «фактори росту» часто використовується рівноцінно із терміном «гормони».
5. Законодавчі зміни не повинні обмежувати релігійні права громадян, гарантовані Конституцією.
6. У сьогоднішньому матчі зіграють дві рівноцінні, за словами тренера, команди.
7. Призначення Майка на посаду керівника стало вирішальним моментом у його кар'єрі.
8. У критичний момент Вашингтон не висловив підтримку ні президенту, якого рік тому обрала більшість, ні військовим, які відправили президента на відпочинок на вимогу мільйонів мітингувальників.
9. Визначити поняття – означає розкрити його зміст, тобто вказати істотні ознаки, які є відображенням корінних властивостей предметів.
10. Бойовий наказ, який одержав капітан, точно визначав місце дивізії в наступі.
11. Отримання кредиту дало можливість їхній родині відремонтувати зруйнований під час шторму будинок.
12. Мені здається, що сама тільки амбіція не доведе чоловіка до дійсно високих результатів.
13. З великим запалом узявся він до праці, всі перешкоди тільки заохочували його.
14. Не зважаючи на всі мої попередні досягнення, отримати доступ до потрібної мені інформації, мені так і не вдалося.
15. Після того як слідчі спіймали злочинників, вони заперли їх в дальній кімнаті будинку та поставили біля неї охорону.
16. На заняттях потрібно поводитися належним чином.
17. Сьогодні в коледжі велика костюмована вечірка, а в мене, на жаль, немає відповідного одягу.
18. У Смітів немає своїх дітей, тому вони вирішили всиновити маленького

хлопчика з дитячого будинку. 19. Його компанія пододала кризу і зараз навіть процвітає. 20. Мені здається, що ти не цінуєш те, що для тебе роблять твої батьки. 21. Вони увесь тиждень збиралися на пікнік, тому вирішили їхати, не зважаючи на погану погоду та сильний вітер. 22. Для того щоб ми мали змогу оформити заказ, ви маєте відправити нам офіційне підтвердження вашої заявки.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences with the Complex Object into Ukrainian.

1. She felt her hands tremble. 2. He felt his heart beat with joy. 3. Nobody noticed him come in and sit down. 4. I felt Nick put his hand on my shoulder. 5. She felt tears roll down her cheeks. 6. We saw them jump with parachutes. 7. I heard the door of the entrance hall open and close softly. 8. They all gathered on the hill to watch the sun rise. 9. I heard him tell the teacher about it. 10. She heard somebody walk up to her door. 11. We expect the statement to be true. 12. We expect this solution to satisfy the given statement. 13. Teachers want their students to attend classes regularly. 14. For a book to be useful it must be studied carefully. 15. We know this magnitude to depend on pressure. 16. For the information to be precise you must verify it carefully. 17. He wanted his letters posted at once. 18. I don't want my papers looked through. 19. She did not want her child taken to hospital. 20. She gave him some papers and said that the client wanted them signed. 21. The teacher wants our homework to be prepared well. 22. Would you like your luggage carried upstairs? 23. I want a bedroom prepared for my guest. 24. If you want things done well, do them yourself. 25. I should very much like it to be made clear to me. 26. The traveller entered the inn and ordered supper to be prepared.

### Exercise 2. Reword the sentences according to the model.

**Model:** "Bring me a book," said my brother to me. – My brother **wanted me to bring him a book.**

1. The teacher said to the pupils: "Learn the rule." – The teacher wanted ...  
2. "Be careful, or else you will spill the milk," said my mother to me. – My mother did not want ...  
3. "My daughter will go to a ballet school," said the woman. – The woman wanted ...  
4. The man said: "My son will study mathematics." – The man wanted ...  
5. "Oh, father, buy me this toy, please," said the little boy. – The little boy wanted ...  
6. "Wait for me after school," said Ann to me. – Ann wanted ...  
7. "Fix the shelf in the kitchen," my father said to me. – My father wanted ...  
8. "It will be very good if you study English," said my brother to me. – My brother wanted ...  
9. "Fetch me some water from the

river, children,” said our grandmother. – Our grandmother wanted ... 10. “Come to my birthday party,” said Kate to her classmates. – Kate wanted ... 11. The biology teacher said to us: “Collect some insects in summer.” – The biology teacher wanted ... 12. “Don’t eat ice cream before dinner,” said our aunt to us. Our aunt did not want ... 13. “Come and live in St. Petersburg with me,” said my mother to me. My mother wanted...

### **Exercise 3. Open the brackets using the Complex Object.**

**Model:** *He expected (they, arrive) at 5. – He expected them to arrive at 5.*

1. Do you want (they, stay) at the hotel or with us? 2. I'd like (the professor, look through) my report. 3. Do you want (I, show) you the sights of the city? 4. We expect (he, arrange) everything by the time we come. 5. I want (she, tell) me the news in brief. 6. He expected (the meeting, hold) in the Red Room. 7. I would like (they, fix) an appointment for me for Tuesday. 8. We want (she, introduce) us to the president. 9. I don't want (they, be late) for dinner. 10. He expected (she, invite) to the party by the Smiths. 11. I'd like (the dress, buy) by Saturday. 12. I don't want (she, treat) like Alice. 13. We considered (he, be) an honest person. 14. I don't like (she, prevent) me from doing it. 15. I suspect (he, help) by her.

### **Exercise 4. Replace the subordinate clauses with the Complex Object.**

**Model:** *I expect that she will send me a letter. – I expect her to send me a letter.*

**I know that he is** a great scientist. – **I know him to be** a great scientist.

1. We know that mathematics has become man’s second language. 2. They expect that a variable will represent a number. 3. We know that two fractions are equal if they simplify to the same fraction. 4. I heard that they were discussing the matter. 5. We expected that they would intensify the whole process. 6. Everybody knows that matter consists of small particles called atoms. 7. This question was too difficult, so that he could not answer it immediately. 8. I know that my friend is a just man. 9. I expect that he will understand your problem and help you to solve it. 10. I expected that she would behave quite differently. 11. I did not expect that my brother would forget to send her flowers. 12. He knows that my mother is a very kind woman. 13. She expected that her brother would bring her the book. 14. I know that your uncle is an excellent mathematician. 15. People expect that the 21st century will bring peace on the Earth. 16. We know that it is true. 10. I never expected that he would be a politician. 17. No one expects that the President will resign. 18. We expect that the economy will grow by 2 % next year. 19. I didn’t expect that he knew Russian so well. 20. I expect that it will take about an hour to get home. 21. The kids know that all her pies are delicious. 22. They expect that he will have a good working knowledge of computers. 23. Nobody expected that she would win the gold medal.

**Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Я не очікував, що цей поліцейський буде такою неввічливою людиною.
2. Ми б хотіли, щоб ви доставили товари до кінця червня.
3. Я очікував, що її запросять взяти участь у цій виставі.
4. Вони не очікували, що його запитують про це.
5. Я чув, як його ім'я декілька разів згадувалося на зборах.
6. Він не помітив, як ми підійшли до нього.
7. Ви бачили, як вони над чимось сміялися?
8. Ми не очікували, що про це оголосять по радіо.
9. Мені б хотілося, щоб вона сказала нам, що вона буде робити сьогодні ввечері.
10. Я вважаю, що сьогодні ви почувете, як вона співає.
11. Коли він почув, що його син плаче, він встав і пішов у дитячу кімнату.
12. Я б хотів, щоб ніхто не брав мої речі.
13. Він хоче, щоб ми прийшли до нього сьогодні.
14. Я хотів би, щоб ви почекали мене тут.
15. Він хоче, щоб його син став лікарем.
16. Чи хочете ви, щоб він вам допоміг?
17. Я ніколи не чув, як він говорить французькою.
18. Він не чув, як я постукав у дверь.
19. Я чув, що він вже повернувся додому.
20. Я ніколи не бачив, як він плаває.
21. Я хочу, щоб зарядку робили кожен день.
22. Ви б хотіли, щоб я для вас станцювала?
23. Бабуся не любить, коли кішка сидить на ліжку.
24. Він відчув, як щось важке притискає його до підлоги.
25. Я хочу, щоб ви переклали цю афішу.
26. Вона розраховувала, що він запросить її в театр.
27. Вчитель не хотів, щоб ми залишалися в класі.
28. Хлопчик спостерігав, як його батько розпрягає коня.
29. Коли вона пошила це плаття?
30. Буря змусила корабель повернутися в порт.
31. Ви бачили, щоб хто-небудь взяв цей молоток?
32. Я розраховую, що ти залишишся вдома.
33. Вчора я сфотографувався.
34. Я терпіти не можу, коли собак тримають на ланцюгу.
35. Вона не почувала, як заплакала дитина.
36. Я знаю, що ваш брат – кращий учень школи.

**Exercise 6. Insert articles where necessary.**

1. Their blue eyes became filled with ... gaiety and ... ferocity and ... joy, and their mouths with ... laughter.
2. Jon laughed, and ... sound of ... laugh was hard.
3. Then she gave ... crisp, ironic, almost cheerful laugh.
4. On that fine day ... poverty of ... district she was entering seemed to her country-nurtured eyes intensely cheerless.
5. ... reason is ... greatest discovery ever made by ... man. Yet it is ... most disregarded and least used.
6. ... what I offer is ... security and ... respect. That doesn't sound very exciting, but perhaps it's better than ... passion.
7. And ... passion that held Strickland was ... passion to create ... beauty.
8. She looked ... incarnation of ... supreme loveliness, ... loveliness which was always revealing itself anew.
9. She knew nothing of ... literature except ... certain authors who to ... truly cultured might seem banal.
10. ... expression on her face — hungry and hard and feverish had the most peculiar effect upon Soames.
11. She listened with, ... expression impatient, strained and intent.
12. At that age I had ... very faulty view of ... geography.
13. ... poor

fellow's face looked haggard with ... want, he had ... aspect of ... man who had not known what it was to live in ... comfort. 14. He longed for ... comfort of his sister's society. 15. He pines for ... kindness. 16. She sighed for ... air, ... liberty, ... quiet of ... country. 17. Miss Cherrell, I am going to do all I can to remove ... unpleasant impression you have of me. I am your very humble servant, and I hope some day to have ... chance to be something else to you. 18. Then all four sat down and began to inspect Hunter and Calvin with ... air of suspicion and curiosity. 19. He spoke with ... air of someone who has got over with an unpleasant duty and can now get on to ... brighter matters. 20. How quietly you live, John. I love ...silence of this room and garden. 21. At other times he would come and sit for long periods in her room in ... silence.

**Exercise 7. Insert articles where necessary, pay attention to abstract and material nouns use.**

1. Most beautiful thing we can experience is ... mysterious. It is ... source of all ... true art and ... science. 2. This is ... building of ... marbles. 3. Universe is ... change; our life is what our thoughts make it. 4. Time you enjoy wasting is not ...wasted time. 5. Solitude scares me. It makes me think about ... love, ... death, and ... war. I need ... distraction from ... anxious, black thoughts. 6. Fiction reveals ... truths that ... reality obscures. 7. Opposite of ... correct statement is ... false statement. ... opposite of ... profound truth may well be another profound truth. 8. Friend is ... present you give yourself. 9. Miracles do not happen in ... contradiction to ... nature, but in ... contradiction to what we know about ... nature. 10. Failure is only ... opportunity to begin again more intelligently. 11. ... Appetite comes with eating. 12.... good beginning makes ... good ending. 13. ... bird in ... hand is worth two in ... bush. 14. Among ... blind ... one-eyed man is king. 15. ... brevity is ... soul of wit. 16. ... iron is very useful metal. 17. ... charity begins at ... home. 18. ... clothes make ... man. 19. .... curiosity killed ... cat. 20. ... calcium is good for health.

**Exercise 8. Complete the text below choosing the correct prepositions.**

Family is very important part ... our everyday life. It helps us ... improving our personality. It also helps us ... shaping our life. It teaches us the value ... love, affection, care, truthfulness and self-confidence and provides us tools and suggestions which are necessary ... get success ... life.

Family is a place where you can be yourself. It is a place where you are accepted ... what you are. This is where you are completely tension free and everyone is there ... help you. Family encourages you when you are surrounded ... problems. It helps you survive ... tough times and bring joy and happiness ... life.

Decency is very important ... the communication ... daily life. It helps us make strong relationship ... others and make us come ... as a very gentle, intelligent



and likable person. Everyone loves to be ... a company ... such person. Family helps bring decency ... our life which is necessary ... lead a happy life.

**Exercise 9. Translate the following sentences into English, pay attention to abstract and material nouns use.**

1. Сумка маленька, але шкіра гарна. 2. Я люблю зелений оксамит. 3. Він не дуже любив каву з молоком. 4. Татові не сподобався зелений чай з медом. 5. Імбирний чай занадто міцний для мене. 6. Не забудь дати кішці молока, вона захворіла. 7. Я ходив по парку, чекав на бабусю і думав про її вишневе варення. 8. Багато солдатів загинули у боротьбі за свободу свого народу. 9. Всі люди на землі хочуть миру. 10. Ми ніколи не забудемо героїзм тих, хто боровся проти фашизму. 11. Вона дуже цінує в людях скромність та простоту. 12. Природа відіграла велику роль у творчості романтиків. 13. Музикант повинен знати історію свого музичного стилю. 14. З нею він міг говорити про літературу, про мистецтво, про що завгодно, міг скаржитися їй на життя та на людей. 15. Я хочу бути артисткою, я хочу слави, успіхів, свободи. 16. Навіщо я вчив стереометрію, якщо її в програмі немає? 17. Марія з дитинства любила музику та мистецтво. 18. Алекс хоче почати вивчати історію англійської культури. 19. В університеті моя мама вивчала історію Англії. 20. На відстані декількох метрів діти побачили дивну фігуру. 21. Якщо ти погано себе почуваєш, не йди до коледжу в таку погоду. 22. Я дуже люблю архітектуру і мрію в майбутньому стати відомим архітектором. 23. Мене цікавить історія розвитку англійського роману.

## LESSON 15

---

Text: Manners and etiquettes are key to success

Grammar: 1) Participle 1, 2

2) The Correlative Conjunction – all, both, either... or, neither ...  
nor

### MANNERS AND ETIQUETTES ARE KEY TO SUCCESS

Man is a social animal. But living in **society** is not an easy job. How one behaves with another, how he **approaches** another person and how far he is successful in playing his role in the society **indicates** his manners. So, broadly speaking, we can define manners to be well established standard of conduct on the social life.

Man has to live carefully in the society. He should behave in a manner which pleases others. Manners and etiquettes are key to **success**. Although they do not cost anything, but they bring us valuable gains. They enhance the pleasure of life. One can win over even the enemy if he presents good manners. Good manners and etiquettes are key to success.

Nobody is born with good manners. Everyone either learns or acquires them. The best place to harness manners and etiquettes is the home which is a miniature society and where the child spends most of its time. Child tries to stimulate its parents and elders in their behaviour and slowly leans and acquires certain traits of character that it has learnt at home. It learns a lot in company of his friends at school. In the school, the teacher plays an important role in cultivation of good manners and etiquettes. Teachers with their ideal behaviour **imbibe** good manners in the school students.

Anywhere we go out, we are judged by the way we speak. Therefore words play an important role in our day-to-day conversation. How do we speak to our younger's and how do we speak to our elders, **reflects** our personality. Whatever we speak should be in a soft, gentle and pleasant tone. Always try **to avoid** offending and harsh words. Always show respect to others. Not only the words, but our action and gestures should also be **submissive** so as to sweeten our life and to add charm to it, always try to follow these small courtesies.

It is not only important to mind your language inside your home with young and elders, but also be very careful about one's behaviour in any social gathering. Give everybody an equal opportunity to speak and never try to speak while another person is speaking. Speak in a low and pleasant tone and never

shout. Respect the person who is speaking. Do not get agitated if one does not agree with you or when you disagree with others. In the words of Smith, “Manners are the shadows of virtues, the momentary display of these qualities which our fellow creatures love and respect, if we **strive** to become, what we strive to appear, manners may often be rendered useful guide to the **performance** of our duties”.

In a group of people always wait for your turn to speak. Do not monopolies the whole conversation. If ever you want to criticize anybody do it in a manner that it does not hurt the person. Do in a polite and civilized manner. Always be sweet and humble in your words and gestures.

Always be **cautious** in your behaviour as one is observed everywhere. Whether in home, in school, in bus, in train or even while walking on the streets. Never speak loudly or sing or whistle on the street. Be courteous to your visitors at home or while waiting for a bus in a **queue**. So always try to observe small courtesies if you want to win over others heart.

So we can say that the success or failure in the life of a man depends largely upon his manners and etiquettes. In the words of Thompson we can say, “Truth, whistle queue failure depends **justice** and reasons less their force and all their whistle queue failure depends justice force luster, when they **are** not **accompanied** with agreeable manners.”

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

Society, approaches, manners and etiquettes, indicates, success, enhance, enemy, is born, miniature, certain traits, imbibe, judged, day-to-day conversation, reflects, to avoid, harsh, gestures, submissive, courtesies, social gathering, equal, get agitated, shadows of virtues, strive, performance, monopolies, polite and civilized, humble, be cautious, is observed, whistle, queue, failure, depends, justice, luster, are not accompanied with.

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Retell the text in pairs.**

## Exercise 5. Study the essential vocabulary.

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Society** (noun) pl. **societies** **1. People in general** [uncountable] **considered in relation to the laws, organizations** etc. that make it possible for them to live together, e. g. *Technology and its effects on modern society. Children are the most vulnerable members of society.* **2. A particular group** [uncountable and countable] a particular large group of people who share laws, organizations, customs etc., e. g. *Britain is now a multi-racial society. The conservative segment of American society.* **3. Club** [countable] an organization or club with members who share similar interests, aims etc., e. g. *The university film society. The American Cancer Society.* **Society of**, e. g. *The Society of Lawyers.* **4. High society** [uncountable] the fashionable group of people who are rich and powerful.

**2. Approach** (verb) **1. Move towards** [intransitive and transitive] to move towards or nearer to someone or something, e. g. *As I approached the house, I noticed a light on upstairs. She heard footsteps approaching.* **2. Ask** [transitive] to ask someone for something, or ask them to do something, especially when you are asking them for the first time or when you are not sure if they will do it. **Approach somebody for something**, e. g. *Students should be able to approach teachers for advice. I have already been approached by several other companies* (= offered a job, work etc). **3. Future event** [intransitive and transitive] if an event or a particular time approaches, or you approach it, it is coming nearer and will happen soon, e. g. *She was then approaching the end of her career. With winter approaching, many animals are storing food.*

**3. Indicate** (verb) **1.** [transitive] **To show that a particular situation exists, or that something is likely to be true:** indicate (that), e. g. *Research indicates that over 81 % of teachers are dissatisfied with their salary. The study indicates a connection between poverty and crime.* **2.** [transitive] **To say or do something to make your wishes, intentions etc. clear**, e. g. *The Russians have already indicated their willingness to cooperate. Professor Johnson has indicated his intention to retire at the end of next year.* **3.** [transitive] **To direct someone's attention to something or someone**, for example by pointing, e. g. *'That's her,' said Toby, indicating a girl on the other side of the room.*

**4. Success** (noun) [uncountable and countable] **1. When you achieve what you want or intend** [ $\neq$  failure] **be a big/huge/great etc success**, e. g. *The experiment was a big success. Without success*, e. g. *I tried to contact him, but without success. What's the secret of your success? Their efforts finally met with some success* (= they were successful). *I didn't think my chances of success were very good. She puts her success down to good luck* (= says it is caused by

good luck). **Success in doing something**, e. g. *Did you have any success in persuading Alan to come?* **2. When someone achieves a high position in their job, course, sport, in society etc.** [ $\neq$  failure], e. g. *Success isn't everything, you know.* **Success in**, e. g. *He has already had a lot of success in his career.* **Be a success as a ...** (= be successful in a particular job), e. g. *She wasn't much of a success as a lawyer. She's determined to make a success of* (= be successful in) *her career.* **4. When a business makes a lot of money** [failure], e. g. *The success of his latest business venture.*

**5. Imbibe** (verb) [intransitive and transitive] **1. To drink** something, especially alcohol – sometimes used humorously, e. g. *Both men imbibed considerable quantities of gin.* **2. To accept and be influenced by qualities, ideas, values etc.**, e. g. *She had imbibed the traditions of her family.*

**6. Reflect** (verb) **1. Image** [transitive usually passive] **if a person or a thing is reflected in a mirror, glass, or water, you can see an image of the person or thing on the surface of the mirror, glass, or water;** be reflected in something, e. g. *She could see her face reflected in the car's windshield.* **2. Be a sign of something** [transitive not usually in progressive] to show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling, e. g. *The drop in consumer spending reflects concern about the economy,* reflect who/what/how etc., e. g. *How much you're paid reflects how important you are to the company you work for.* **3. Light/heat/sound** if a surface reflects light, heat, or sound, it sends back the light etc that reaches it, e. g. *Wear something white – it reflects the heat.*

**7. Avoid** (verb) [transitive] **1. To prevent something bad from happening**, e. g. *Road safety is taught to young children to avoid road accidents. It is important to take measures to avoid the risk of fire.* **Avoid doing something**, e. g. *The refugees left to avoid getting bombed. Alan narrowly avoided an accident.* **2. To stay away from someone or something, or not use something**, e. g. *Everyone seemed to be avoiding Nick. She carefully avoided his eyes* (= did not look directly at his face). *Pregnant women should avoid certain foods such as raw eggs. Why did you speak to him? You usually avoid him like the plague* (= try hard to avoid him). **3. To deliberately not do something, especially something wrong, dangerous, or harmful**, e. g. *There are ways of legally avoiding taxes.*

**8. Submissive** (adjective) **always willing to obey someone and never disagreeing with them, even if they are unkind to you** [ $\neq$  assertive], e. g. *In those days women were expected to be quiet and submissive.*

**9. Equal** (adjective) **1. Same**, the same in size, number, amount, value etc. as something else [equivalent] **equal number/amount (of something)**, e. g. *Both candidates received an equal number of votes.* **(Of) equal value/importance**, e. g. *They believe that all work is of equal value.* **Equal in size/length/height etc**, e. g. *The two towns are roughly equal in size.* **Equal to**,

e. g. *The rent was equal to half his monthly income.* **2. Same rights/chances** having the same rights, opportunities etc as everyone else, whatever your race, religion, or sex, e. g. *Our constitution states that all men are equal. The government is committed to achieving equal rights for women.*

**10. Strive(strove, striven)** (verb) [intransitive] *formal to make a great effort to achieve something. Strive to do something*, e. g. *I was still striving to be successful. Strive for/after*, e. g. *We must continue to strive for greater efficiency.*

**11. Performance** (noun) **1.** [countable] **When someone performs a play or a piece of music**, e. g. *The orchestra will give two more performances this week; This evening's performance will begin at 8.00 pm. Memorable/brilliant/inspired etc performance*, e. g. *Franklin gave a memorable performance at last year's festival. A live performance by the local band Indigo **2.** [uncountable and countable] **How well or badly a person, company etc does a particular job or activity**, e. g. *A training program to improve employees' performance; Sean's performance at school has greatly improved.**

**12. Cautious** (adjective) **Careful to avoid danger or risks** [caution], e. g. *A cautious driver. A cautious approach to the crisis. Cautious about (doing) something*, e. g. *Keller is cautious about making predictions for the success of the program.*

**13. Whistle** (verb) **1. High sound** [intransitive and transitive] **to make a high or musical sound by blowing air out through your lips**, e. g. *Adam whistled happily on his way to work. I heard this song on the radio and I've been whistling it all day. He whistled a tune as he strolled down the corridor. They listened to the wind whistling through the trees. Whistle to somebody* (whistle to get someone's attention), e. g. *Dad whistled to us to come home for dinner.* **2. Use a whistle** [intransitive] **to make a high sound by blowing into a whistle**, e. g. *The referee whistled and the game began.*

**14. Queue** (noun) [countable] **1. A line of people waiting to enter a building, buy something etc, or a line of vehicles waiting to move** [= line American English]; **be/stand/wait in a queue**, e. g. *We stood in a queue for half an hour. You'll have to join the queue. Queue of*, e. g. *A queue of people waiting for the bus. Queue for*, e. g. *the queue for the toilets. Queue to do something*, e. g. *There was a long queue to get into the cinema.*

**15. Justice** (noun) **1. System of judgement** [uncountable] **the system by which people are judged in courts of law and criminals are punished**, e. g. *A book on the criminal justice system. The killers will be brought to justice* (= caught and punished). *Acts of terrorism must not escape justice. Miscarriage of justice!* Do not use **justice** when you mean the laws of a country and the ways in which these laws operate. Use **legal system**, e. g. *The jury plays an important role in the legal system.* **2. Fairness** [uncountable] fairness in the

way people are treated [injustice], e. g. *Children have a strong sense of justice. His people came to him, demanding justice.* **3. Being right** [uncountable] the quality of being right and deserving fair treatment, e. g. *No one doubts the justice of our cause.*

**16. Accompany** (verb) [transitive] **1. To go somewhere with someone**, e. g. *Wherever her husband went, she would accompany him.* **2. To play a musical instrument while someone sings a song or plays the main tune**, e. g. *Daniel wanted Liz to accompany him on violin.* **3. [usually passive] To happen or exist at the same time as something else**, e. g. *The disease is accompanied by sneezing and fever.*

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. My issue is related more to the social norms and customs of our **society**. 2. This weekend we're expecting temperatures **approaching** 100 degrees. 3. There is nothing to **indicate** that the two events are connected. 4. The growth of the tourism industry is one of the city's great **successes**. 5. We read poems by our predecessors to **imbibe** the experience of life as captured by them. 6. The old church is **reflected** in the glass exterior of the skyscraper. 7. She took a detour to **avoid** the heavy traffic. 8. He was looking for a quiet, **submissive** wife who would obey his every word. 9. The play **combines** tragedy and comedy in equal measure. 10. We must all **strive** to do better. 11. The gas additive improves engine **performance**. 12. He answered the question with a **cautious** reply. 13. It was great. After the **performance** the audience cheered and **whistle**. 14. They are **queuing** up to get tickets. 15. We should **strive** to achieve **justice** for all people.

**Exercise 7. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. There are some things that shouldn't be mentioned in polite society. 2. The success rates approach 90 percent. 3. We are approaching the end of the fiscal year. 4. We need to do more to help the poorer members of our society. 5. The map indicates where the treasure is buried. 6. The driver turned right without indicating. 7. The survey indicated that most old people are independent. 8. Success came easily to him. 9. We hope it will be a commercial success. 10. She imbibed vast quantities of coffee. 11. If one does not imbibe the culture one cannot succeed. 12. Her book clearly reflects her beliefs. 13. Where you learned a language is reflected in your accent. 14. He was caught trying to avoid arrest. 15. I'm not going to be late if I can avoid it. 16. It's not in her nature to be submissive. 17. We divided the profits into three equal shares. 18. One meter is equal to 39.37 inches. 19. She always strives for perfection. 20. He strives hard to keep himself very fit. 21. Employees with strong job performances. 22. Your passport application form should be accompanied by two

recent photographs. 23. You cannot be overly cautious when you're driving in snow. 24. In my view, we are very lucky to have a very prudent and cautious Minister. 25. The whistle of the tea kettle. 26. Someone whistled at her as she walked past. 27. We were forced to stand in a queue. 28. Three jobs remain in the printer queue. 29. She is a justice of the state supreme court. 30. I saw no justice in the court's decision. 31. This evening's performance will start at 8 o'clock.

**Exercise 8. Paraphrase the following sentence using the essential vocabulary.**

1. The English reading public has an insatiable appetite for this kind of fiction. 2. He has a wild laugh that sometimes comes up to hysteria. 3. The size of his offer signifies that he is eager to buy the house. 4. Quitting smoking was a personal triumph for her. 5. The soil was so dry that the plant seemed to take up the much-needed water instantly. 6. The clear water mirrored the sky. 7. He succeeded in escaping punishment for many years. 8. Our normally balky cat becomes the most amenable of creatures when confronted with the strange environment of the veterinary clinic. 9. We have an impartial evaluation of the job applicant's qualifications that does not consider age, gender, or race. 10. They endeavored to create a government that truly serves its people. 11. Those measures affect his fulfillment of his role as a representative. 12. I went to the gym and worked out and I made sure I should be careful with what I ate. 13. You can go home and squander your wages again! 14. They are at present in a long line awaiting full examination. 15. She has a strong sense of fairness.

**Exercise 9. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. Визначний етап розвитку суспільства. 2. Наближалася зима, холоднішало. 3. Вказувати на помилку. 4. Приголомшливий успіх. 5. Поглинати знання мов губка. 6. В променях слави. 7. Покірно виконувати настанови лікаря. 8. Уникати розчарування. 9. Люди народжуються вільними і рівноправними. 10. Боротися за незалежність. 11. Економічні показники країни. 12. Обережний водій. 13. Насвистувати улюблену мелодію. 14. Чекати своєї черги. 15. Мировий суддя. 16. Проводжати дівчину додому.

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Unfortunately, I have no clue about how the upper class society lives. 2. The supervisor is quite easy to approach, so don't hesitate to bring up any problems you have. 3. We were advised to never be too aggressive when approaching a potential client. 4. The club's members are drawn from the ranks of high society. 5. We asked how to get to the rear entrance, and he indicated a path leading around the right side of the building. 6. Recent evidence indicates that the skeleton is about three million years old. 7. His first movie was a great success. 8. Everyone who knows her says she will be a great success. 9. He'd imbibed a set of mystical beliefs from the cradle. 10. Until a seed imbibes water



and begins to grow, cultivators have little effect. 11. The statistics reflect a change in people's spending habits. 12. The glass appears to reflect light naturally. 13. How can I avoid paying too much tax? 14. I am trying to avoid showing any hint of favoritism. 15. The opposing candidate has demanded equal time on television. 16. He shows that slaves who seemed submissive and passive were cleverly using the language of their masters and subverting it to their own ends. 17. Men are conditioned to find pleasure in dominance, whereas women – against their self-interest – are conditioned to enjoy submissiveness. 18. We need to have equal academic standards for male and female students. 19. They continue to strive toward their goals. 20. Children under 14 must be accompanied by an adult. 21. The critics loved her performance as the villain. 22. A supervisor will evaluate each employee's performance. 23. Mr. King clearly has a cautious approach to change. 24. Nowadays, you've got to be as cautious with your email address as with your home address. 25. We could hear the low whistle of the wind through the trees. 26. A queue of more than sixty people snaked its way down the pavement. 27. The queue for places at school has never been longer. 28. The role of the courts is to dispense justice fairly to everyone. 29. His ideas on social justice were the foundation of new humanism and of Romanticism in general. 30. In her left hand she holds the scales of justice while in her right she brandishes her double-edged sword to punish the guilty. 31. If one does not imbibe the culture one cannot succeed. 32. In her writing she strove for a balance between innovation and familiar prose forms.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Жити в суспільстві й бути вільним від його стереотипів неможливо. 2. Розвиток суспільства без науки неможливий. 3. Марія побачила у вікно цю сцену в той час, коли четверо псів стрибками наближались до її чоловіка. 4. Дуже швидко наближався той момент, коли ми повинні були оголосити наше рішення. 5. Ніщо не вказувало на людську присутність на цих суворих самотніх берегах. 6. Довгі чорні смуги гальмового шляху на асфальті вказували на те, що водій все ж таки намагався зупинитися. 7. Дослідження показують, що на виборах до Верховної Ради українці знову голосуватимуть за лідерів, а не партійні програми чи ідеології. 8. Навряд чи твій план буде мати успіх. 9. Ніщо не сприяє успіху так, як успіх. Після того, як моя сестра отримала перше підвищення, вона почала працювати все краще і краще. 10. Якщо повітря нагрівається, то воно вбирає дедалі більше водяної пари. 11. Дослідження показали, що діти, які споживають безалкогольні напої, як правило, більш схильні до хвороб шлунку ніж ті, хто цього не робить. 12. Наша система освіти повинна забезпечити рівні можливості для всіх дітей. 13. Коли промені сонця досягають Землі, багато тепла відбивається назад у космос. 14. Школи

повинні відображати та прививати дітям культурні цінності. 15. Це не дивно, що вона самотня, більшість людей воліли б уникнути її, коли це можливо. 16. Потрібно уникати надмірного перебування на сонці, це дуже шкідливо для шкіри. 17. "Я прошу вибачення за мій вчинок, Батько", – він покірно відповів, опустивши очі в поразці. 18. Після того як батьки провели виховну бесіду та заборонили грати в комп'ютерні ігри, Ліза стала слухняна та покірна дівчинка, як раніше. 19. Сума кутів трикутника дорівнює двом прямим кутам. 20. Перемога не дається легко – за неї треба боротися. 21. Ми прагнемо більшої ефективності впровадження реформ у нашій країні. 22. Вистава "Дон Жуан" вперше була показана в 1787 році. 23. Правосуддя має своїм завданням забезпечити точне і неухильне виконання законів усіма установами, організаціями, службовими особами і громадянами. 24. Власники компанії були надзвичайно обачними при найманні нових працівників на посаду топ менеджерів. 25. Вчорашня гра була дуже напружена, на останніх секундах суддя не побачив порушення та не зупинив гру свистком, отже, ми програли. 26. У домі неможна свистіти – це погана прикмета. 27. Перед святами в магазинах великі черги, отже, мені довелося чекати пів години доки мене обслужили. 28. Не поспішай! Для того щоб отримати квитанцію треба дочекатися своєї черги. 29. Кожен злочинець повинен пам'ятати, що йому не вдасться уникнути правосуддя. 30. Інвестори повинні бути обережні при розгляді інвестиційних показників.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I am surprised. 2. I want to have my hair cut. 3. The business run by the new manager is very successful. 4. Women from 111 countries and belonging to 132 national organizations took part in the meeting in Prague in 1986. 5. The flat of my parents was furnished in a modern style. 6. This century Europe has twice been the scene of a destructive war that has spread to global proportion. 7. Having written a composition, the students began to do the question-and-answer exercises. 8. Arriving at the station he bought a newspaper. 9. He was silent for a while, as if pausing for a reply. 10. He was standing on the top of the mountains admiring the beautiful view. 11. Having worked a little at this factory I understood everything. 12. The answer of the student is disappointing. 13. It was an untidily written letter. 14. A parcel sent from Paris will be in London in some days. 15. When called she refused to come. 16. He will speak for hours until interrupted. 17. «I have to go home», he repeated as if hypnotized. 18. She looked worried. 19. Though crushed, she wasn't broken. 20. Lost time is never found again. 21. A written letter lay on the table. 22. They are reconstructing the house built in the 18th century. 23. If built of the local stone, the road will serve for years. 24. The books discussed at

the lessons are always interesting. 25. Stop it! You are humiliating him. 26. Two chairs were broken by some customers yesterday. 27. The story being read by him now is called "Great Adventurers". 28. Having been translated into several languages, this story is well known in many countries. 29. He stood before the locked door. 30. He is a retired colonel.

### **Exercise 2. Complete the sentences choosing Participles.**

1. I am so (relaxed / relaxing) that I do not want to move. 2. I find horror films really (frightened / frightening) and not at all fun to watch. 3. Sometimes I get really (frustrated / frustrating) when I can't express myself well in English. 4. We were stopped by a man with a knife who took our money. It was (terrified / terrifying). 5. The programme was really (interested / interesting). 6. She was (overwhelmed / overwhelming) when everyone cheered and we gave her presents. 7. If I feel stressed, I find taking a bath is often (relaxed / relaxing). 8. I am really (tired / tiring). I think I will go to bed. 9. He is very (interested / interesting) in history. 10. The trip was (overwhelmed / overwhelming), with so many things to do and it was all so new. 11. She is never (satisfied / satisfying) with her work. 12. Cleaning is so (tired / tiring)! I think I will have a rest. 13. She thought the ride on the rollercoaster was (thrilled / thrilling). 14. I was really (surprised / surprising) when I saw you. I had thought you were on holiday. 15. My grandmother was (shocked / shocking) by the man's bad language. 16. My niece is (terrified / terrifying) of dogs. 17. Thank you so much for the prize! I am (thrilled / thrilling). 18. My job is very (satisfied / satisfying). I love helping people. 19. The news was so (shocked / shocking) that she burst into tears. 20. My exam results were great! It is really (surprised / surprising) but good, of course.

### **Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using the verb in brackets.**

1. I felt my car (to skid). 2. A woman (to wear) a blue hat opened the door. 3. Peter hurt his leg (to do) karate. 4. Champagne, (to produce) in France, is exported all over the world. 5. The people (to dance) in the street are all very friendly. 6. My sister works in a bakery (to make) cakes. 7. My uncle always has his car (to wash). 8. Pictures (to paint) by Picasso usually sell for millions of pounds. 9. (To look) down from the tower we saw many people walking in the streets. 10. A lorry (to carry) fruit crashed on the motorway. 11. The bus crashed into the blue car (to drive) down the hill. 12. The umbrella (to find) at the bus stop belongs to John Smith. 13. None of the dishes (to serve) here contains meat or fish. 14. I heard my mother (to talk) on the phone. 15. A million dollars worth of jewelry (to belong) to the President's wife has been stolen. 16. We stood (to wait) for the taxi. 17. The people drove off in a (to steal) car. 18. He saw his friend (to go) out with Sue. 19. The Harry Potter books, (to write) by JK Rowling, have all been made into films. 20. I have my hair (to cut) twice

a month. 21. People (to wish) to enter the cave have to light a candle. 22. He spent a great deal of money (to modernize) his house. 23. She spent the whole Sunday (to review) her lessons.

**Exercise 4. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Його поведінка дратує. 2. Вона виглядає роздратованою. 3. Було дивно, що він пішов туди. 4. Я був здивований, що він пішов туди. 5. Це була нудна вечірка. 6. Всім було нудно. 6. Перелякавшись розклатів грому, дитина розплакалася. 7. Роботу зроблено, ходімо вечеряти! 8. Сміючись, вона розпочала розповідь. 9. Прихований скарб все ще не знайдено. 10. Тома провели до кімнати з зав'язаними очима. 11. Історія залишається незавершеною до тепер. 12. Ти знаєш цього джентльмена, вдягнутого у фрак? Так, він відомий на весь світ науковець. 13. Склавши останній іспит, Норма почувалася щасливою. 14. Не знаючи, де знаходиться театр, ми запитали у поліцейського дорогу. 15. Не забудь свої речі, виходячи з автобусу. 16. Розбита чашка лежала на підлозі. 17. Вони пройшли повз мене, голосно розмовляючи. 18. Він сидів біля столу замислившись. 19. Увійшовши до кімнати, лектор побачив, що всі студенти присутні. 20. Він любив відпочивати ввечері, прогулюючись повільно в парку.

**Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Either our classmates or your friend has complained to the teacher. 2. We did not paint either ceiling or wall. 3. Neither my friends nor Kate wants to go to a party. 4. We brought neither books nor copybooks. 5. We must neither help nor lend the money to John. 6. He has three nephews. All of them have graduated from university. 7. You can have either beer or wine. 8. Either you leave now or I will tell your mother! 9. Either you apologize, or I will never speak to you again. 10. "Would you like hot chocolate or coffee?" "Both". 11. They were both around seventy years old, or even more than that. 12. I would only been in about two fights in my life, and I lost both of them. 13. This term often refers to both elephants and hippopotamuses. 14. Amy and Beth are twins. They both play the guitar. 15. We can do it either today or tomorrow. 16. I know neither him nor his wife. 17. Neither she nor I knew it. 18. I was expecting you either today or tomorrow. 19. The mind makes an idea of colour in abstract which is neither red, nor blue, nor white, nor any other determinate colour. 20. My friends and I would like to thank you for your hospitality. We all enjoyed ourselves very much.

**Exercise 6. Complete the sentences using the correct conjunction.**

1. Neither my brother (nor, neither, or) my mother knows about this. 2. He did not come to the party, and his brother did not come (neither, nor, either). (Either, neither, nor) of the girls knows how to dance. Both girls are bad

dancers. 3. He was not angry, (nor, neither, either) did he insult me. 4. I am thinking of traveling to either Argentina (neither, or, nor) Brazil. 5. I am not a big fan of that writer, and (or, either, neither) is my father. 6. I asked two people the way to the station but (both, either, neither) of them knew. 7. I could not decide which of the two shirts to buy. I liked (both, either, neither). 8. Do you want tea or coffee? (neither, either, both), I really don't mind. 9. When shall I phone you, morning or afternoon? (either, or, all), I'll be in all day. 10. I have cleaned (all, neither, either) the rooms except the bathroom.

**Exercise 7. Complete the sentences using the correct conjunction all, both, either... or, neither ... nor.**

1. My niece and nephew are \_\_\_\_\_ coming for a visit. 2. \_\_\_\_\_ the interesting women I meet are already married. 3. I believed \_\_\_ him \_\_\_ his friend. I thought that \_\_\_ were lying. 4. I think he needs \_\_\_ our help \_\_\_ our compassion. He can perfectly handle his problems all alone. 5. \_\_\_ Cathy \_\_\_ Bob will write the report. Just ask one of them. 6. \_\_\_ your son returns the money he has stolen \_\_\_\_\_ I'll call the police. 7. My daughter can \_\_\_ read \_\_\_ write. She is a baby. 8. You can use \_\_\_ this iPad \_\_\_ the other one. Someone must fix them first. 9. There are two trees on the lawn. \_\_\_\_\_ of them are spruce trees. 10. My wife and I \_\_\_\_\_ enjoy classical music. 11. When Mary goes to the restaurant, she eats \_\_\_ fish \_\_\_ steak. These are her favourite meals. 12. I had been looking forward to a delicious meal with excellent service, but I was disappointed in \_\_\_\_\_ cases. 13. I was sitting in the restaurant at the table with smokers on \_\_\_\_\_ side of me. 14. Traffic was moving very slowly in \_\_\_\_\_ directions for about an hour after the accident. 15. They do really good food at that restaurant and it's not very expensive \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. У цій грі ви або переможете, або втратите все. Це залежить тільки від вас. 2. На жаль, ні Тоні, ні Сара не зможуть допомогти тобі з домашнім завданням. Вони обидва зайняті в даний момент. 3. Це моя пропозиція. Ви або приймайте її або ми продовжуємо без вас. 4. Я два рази складав цей тест і обидва рази безуспішно. 5. Ані твої крики, ані твої сльози не зможуть зупинити його. 6. Він не виконав свою обіцянку, на жаль, його друг також. 7. Коли я йду в паб я замовляю або апельсиновий сік, або чашку чаю. 8. Ні його батьки, ні його друзі не зможуть змусити його змінити свою думку. 9. Він сказав, що або ви даєте йому грошей, або він відправить файл в поліцію. 10. Мені не подобається жоден з них. 11. Ви не знайдете свого сина ні в одному з цих приміщень. Його тут нема. 12. Поліцейський не повірив ні хлопчику, ні жінці. 13. У вас немає вибору, або ви виграєте або ви програєте. 14. Обидва хлопчика були хворі та залишилися вдома очікувати лікаря. 15. Мені до вподоби її пісні та не всі вони гарні.

**Exercise 9. Use articles *a, an, the*.****English Tea**

In Britain tea is seen as ... universal panacea for all ills, and ... British love nothing better than 'putting their feet up' and enjoying ... "cuppa". ... quiet gentility of .... English tea ceremony is seen as ... reflection of ... reserved national character. Tea was first introduced to ... British Isles in ... mid-17th century, and for over a century its popularity did not match coffee. At first it was highly taxed and very expensive, but it soon began to gain in popularity. ... tradition of afternoon tea, when tea was served at 4pm with cakes, savouries and sweets, was started by ... Duchess of Bedford in 1840 and has remained popular ever since.

... British institution of ... tea shop owes its origin to one woman, the manager of ... Aerated Bread Company, who began serving cups of tea to her favoured customers in 1864. Tea shops rapidly spread throughout the land, owing much of their popularity to the fact that they were 'safe' places for unchaperoned women to meet.

**Complete the text below choosing the correct prepositions.****Serving Tea**

If serving tea ... a group it is worth brewing a pot. Loose leaf tea will taste best. A second pot with hot water ... it should be provided ... order to dilute over-brewed tea if necessary. If a waiter places a teapot ... the table without pouring the tea the person nearest the pot should pour for everyone.

The tea should be poured first and any milk, lemon or sugar added afterwards. Once you have stirred your tea remove the spoon ... the cup and place it ... the saucer.

When drinking tea hold the handle ... the teacup ... your thumb and forefinger. Do not hold your little finger ... the air.

Do not dunk your biscuits in your tea unless ... a very informal setting and do not make slurping noises – even if it is hot.

If you are served a scone ... jam and clotted cream ... your 'cream tea', bear ... mind that the most practical way ... consuming it is to split the scone in half, spread the jam first, then add clotted cream ... top.

**Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Прикрашений вогнями, будинок виглядав казково. 2. Дружба, народжена в дитинстві, триватиме вічно. 3. Зазнавши поразки від нашої армії, війська противника швидко відступили на свою територію. 4. Замість того щоб слухати мене, Том вийшов з кімнати. 5. Програвши багато ігор поспіль, він був виснажений, відчуваючи депресію. 6. Я відвідав її у лікарні після розмови з матір'ю. 7. Люди часто використовують свої телефони під час

водіння, не замислюючись про те, що це дуже небезпечно. 8. Знайдений в урні портфель містив секретну інформацію та велику суму грошей. 9. Під враженням від картини Джон похвалив режисера за професійну роботу. 10. Заснована 20 років тому, компанія отримала безліч нагород. 11. Готель, розташований у центрі міста, дуже популярний як серед туристів, так і серед місцевих. 12. Я завжди радий бачити її усміхнене обличчя. 13. Вона була дуже налякана, говорила тремтячим голосом, я ледве міг її чути. 14. Що тобі замовити, морозиво чи яблучний пиріг? – А можна й те, й інше? Я дуже голодна. 15. Вчора на розпродажі я знайшла дві пари чудових джинсів, не змогла визначитися та купила обидві. 16. Ні я, ні тато не любимо котів та не збиралися заводити домашню тварину, навіщо ти купив цього кота? 17. Я вирішив влаштувати вечірку наступного тижня, сьогодні треба обдзвонити всіх друзів. 18. Не можу визначитися з вибором сукні, мені подобаються вони всі. 19. Хто розбив мою улюблену вазу? – Це не я, мамо, це або кіт, або тато. 20. Я обіцяю тобі, що завтра ми підемо або до театру, або в кіно.

## LESSON 16

Text: "SPORTS"

Grammar: 1) The Gerund

### SPORTS AND GAMES

We are **sure** you are all interested in sport. Many of you **certainly** play such games as volleyball or football, basketball or tennis. People who play a **game** are players. Players form teams and play **matches** with other teams – their **opponents**. Two players playing with each other are partners. Each team can **lose** or **win**. In a football, match players try to **score** as many **goals** as they can. Most matches **take place** in large stadiums. **Athletics** (Greek athlos, "contest") called 'the queen of all sports' **includes** games or **contests**, played **individually** or in teams, **involving** physical **strength**, skill, and **endurance**. In the United States, the term is used **synonymously** with sports; in Britain, however, it **refers** specifically to **field** events. In **historical** times a great **development** of organized games took place in ancient Greece and Rome. **Among** the games were foot racing, wrestling, boxing, horse racing, chariot racing, and the pentathlon. In general, athletic contests can be divided into contact and noncontact sports.

Contests involving physical **pro prowess** or simulated **combat** date from prehistoric times and are probably as old as **community life**; the **origin** of such organized athletics as the ancient Olympic Games (776 BC) in Greece is **shrouded** in **legend**. Although most early peoples **engaged** in games simulating combat, such as boxing and wrestling, some developed organized noncombative sports. The **indigenous** peoples of North America, for example, played games **resembling** modern lacrosse, field hockey, and lawn bowls. They also engaged in foot racing and, after the **introduction** of the horse into North America, horse racing.

After the fall of the Roman Empire in the 5th century **AD**, organized sports **declined** in **popularity** until the 11th century, when the **tournament**, also known as **joust**, became a favorite pastime of the nobility. In England, especially, the sport of the common people was archery. The English also engaged in **various** forms of football and such field sports as throwing the bar or the hammer, but these were considered detrimental **distractions** from the military sport of archery and were sometimes actually forbidden by law. Not until the middle of the 19th century did the schools and colleges of England and the United States begin a **revival** of athletics, which continues today, **reinforced** by medical **proof** of the benefits of physical exercise. Many games **formerly** played only by men now are also played by women.



Historically, a **rigid** distinction has been made, especially in the United States, between **amateur** athletics and professional sports played for money or valuable prizes. This distinction has become less rigid with time, however, and the **issue** is a source of controversy, particularly in collegiate and international competitions. The **principal** amateur team sports in the United States today are college football and basketball. Major league baseball, basketball, and football are the chief professional games. Skiing, swimming, and the various forms of tennis and running rank as the most popular individual amateur sports. **On a worldwide basis**, soccer ranks as the most popular sport.

From time to time international **championships** and races (horse-races, motor-races, cycle-races) take place. Representatives of various countries can win a gold, silver or bronze medal. Such great championships in sport are organized every four years and we call them Olympic Games. Only the best may take part in them.

Millions of people, most of them amateurs, play tennis worldwide, either as **recreation** or in amateur tournaments. Although the origins of tennis are not clear, many experts believe tennis, then called lawn tennis, was invented in 1873 by Major Walter Clopton Wingfield, a British army officer. Many authorities believe that he adapted the principles of the popular English games of court tennis, squash racquets, and badminton for **outdoor** play. Early players **preferred** to call Wingfield's game tennis-on-the-lawn, or lawn tennis.

The game was **introduced** to Bermuda in 1873, and from Bermuda was brought to the United States by Mary Ewing Outerbridge of Staten Island, New York. The first game of lawn tennis in the United States was probably played in 1874 on the grounds of the Staten Island Cricket and Baseball Club.

There are so many kinds of sports, such as cycling, swimming, gymnastics, boxing, skating, skiing, rowing, yachting and many more in which you can **take an active part** or just be a devoted fan.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

play matches, opponents, large stadiums, the queen of all sports, ancient Greece and Rome, introduction of the horse, contact and noncontact sports, prehistoric times, shrouded in legend, indigenous peoples, favorite pastime of the nobility, detrimental distractions, revival of athletics, rigid distinction, principal amateur team sports, medal, devoted fan, British army officer, Bermuda.
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words and word combinations from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the essential vocabulary.**

## ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

### Vocabulary notes

**1. Lose** (verb) *past tense and past participle lost* [transitive] 1) to stop having a particular attitude, quality, ability etc, or to gradually have less of it: *e. g. I've lost my appetite.* 2) to not win a game, argument, election, war etc: *e. g. They played so badly they deserved to lose. Klinger lost his seat in the election. The government lost by one vote.* 3) to become unable to find someone or something: *e. g. I've lost the tickets for tonight's show. I followed her on foot, but lost her in the crowd.* 4) if you lose something that is important or necessary, you then no longer have it, especially because it has been taken from you or destroyed: *e. g. David's very upset about losing his job. Hundreds of people lost their homes in the floods.*

**Lose confidence/interest/hope etc:** *e. g. The business community has lost confidence in the government. Carol lost interest in ballet in her teens.*

**Lose face** (stop having as much respect from other people): *e. g. A settlement was reached in which neither side lost face.*

**Lose weight/height/speed etc:** *e. g. You're looking slim. Have you lost weight? The plane emptied its fuel tanks as it started losing altitude.*

**Lose sight of something** (forget an important fact about a situation): *e. g. We must never lose sight of the fact that man must work in harmony with nature.*

**Lose track of something/somebody** (stop knowing where someone or something is): *e. g. He lost track of her after her family moved away.*

**Lose sight of something/somebody** (stop being able to see someone or something): *e. g. Don't try to walk in a heavy snowstorm as you may lose sight of your vehicle.*

**Lose a chance/opportunity:** *e. g. If you hesitate, you may lose the opportunity to compete altogether.*

**Have nothing to lose** (if you have nothing to lose, it is worth taking a risk because you cannot make your situation any worse): *e. g. You might as well apply for the job – you've got nothing to lose.*

**Lose your way** (to stop knowing where you are or which direction you should go in): *e. g. I lost my way in the network of tiny alleys.*

**Lose your temper** (to become angry): *e. g. Diana was determined not to lose her temper with him.*

**Lose your mind** (to become crazy): *e. g. Nicholas looked at her as if she'd lost her mind.*

**2. Win** (verb) *past tense and past participle won* [intransitive and transitive] 1) to be the best or most successful in a competition, game, election etc: *e. g. Who do you think will win the next election? He won the Tour de France last year. I never win at cards. We won by just one point.* 2) to get something as a prize for winning in a competition or game: *How does it feel to have won the gold medal? She won £ 160 on the lottery.* 3) to get something that you want because of your efforts or abilities: *e. g. The proposal has won the approval of the city council. Kramer has certainly won the respect of his peers.* 4) if something, usually something that you do, wins you something, you win it or get it because of that thing: *e. g. That performance won Hanks an Oscar. That kind of behaviour won't win you any friends.*

**Win or lose** (no matter whether you win or lose): *e. g. Win or lose, I love competitive sports.*

**Win-win** *adjective* a win-win situation, solution etc is one that will end well for everyone involved in it: *e. g. It's a win-win situation all around.*

**3. Take** (verb) *past tense took past participle taken* [transitive] 1) used with a noun instead of using a verb to describe an action. For example, if you take a walk, you walk somewhere: *e. g. Would you like to take a look? Mike's just taking a shower. Sara took a deep breath. I waved, but he didn't take any notice (= pretended not to notice).* 2) to move or go with someone or something from one place to another: *e. g. Barney took us to the airport. Would you mind taking Susie home? His wife went to Australia, taking the children with her.* 3) to remove something from a place: *e. g. Take your feet off the seats. Someone's taken a pen from my desk.* 4) if something takes a particular amount of time, money, effort etc, that amount of time etc is needed for it to happen or succeed: *e. g. How long is this going to take? Organizing a successful street party takes a lot of energy.* 5) to accept or choose something that is offered, suggested, or given to you: *e. g. Will you take the job? Do you take American Express? If you take my advice, you'll see a doctor.* 6) to use a particular form of transport or a particular road in order to go somewhere: *e. g. Let's take a cab. I took the first plane out.* 7) to study a particular subject in school or college for an examination: *e. g. Are you taking French next year?*

**Take place** (to happen, especially after being planned or arranged): *e. g. The next meeting will take place on Thursday.*

**Take a picture/photograph/photo:** *e. g. Would you mind taking a photo of us together?*

**Take courage:** *e. g. It takes courage to admit you are wrong.*

**Take somebody/something for something:** *e. g. Of course I won't tell anyone! What do you take me for? (what sort of person do you think I am?) I take it (I assume) you've heard that Rick's resigned.*

**Take things easy** 1) (to relax and not do very much): *e. g. Take things easy for a few days and you should be all right.* 2) used to tell someone to become less upset or angry: *e. g. Just take it easy and tell us what happened.*

**Take it from somebody** (accept that what someone says is true): *e. g. That's the truth take it from me.*

**4. Historical** (adjective) 1) relating to the past: *e. g. places of historical interest. It is important to look at the novel in its historical context.* 2) connected to the study of history: *e. g. historical evidence/research etc.* 3) historical events, facts, people etc happened or existed in the past: *e. g. Was King Arthur a real historical figure?* 4) describing or based on events in the past: *e. g. a historical novel.*

**Historically** (adverb): *e. g. How historically significant is this discovery?*

**5. Introduction** (noun) 1) the act of bringing something into use for the first time: *e. g. With the introduction of independent taxation, a married woman's position is much clearer.* 2) the act of bringing something somewhere for the first time: *e. g. the introduction of Buddhism to China nearly 2000 years ago.* 3) the act of formally telling two people each other's names when they first meet: *e. g. Pete, are you going to make the introductions? Our first contestant needs no introduction (= everyone already knows the person).* 4) a written or spoken explanation at the beginning of a book, speech etc: *e. g. In the introduction he explains why he wrote the book.*

**6. Value** (noun) 1) the amount of money that something is worth: *e. g. The dollar has been steadily increasing in value. The share price has continued to fall in value over the past week. It's a beautiful carpet - it should hold its value.* 2) used to say that something is worth what you pay for it, or not worth what you pay for it: *e. g. The lunch special is really good value. At only £ 45 a night, the hotel is great value for money.* 3) the importance or usefulness of something: *e. g. A group of athletes spoke to the students about the value of a college education.* 4) your ideas about what is right and wrong, or what is important in life: *e. g. Your attitudes about life are affected by your religious and moral values.*

**Be of great/little value:** *e. g. His research has been of little practical value.*

**7. Refer** (verb) *past tense and past participle referred* 1) to mention or speak about someone or something: *e. g. We agreed never to refer to the matter again. He likes to be referred to as "Doctor Khee". The hospital now refers to patients by name, not case number.* 2) to look at a book, map, piece of paper etc for information: *e. g. He gave the speech without referring to his notes.* 3) to send someone or something to a person or organization to be helped or dealt

with: *e. g. My doctor is referring me to a dermatologist. My complaint was referred to the manufacturers.* 4) to tell someone where to find information: *e. g. Readers are referred to the bibliography for further information.*

**8. Involve** (verb) [transitive] 1) if an activity or situation involves something, that thing is part of it or a result of it: *e. g. What will the job involve? I didn't realize putting on a play involved so much work.* 2) to include or affect someone or something: *e. g. These changes will involve everyone on the staff. There have been four accidents involving Forest Service planes.* 3) to ask or allow someone to take part in something: *e. g. Try to involve as many children as possible in the game. We want to involve the workforce at all stages of the decision-making process.* 4) involve yourself to take part actively in a particular activity: *e. g. Reilly involves himself in every aspect of his company's business.*

**Involve doing something:** *e. g. Running your own business usually involves working long hours.*

**Be/get involved** (to take part in an activity or event, or be connected with it in some way): *e. g. More than 30 software firms were involved in the project. I don't want to get involved in some lengthy argument about who is to blame.*

**9. Believe** (verb) [transitive] 1) to be sure that something is true or that someone is telling the truth: *e. g. You shouldn't believe everything you read. I don't believe a word of it* (I think it is completely untrue). 2) to think that something is true or possible, although you are not completely sure: *e. g. Detectives believe that the victim knew his killer. It is believed that the house was built in 1735.*

**Can't believe your eyes/ears** (used to say that someone is very surprised by something they see or hear)

**Believe so** (think that something is true): *e. g. "Have they arrived yet?" "Yes, I believe so."*

**Be believed to be something:** *e. g. At 115, Mrs Jackson is believed to be the oldest person in the country.*

**It's difficult/hard to believe (that)** (used when you are surprised that something is true): *e. g. Sometimes, it's hard to believe we've been married for 50 years.*

**10. Devoted** (adjective) 1) giving someone or something a lot of love and attention: *e. g. a devoted father. Isabella was devoted to her brother.* 2) dealing with, containing, or being used for only one thing: *e. g. a museum devoted to photography.* 3) strongly supporting someone or something because you admire or enjoy them: *e. g. Beckham's devoted fans. The journal had a devoted following of around 1000 subscribers.*

**11. Prefer** (verb) *past tense and past participle preferred* [transitive not in progressive] 1) to like someone or something more than someone or something else, so that you would choose it if you could: *e. g. This type of owl prefers a desert habitat. She prefers her coffee black.*

**Prefer somebody/something to somebody/something:** *e. g. a child that prefers his imaginary world to reality.*

**Prefer doing something:** *e. g. Chantal prefers travelling by train.*

**12. Certain** (adjective) 1) confident and sure, without any doubts: *e. g. I'm absolutely certain that I left the keys in the kitchen. I felt certain that I'd passed the test. Now, are you certain about that? They were watching him. He was certain of it.* 2) if something is certain, it will definitely happen or is definitely true: *e. g. It now seems certain that there will be an election in May. Many people look certain to lose their jobs. It is wise to apply early to be certain of obtaining a place. It's not certain where he lived.* 3) make certain, to check that something is correct or true: *e. g. We need to make certain that it's going to fit first.*

**For certain** (without doubt): *e. g. I know for certain it's in here somewhere. One thing's for certain, he won't be back.*

### Word Combinations and Phrases

**Field event** – a sport such as jumping or throwing the javelin in an outdoor competition.

**To be shrouded in legend** – to keep information secret so that people do not know what really happened: *e. g. The incident has always been shrouded in mystery. The work is shrouded in secrecy.*

**Engage in doing something** – to be doing or to become involved in an activity *e. g. Despite her illness, she remains actively engaged in shaping policy.*

**On a worldwide basis** – happening everywhere in the world.

**From time to time** – sometimes, but not regularly or very often: *e. g. These food safety scares happen from time to time.*

**With time/given time** – after a period of time: *e. g. These symptoms will start to get better with time. I would have thought of the answer, given time.*

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. Arkansas just **lost** three games in a row. 2. He just can't bear to **lose** an argument. 3. The Beavers have dropped only one game since **losing** to Oregon in January. 4. My family **lost** everything in the war. 5. He was over the limit and will **lose** his license. 6. 90 naval aircraft were **lost** and 31 damaged. 7. It was thought the manuscript had been **lost** forever. 8. He predicted the French would **win** hands down (= win very easily) in the play-offs. 9. When he refused to give his name, he was **taken** into custody. 10. My job has **taken** me all over the world. 11. Police say money and jewellery were **taken** in the raid. 12. Repairs **take** time to carry out. 13. It **took** a few minutes for his eyes to adjust to the dark. 14. Our helpline **takes** 3.5 million calls (= telephone calls)

a year. 15. Some doctors are unwilling to **take** new patients without a referral. 16. Liz found his criticisms hard to **take**. 17. I just can't **take** any more (= can't deal with a bad situation any longer). 18. Staff have agreed to **take** a 2 % pay cut. 19. Spices had a high **value** in proportion to their weight. 20. A mortgage that is larger than the market **value** of your house 21. Employees said they would **prefer** more flexible working hours. 22. Police seized drugs with a street **value** of £ 2.5 million. 23. I **prefer** to wear clothes made of natural fibers. 24. The legend of John Henry is based on a real, historical figure. 25. Or, if you **prefer**, you can email us. 26. Although sparsely populated, the country offers foreign travelers everything from **historical** monuments and castles to authentic saunas and high-tech industry. 27. I said at the beginning of the book that 50 percent was documented **historical** fact. 28. He had few finances but had in his possession a letter of **introduction** to a fur trader called John Joseph Astor. 29. Did he **refer** to the high standards of social protection in this country? 30. Only ten **refer** – usually more briefly – to their elderly parents, and only eight to their own ageing. 31. A good manager will try to **involve** everyone in the decision-making process. 32. Both sides firmly **believe** that a peace settlement is now possible. 33. He described Mr. Edwards as “a good man and a **devoted** husband”. 34. Are you **certain** you didn't leave your keys at home?

**Exercise 8. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. As the results came in, it was now almost certain that Ken Livingstone would be the new Mayor of London. 2. Coaches should be certain before they challenge a referee's decision. 3. Mark is a devoted father. 4. They remained devoted friends for many years. 5. Thousands of devoted fans waited in the rain for the group to arrive. 6. Both sides firmly believe that a peace settlement is now possible. 7. Did the police believe his story? 8. I asked them for a \$ 10,000 loan, and believe it or not they said yes. 9. I don't believe he's only 25. 10. I don't believe a word of it! 11. A study involving long-distance runners is being done at the Medical Center. 12. Community service can involve anything from gardening to helping in old people's homes. 13. I always try to involve the whole class. 14. The plan involves converting the old canteen into a sports hall. 15. These figures refer to the company's annual profit. 16. The commanders cannot actually see what Lord Raglan intends to refer to. 17. The exemption you refer to certainly needs clarification. 18. The figures refer to our sales in Europe. 19. After a brief introduction by the Chairman, the meeting began. 20. After an introduction by the chairperson, we'll get on with the day's discussions. 21. In the introduction to her fascinating book, O'Brien explains how she first became interested in music. 22. The book tells about a real, historical figure. 23. The structure and relationships of the contemporary organs of government can be understood only

in historical context. 24. "Which restaurant shall we go to?" "I really don't mind. Whichever one you prefer." 25. French people usually prefer to buy goods that are made in France. 26. Dave wants to go to New York again, but I'd prefer somewhere more exotic. 27. Fiber has no calories or nutritional value. 28. If K equals 3, what is the value of X? 29. Real estate values continue to rise. 30. Some fine wines increase in value as they get older. 31. Spices had a high value in proportion to their weight. 32. Chang won the first set but lost the next two. 33. Do you remember our first game of the season? We won 3-1. 34. Gandhi won the support of many liberals in England.

**Exercise 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. The school has gained improved exam results by including parents more in their children's education. 2. His book got the Pulitzer Prize for literature. 3. It will take time to gain her trust. 4. Milburn got a gold medal in the 1972 Olympics. 5. No one really expected the Socialist Party to become the leaders. 6. She is always the best at Scrabble. 7. The court case has been dragging on for months, and it's increasingly unlikely that she'll achieve success. 8. All freshmen have to study at least one composition course. 9. Anna will be doing her music exam in the summer. 10. Do you accept American Express? 11. She just couldn't bear it any more. 12. I need weeks to find a present for Dad. 13. Please, remove your shoes off the table. 14. As I understand you are new here. 15. What sort of person do you think I am? 16. The wedding will be at St Andrew's church. 17. You need courage to break away from the ties that bind you. 18. Sometimes I took my camera to the beach and made pictures of some of the boats that went by. 19. After the operation, he was told to relax for a month or two. 20. Flexible and shorter work weeks are a situation suitable for both the employee and employer. 21. In approaching any document related to the past there should be a progression from lower order to higher order thinking. 22. Powell wrote in the explanation in the beginning of his book that all the armed forces must work together as a team. 23. Depreciation is a charge that reduces the importance of assets over time, reflecting their use. 24. Everyone expected that the Democrats wouldn't win the election. 25. And if one thing happened, the whole school would be part of it. 26. I had always considered Catherine to be absolutely honest in money matters. 27. Dave wants to go to New York again, but I like somewhere more exotic. 28. French people usually wish to buy goods that are made in France. 29. Don't stop looking until you're absolutely sure you've found the place you want. 30. He was sure about one thing - she would come back one day.

**Exercise 10. Find English equivalents for the following.**

1. Виграти чи програти. 2. Забити гол. 3. Відбуватися. 4. Змагання. 5. Легка атлетика. 6. Витривалість. 7. Біг на швидкість. 8. Кінські перегони. 9. Перегони на колісницях. 10. П'ятиборство. 11. Майстерність, відвага.



12. Боротьба. 13. Брати початок. 14. Оповитий легендою. 15. Займатися. 16. Корінне населення. 17. Лакрос. 18. Хокей на траві. 19. Падіння Римської імперії. 20. Користуватися меншою популярністю. 21. Розваги, проведення часу. 22. Аристократія. 23. Стрільба з луку. 24. Метання молоту. 25. Шкідливі розваги. 26. Заборонений законом. 27. Відродження. 28. Перевага фізичних навантажень. 29. Жорстке розмежування. 30. Любительський. 31. Цінний приз. 32. З часом. 33. Протиріччя. 34. Університетські змагання. 35. Вища ліга. 36. Відносити до. 37. У світовому масштабі. 38. Відпочинок розвага. 39. Гра в м'яч. 40. Гра на свіжому повітрі. 41. Відданий прихильник. 42. Велоспорт.

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. It is only in certain subjects – notably mathematics, technical subjects and physics – that boys do better than girls. 2. I always lose when I play tennis with my sister. 3. I need to lose 10 pounds before the wedding. 4. If you lose your credit card, phone this number immediately. 5. Investors lost several million dollars on the project. 6. It's a terrible thing to lose someone very close to you. 7. Many people think that the Democrats' tax policies lost them the election. 8. Michelle lost her job again. 9. Neil put the certificate in a drawer so he wouldn't lose it. 10. Noel lost the argument. 11. NRT Corporation lost \$ 2.2 million in the most recent quarter on sales of \$ 6.3 million. 12. Oh, there you are – I thought I'd lost you. 13. Professor Wilkes lost his sight in an accident three years ago. 14. Sharon lost her mother when she was very young. 15. Sorry, you lost your chance. 16. Ignoring all warnings, the general led his men to certain death. 17. Nobody knows exactly who built the manor, but it is certain that an architect called John Sturges supplied the drawings. 18. She won't let you borrow the car – I'm certain of that. 19. A dedicated bread eater will usually prefer a dense, sour, small, moist, round pumpernickel to a light rye. 20. Because the growing, feeding and slaughtering of kosher chickens are supervised by rabbis, all growers must meet certain standards. 21. It is impossible to look at certain drawings without laughing. 22. I'm not playing tennis with her any more – I always lose. 23. The Minoans also regarded certain inanimate objects as incarnations of a deity. 24. There will also be deep-seated reasons why certain types of behaviour elicit strong responses in others. 25. You will see that generally a certain amount of light comes through. 26. I'm beginning to like Japanese food. I certainly prefer rice to potatoes. 27. Mark likes lying on the beach, but I prefer visiting museums. 28. Most of my friends take the bus to school, but I prefer to walk. 29. She doesn't like romantic fiction – she much prefers detective stories. 30. She seems to prefer watching soap operas to talking to me. 31. Which bread do you prefer, brown or white? 32. Which color do you prefer – blue or red? 33. Cops and gangsters alike

prefer to see pachinko remain uneasily in limbo. 34. Gina could crawl in beside them or sleep on the sofa downstairs if she preferred. 35. He would prefer to help boost poor working families' incomes through tax breaks. 36. If invested instead in bonds or preferred stock, that same dollar would be worth less than \$ 1, 000. 37. She preferred the sizzling animosity between them to this ... this awkwardness. 38. When I wrote to congratulate him on the latter, he telephoned, which he apparently preferred to writing.

### **Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Знизивши швидкість, він пригальмував на узбіччі. 2. Коли вона дізналася правду, вона страшенно розлютилася. Вона так кричала, що сусіди подумали, що вона з'їхала з глузду. 3. Ти збираєшся вивчати вступ до мовознавства? 4. Інтерес до живопису в неї згас ще до народження. 5. Я віддаю перевагу м'ясу, а не рибі. 6. Ми втратили його з поля зору ще на старті. 7. Він втратив відлік часу, тому загубив тему розмови. 8. Йому вже нічого було втрачати, тому він пішов прямо до лікаря. 9. Ця історична подія відбувалася біля маленького містечка на півдні Франції. 10. Повір мені ця ситуація вигідна для нас обох. 11. «Пан або пропав», подумав він і підійшов до незнайомки. Йому знадобилася неабияка мужність, аби зробити це. 12. Він зробив багато фото під час відпочинку, багато з яких він використав у передмові до своєї нової книги. 13. Відпочинь, розслабся і ти знову відчуєш справжню цінність дикої природи. Я так вважаю. 14. Його відпустка включала багато плавання та бігу на швидкість, адже він відданий шанувальник спорту. 15. Ти за кого мене маєш? Як можна звертатися до незнайомої людини, не відрекомендувавшись? 16. Карл сів на літак до Австралії і вона втратила свій шанс поговорити з ним до перельоту. 17. Я не могла повірити своїм власним очам: він змінився, став відданим чоловіком та батьком. 18. Заблукавши вночі в лісі, він зміг повернутися додому лише вранці. 19. Мені більше подобається кінний спорт. 20. Ти абсолютно впевнений, що він прийде? – На 100 відсотків. 21. Я вважаю, що він чесна, порядна людина. 22. Вона вже втратила усяку надію закінчити свій історичний роман про середньовічні цінності, коли на неї зійшло натхнення.

## **GRAMMAR EXERCISES**

### **Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. She hates swimming. 2. No parking. 3. Swimming is great exercise. 4. Having looked around, he also realized just how far his reluctant running and swimming had taken him upstream. 5. It is also ideal for swimming, and the gentle gradient of its shores makes it safe for children. 6. An example is the

once highly popular low-carbohydrate method of slimming. 7. I was there to give some talks on motivation and slimming and had a stand displaying my books. 8. I'd usually leave the washing until Sunday, also the sewing and mending. 9. I've never been very good at drawing. 10. I have one in my bedroom for ironing and one in the other bedroom that holds all my sewing materials. 11. Smoking is not allowed here. 12. Knowing how to swim opens the door to many other aquatic activities. 13. Holding the breath during swimming will cause the person to tighten up and will result in early fatigue. 14. Learning to ski has always been an ambition of his. 15. It's no use crying over spilt milk. 16. It was fun driving to the north of Scotland. 17. I like shooting. 18. Flying makes me sick. 19. Trespassing is prohibited. 20. Smoking is injurious to health. 21. They insisted on me resigning the post. 22. She was angry at John trying to lie to her. 23. There is no hope of the fog lifting for another hour. 24. Trying to go on painting her was no easy task. 25. The dog kept barking. 26. The possibility of going away and starting a new life made her dizzy. 27. He talked for some time without stopping. 28. After returning to London he resumed his work. 29. He couldn't go to bed without cleaning his teeth. 30. In spite of being so very short many Japanese poems are very beautiful.

**Exercise 2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the Gerund as a subject.**

1. Паління шкідливе для вашого здоров'я. 2. Переходити дорогу самій небезпечно для дитини. 3. Вивчати нові предмети в школі так цікаво! 4. Читати улюблені книжки в затінку дерева влітку так приємно! 5. Постійно зустрічати цікавих людей повинно стати вашою звичкою. 6. Звертатися по допомогу не соромно. 7. Стати відомою співачкою завжди було її мрією. 8. Регулярні заняття спортом корисні для здоров'я. 9. Праця шахтаря потребує багато сил та мужності. 10. Метання молота – це його улюблений вид спорту. 11. Плавання допомагає йому підтримувати себе у формі. 12. Писати йому листи стало єдиною втіхою для неї. 13. Паління тут заборонено! 14. Пливти проти течії дуже важко. 15. Бігати вранці дуже корисно.

**Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences into English, using verb with the Gerund.**

1. Вам слід почати працювати над своєю англійською вже зараз. 2. Він продовжував солодко спати, коли вона закінчила мити підлогу. 3. Ви не маєте нічого проти того, щоб Емілі поїхала до своєї родини на тиждень? 4. Ви не маєте нічого проти, якщо я запалю? 5. Продовжуйте розмовляти, не зупиняйтеся, ви мені не заважаєте. 6. Я проти того, щоб вона давала тобі ключі. 7. Закінчуй плавати. Стає темно. 8. Він почав заповнювати

реєстраційну форму. 9. Ви не заперечуєте, якщо я тут почитаю? 10. Він вирішив кинути палити, але продовжував носити сигарети із собою. 11. Припиніть скаржитися на умови життя та почніть цінувати те, що у вас є. 12. Спробуй не згадувати про це.

**Exercise 4. Translate the following sentences into English, using the Gerund.**

1. Ви не проти, якщо я відкрию вікно? 2. Її чарівний спів перервав несподіваний стук у двері. 3. Після закінчення інституту він відразу пішов працювати на фабрику. 4. Він ненавидить слідкувати за іншими, а також коли вони спостерігають за ним. 5. Він був проти того, щоб чекати далі. 6. Проживання біля гучного аеропорту може негативно вплинути на здоров'я людей. 7. Він уникає зустрічі зі мною біля театру. Ти не знаєш чому? 8. Мені не подобається, що в тебе не має грошей при собі. 9. У нього виникли труднощі при перекладі цієї складної статті та він пошкодував, що почав перекладати. 10. Він завжди любить замовляти квитки заздалегідь. 11. Чи можеш ти навести хоч одну причину такої дивної поведінки? 12. Іншого шляху досягти своєї мети не існує. 13. Я пам'ятаю, як Ви зупинялися в нашому місті минулого літа. 14. Під час перебування в нашому місті він відвідав багато установ. 15. Вони були проти його призначення директором. 16. Він заплющив очі і слухав, як вона грає на фортепіано. 17. Хоча він визнав, що був зайнятий, він приділив нам достатньо часу.

## LESSON 17

Text: Education in the United Kingdom  
Grammar: Revision

### EDUCATION IN THE UNITED KINGDOM

The education system is divided into nursery (ages 3–4), primary education (ages 4–11), secondary education (ages 11–18) and tertiary education (ages 18+).

Full-time education is compulsory for all children aged between 5 and 16, either at school or otherwise, with a child beginning primary education during the school year he or she **turns** 5. Students may then continue their secondary studies for a further two years (sixth form), leading most typically to A-level qualifications.

There are 3 types of state secondary schools in Great Britain. They are:

1) **comprehensive** schools, which take pupils of all abilities without exams. In such schools pupils are often put into certain sets or groups, which are formed according to their abilities for technical or humanitarian **subjects**. Almost all senior pupils (around 90 per cent) go there.

2) grammar schools, which give secondary education of a very high standard. Entrance is based on the test of ability, usually at 11. Grammar schools are single sexed (mixed) schools.

3) modern schools, which don't **prepare** pupils for universities. Education in such schools gives good prospects for practical **jobs**.

After five years of secondary education, at the age of 16, pupils take the General Certificate of Secondary Education (GCSE) examination.

After leaving secondary school young people can apply to a university, a polytechnic or a college of further education.

Students normally **enter** university from age 18 onwards, and study for an academic degree. The state does not **control** university syllabuses, but it does influence **admission** to safeguard and promote fair access to higher education. Universities usually select students basing on their A-level results and an interview.

After three years of study a university graduate get the Degree of a Bachelor of Arts, Science or Engineering. Many students then continue their **studies** for a Master's Degree and then a Doctor's Degree (PhD).

Some universities offer a vocationally based foundation **degree**, typically two years in length for those students who hope to continue on to a first degree but wish to **remain** in employment.

## READING COMPREHENSION AND VOCABULARY EXERCISES

**Exercise 1. Recall in what connection the following words were used in the text.**

Divide, primary, secondary, tertiary, compulsory, aged, turn, continue, further, lead, comprehensive, abilities, subjects, senior, grammar schools, standard, mixed, modern schools, prospects, GCSE, apply to, from age 18 onwards, academic degree, control, syllabuses, influence admission, promote, select students, university graduate, vocationally based, in length, remain in employment

**Exercise 2. Make up questions on the text using the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 3. Define or explain the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 4. Make up your own sentences with the words from Exercise 1.**

**Exercise 5. Retell the text in pairs.**

**Exercise 6. Study the vocabulary notes.**

### ESSENTIAL VOCABULARY

#### Vocabulary notes

**1. Turn (verb)** (turn around/round/away, turn (your head/face) to do something 1) [intransitive and transitive] to move your body so that you are looking in a different direction, e. g. *Campbell turned and walked out of the room.* 2) to move something so that it is pointing or aiming in a different direction, e. g. *I'll read the story and you turn the pages. OK, honey?* 3) (turn left/right, turn into/onto/down etc) to go in a new direction when you are walking, driving etc, or to make the vehicle you are using do this, e. g. *Further on, the river turns east.* 4) to move around a central or fixed point, or to make something move in this way, e. g. *For some reason, the key wouldn't turn.* 5) [linking verb, transitive] to start to have a different quality, or to make something do this, e. g. *In October the leaves turn orange and yellow.* 6) to become a particular age, or to reach a particular time (somebody turns 15/20/40 etc), e. g. *My son's just turned 18.*

**Turn (noun)** 1) [countable] the time when it is your chance, duty, or right to do something that each person in a group is doing one after the other, e. g. *Whose turn is it to set the table?* 2) a place where one road goes in a different direction from the one you are on [= turning British English],

e. g. *According to the map we missed our turn back there.* 3) a sudden or unexpected change that makes a situation develop in a different way, e. g. *My career had already taken a new turn.*

**2. Comprehensive (adj)** 1) including all the necessary facts, details, or problems that need to be dealt with, e. g. *a comprehensive guide to British hotels and restaurants.* 2) comprehensive insurance/cover/policy car insurance that pays for damage whether it is caused by you or someone else. 3) comprehensive education/system SES, a system of education in Britain in which children of different abilities go to the same school and are taught together.

**3. Subject (noun)** 1) the thing you are talking about or considering in a conversation, discussion, book, film etc, e. g. *Paul has strong opinions on most subjects.* 2) an area of knowledge that you study at a school or university, e. g. *My favourite subject is math.* 3) (in a test) a person or animal that is used in a test or experiment, e. g. *The subjects of this experiment were all men aged 18–35.* 4) a noun, noun phrase, or pronoun that usually comes before a main verb and represents the person or thing that performs the action of the verb, or about which something is stated.

### COLLOCATIONS

Change the subject (= start talking about something different) get onto a subject (= start talking about something) get off a subject (= stop talking about something) keep/stay off a subject (= not talk about something) drop the subject (= stop talking about something) raise a subject (= mention a subject and start talking about it) broach a subject (= start talking about something that people may be sensitive about) on the subject of something (= talking about something) subject of discussion/debate also subject for discussion/debate touchy subject (= something people are sensitive about) subject area

**Subject (verb)** 1) (formal) to force a country or group of people to be ruled by you, and control them very strictly, e. g. *subject somebody/something to something, to force someone or something to experience something very unpleasant, especially over a long time:*

Police subjected him to hours of questioning.

**Subject (adj)** 1) if someone or something is subject to something, especially something bad, it is possible or likely that they will be affected by it, e. g. *All flights are subject to delay.* 2) be subject to a rule/law/penalty/tax etc if you are subject to a rule, law, penalty etc, you must obey the rule or pay an amount of money, e. g. *Violators are subject to a \$ 100 fine.*

**4. Prepare (verb)** 1) make something (to make a meal or a substance, to write a document, make a programme etc), e. g. *When we got home, Stephano was busy preparing dinner.* 2) to make plans or arrangements for something that will happen in the future [= get ready], e. g. *Her parents were busy preparing to go on holiday.* 3) to make something ready to be used, e. g. *Prepare the soil, then plant the seedlings 8 inches apart.* 4) to make yourself mentally or

physically ready for something that you expect to happen soon, e. g. *Can you just give me a couple more moments to prepare myself?* 5) to provide someone with the training, skills, experience etc that they will need to do a job or to deal with a situation, e. g. *a course that prepares students for English examinations.*

**5. Job (noun)** 1) the regular paid work that you do for an employer, e. g. *Do you enjoy your job?*

### COLLOCATIONS

Apply for a job offer somebody a job get/find a job (as something) land a job informal (= get a job) take a job (= accept a job that you are offered) hold down a job (= keep a job when this is difficult) lose a job leave/quit a job be out of a job (= not have a job) temporary job permanent job part-time job full-time job steady job (= a job that is likely to continue) job satisfaction (= the enjoyment you get from your job) job security (= how permanent your job is likely to be).

2) Something that you are responsible for doing, e. g. *Raising kids can be a difficult job.* 3) a particular thing you have to do, considered as work [= task], e. g. *My parents were always finding little jobs for me to do.*

**6. Enter (verb)** 1) to go or come into a place, e. g. *Silence fell as I entered the room.* 2) to start working in a particular profession or organization, or to start studying at a school or university, e. g. *She entered politics in 1996.* 3) to start to take part in an activity, or become involved in a situation, e. g. *He entered the election as the clear favourite.* 4) to put information into a computer by pressing the keys, e. g. *Press the return key to enter the information.*

**7. Control (verb)** 1) to have the power to make the decisions about how a country, place, company etc is organized or what it does, e. g. *The Democrats continued to control the Senate until last year.* 2) to limit the amount or growth of something, especially something that is dangerous, e. g. *an economic plan to control inflation.* 3) to make someone or something do what you want, or make something happen in the way that you want, e. g. *Police had to be called in to control the crowds.* 4) if you control your emotions, your voice, your expression etc, you succeed in behaving calmly and sensibly, even though you feel angry, upset, or excited, e. g. *Sarah took a deep breath, trying to control her anger.* 5) to make a machine, process, or system work in a particular way, e. g. *a radio-controlled toy car.* 6) to make sure that something is done correctly [= check, monitor], e. g. *The company strictly controls the quality of its products.*

**Control (of, over, on) (noun)** 1) the ability or power to make someone or something do what you want or make something happen in the way you want, e. g. *price controls.*

### COLLOCATIONS

Have control (over/of something) take/gain control (of/over something) fight/struggle for control (of/over something) lose control (of/over something) be under control keep something under control (= keep something happening in the way you want) get/go out of control (= stop happening in the way you want)



beyond/outside somebody's control (= impossible for someone to control)  
full/total control

2) An action, method, or law that limits the amount or growth of something, especially something that is dangerous, e. g. *pest control*. 3) the ability to remain calm even when you feel very angry, upset, or excited, e. g. *Davidson lost control of himself and started yelling*. 4) the thing that you press or turn to make a machine, vehicle, television etc work, e. g. *the TV remote control, the volume control on the radio, a car with manual controls*. 5) a particular button on a computer that allows you to do certain operations, e. g. *Press control and F2 to exit*.

**8. Admission (noun)** 1) a statement in which you admit that something is true or that you have done something wrong, e. g. *The Senator's admission that he had lied to Congress shocked many Americans*. 2) permission given to someone to enter a building or place, or to become a member of a school, club etc, e. g. *The young men tried to enter a nightclub but were refused admission*. 3) the process of allowing people to enter a university, institution etc., or the number of people who can enter: **university/college/school admissions**.

**Admissions policy/procedures** etc., e. g. *The college has a very selective admission*. 4) the process of taking someone into a hospital for treatment, tests, or care, e. g. *There are 13,000 hospital admissions annually due to playground accidents*. 5) [uncountable] the cost of entrance to a concert, sports event, cinema etc., *Admission: \$ 10 for adults, \$ 5 for children*. **admissions policy**.

**9. Study (noun) (make/carry out/conduct a study)** 1) a piece of work that is done to find out more about a particular subject or problem, and usually includes a written report, e. g. *Recent studies show that women still get paid a lot less than men. The study was carried out between January and May 1998*. 2) when you spend time learning, especially at home or by yourself rather than during school, e. g. *Set aside a period of time specifically for study*. 3) a subject that people study at a college or university, e. g. *Linguistics is the study of language*.

**Study (verb)** 1) to spend time reading, going to classes etc in order to learn about a subject, e. g. *I've been studying English for 6 years*. 2) to watch and examine something carefully over a period of time, in order to find out more about it, e. g. *Goodall was studying the behavior of chimpanzees in the wild*. 3) to spend a lot of time carefully examining or considering a plan, document, problem etc., e. g. *I haven't had time to study the proposals yet*.

**10. Degree (noun)** 1) a unit for measuring temperature. It can be shown as a symbol after a number. For example, 70° means 70 degrees, e. g. *Preheat the oven to 425 degrees*. 2) a unit for measuring the size of an angle. It can be shown as a symbol after a number. For example, 18° means 18 degrees, e. g. *Then the cylinder is rotated 180 degrees*. 3) the level or amount of something, e. g. *1960s Britain was characterised by a greater degree of freedom than before*. 4) **to a degree also to some degree/to a certain degree**

partly, e. g. *We're all willing to support him to some degree.* 5) the qualification obtained by students who successfully complete a university or college course, e. g. *My brother has a master's degree from Harvard.*

**11. Remain (verb)** 1) to continue to be in the same state or condition, e. g. *Please remain seated until all the lights are on. We remained friends.* 2) to stay in the same place without moving away [= stay], **remain at/in/with** etc., e. g. *She was too ill to remain at home.* 3) to continue to exist or be left after others have gone, been used, or been destroyed, e. g. *Little of the original building remains.* 4) to be left after other things have been dealt with, e. g. *There remained a few jobs still to be finished.*

**Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the words in bold type.**

1. When on stage, try not to **turn** your back on the audience. 2. Carry on until you get to the junction, then **turn** left. 3. It's your **turn** to clear the table. 4. Wait for the light to **turn** green. 5. Take a left **turn** at the intersection. 6. You'd better do what he says or he'll **turn** nasty. 7. He was educated at his local **comprehensive** school and then at Oxford. 8. Have you got fully **comprehensive** insurance? 9. The computer comes with a **comprehensive** owner's manual. 10. He knew his **subject** from A to Z. 11. The proposal is **subject** to approval by the shareholders. 12. The **subject** came up in conversation. 13. English is my best **subject**. 14. These phenomena were **subjected** to a thorough experiment. 15. While the pasta is cooking, **prepare** the sauce. 16. She had had the foresight to **prepare** herself financially in case of an accident. 17. Teachers need to **prepare** their students to deal with real-world situations outside the classroom. 18. A woman of her ability will easily find a **job**. 19. This **job** would be impossible without the aid of a computer. 20. You may not **enter** the security area without authorization. 21. The children were happy to **enter** the contest. 22. Neither party wanted to **enter** into negotiations. 23. Press the return key to **enter** the information. 24. Rebel forces have assumed **control** of the capital. 25. The two leaders are battling for **control** of the government. 26. They relied on birth **control**. 27. Can't you **control** your children? 28. She was given drugs to **control** the pain. 29. It was hard to **control** such a big tractor. 30. He is a thief by his own **admission**. 31. She failed to gain **admission** to the university of her choice. 32. Do you think museums should charge for **admission**? 33. The **study** showed a deep fear among the elderly of being abandoned to the care of strangers. 34. His burning ambition was to **study** medicine. 35. This **study** builds on earlier work. 36. She's just completed a master's **degree** in Law. 37. I agree with you to a certain **degree**. 38. He could not stand the temperature above 30 **degrees**. 39. The money was donated by a local businessman who wishes to **remain** anonymous. 40. His parents told him to **remain** in school after the ninth grade. 41. Please **remain** seated during the performance.

**Exercise 8. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. The road goes to the left three miles from here. 2. On hearing a noise coming from behind Carol moved her bulky body in that direction. 3. If you push this kind of door, it starts moving round. 4. His life changed dramatically ever since. 5. Who is going to the dentist's surgery next? 6. He brought a plan which included all the necessary details. 7. They decided on a school where all children could go. 8. The topic of the lecture has not been determined yet. 9. The participants of the test were of different ages. 10. At school she liked biology most. 11. During the war the prisoners were forced to do the hardest work. 12. The current tax rates can be changed any moment. 13. This college trains students in many practical areas. 14. Has Mother cooked dinner yet? 15. They were busy making arrangements to go on holiday. 16. John has changed a lot of work places recently. 17. When a child I was set various uncomplicated tasks by my parents. 18. Don't come into the classroom if you are late. 19. He started doing business at the age of seventeen. 20. After the election the power in the Parliament shifted to the winning party. 21. If you can't keep back your emotions, interpreting is not your job. 22. Teachers are supposed to check what their pupils do. 23. They didn't let go to the meeting as she had no pass. 24. The hospital could only take one hundred injured people but the demand was for more. 25. The cost of entrance to the circus was different for adults and for children. 26. The research shows that this has been the tendency for the past three years. 27. She has not had time to learn the details of the experiment yet. 28. The professor watched the behavior of birds in Africa for ten years. 29. Measure the angle of the triangle and say how much it is. 30. She was nice in a way. 31. They were frightened and kept silent for some time. 32. Only a few species of animals were left in these forests after the flood of poachers.

**Exercise 9. Explain or comment on the following sentences. Pay attention to the essential vocabulary.**

1. Whose turn is it to make tea? 2. At the next crossroads, turn right. 3. The leaves were turning brown. 4. Comprehensive schools in Britain are designed for students of all abilities in the same school. 5. They were comprehensively beaten in the final. 6. Climate change is still very much a subject for debate. 7. Focus the camera on the subject. 8. They needed male subjects between the ages of 18 and 25 for the experiment. 9. Flights are subject to delay because of the fog. 10. The Roman Empire subjected most of Europe to its rule. 11. The college prepares students for a career in business. 12. A hotel room is being prepared for them. 13. The whole class is working hard preparing for the exams. 14. I'm thinking of applying for a new job. 15. I've got various jobs around the house to do. 16. It never entered my head. 17. John Reed entered Parliament when he was 32. 18. The strike is entering its fourth week. 19. The city is in the control of enemy forces. 20. The teacher had no control over the children. 21. The co-pilot was at

the controls when the plane landed. 22. By the age of 21 he controlled the company. 23. Firefighters are still trying to control the blaze. 24. Hospital admission is not necessary in most cases. 25. She failed to gain admission to the university of her choice. 26. The minister's resignation was an admission that she had lied. 27. What's the admission? – 25 pounds. 28. It is important to develop good study skills. 29. Nina is studying to be an architect. 30. Fran was studying the menu. 31. Water freezes at 32 degrees Fahrenheit. 32. She has a degree in Biochemistry from London University. 33. Most pop music is influenced, to a greater or lesser degree, by the blues. 34. In spite of their quarrel, they remain the best of friends. 35. There were only ten minutes remaining. 36. Much remains to be done. 37. They remained in Mexico until June.

**Exercise 10. Work in pairs. Go through the essential vocabulary. Make up a sentence with a word or a phrase from the vocabulary notes.**

Model:

One student: “*subject*”

The other student: “*Prices are subject to change.*”

**Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Зараз ваша черга розповідати діалог. 2. Їдьте вперед ще три кілометри, а потім поверніть ліворуч. 3. Вода у річці стала прохолоднішою порівняно з вчорашнім днем. 4. Після одруження її життя набуло значних змін. 5. Підшипник не прокручувався, тому ми не могли їхати далі. 6. Страхівка була повною, але коштувала забагато. 7. Нам видали повний перелік аптек, де можна було купити ці ліки. 8. Він закінчив загальноосвітню школу, а потім вступив до університету. 9. Ця пропозиція має бути схвалена радою директорів. 10. Тема закрита, більше нічого обговорювати. 11. У полоні його піддавали багатогодинним допитам. 12. В університеті вона вивчала гуманітарні предмети. 13. Багато питань були досліджені цим видатним вченим. 14. Такі страви дуже зручно готувати. 15. Петру треба було добряче підготуватися до таких випробувань. 16. Вам треба підготувати доповідь з цих питань. 17. Підготуй інструменти, а я тим часом розберу пристрій. 18. Цей курс спрямований на підготовку студентів до випускних іспитів. 19. Жінка з такими здібностями легко знайде роботу у будь-якій компанії. 20. У наш час нелегко знайти постійну роботу, але багатьом пропонують тимчасову роботу. 21. Цю роботу можна швидше зробити за допомогою комп'ютера. 22. Уся команда країни залучилася до змагань восени. 23. Вона не могла в'їхати у країну, не маючи необхідних документів. 24. Набери цей текст на комп'ютері та роздрукуй його. 25. Управління польотами західного сектору відбувалося з двох веж. 26. Дві політичні партії змагалися за вплив над парламентом. 27. Ситуація вийшла з-під контролю. Треба було вживати екстрених заходів. 28. Якщо не знищувати

шкідників, люди можуть залишитися без продуктів харчування. 29. Стримуй емоції, щоб не зашкодити роботі. 30. Стримування цін на продукти харчування було необхідно, щоб запобігти кризі у країні. 31. Ми ніколи не почуємо від нього визнання вини. Така він людина. 32. Ви вважаєте, що за відвідування музеїв треба платити гроші? 33. Прийом до цього коледжу можливий тільки для мешканців регіону. 34. У минулому році на лікування до лікарні поступило 30 тисяч пацієнтів. 35. Вчені мали ретельно вивчити результати останніх досліджень. 36. Повномасштабне вивчення кліматичних змін може відвернути екологічну катастрофу. 37. Фонетика – це дослідження звуків мови. 38. Після місячної спеки був великий рівень загрози пожеж. 39. Після закінчення університету вона отримала ступінь магістра з бізнес адміністрування. 40. Деякою мірою можна припустити, що вона здатна на рішучі кроки. 41. Ця робота вимагає високого ступеня концентрації. 42. Поліція звернулася до населення з проханням зберігати спокій. 43. Дитині сказали залишатися у школі до приходу директора. 44. Завжди намагайтеся залишатися спокійними, це тільки допоможе у будь-якій ситуації. 45. Студентам залишалося виконати ще декілька завдань до того, як пролунає дзвоник.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### Exercise 1. Comment on the use of tenses.

1. She gets up at 7 o'clock in the morning and goes to work on weekdays.
2. When does the train to London leave?
3. Jane is looking for a job now. Can you help her?
4. Peter has never visited London before. He is very excited.
5. Don't enter. The students are having a dictation. We can't make a noise.
6. Sheila and Simon are friends. They have been friends since childhood.
7. Where did you buy this dress?
8. Who spilt the milk?
9. Kate's daughter is getting married. She will be living alone.
10. I am going to Brighton next weekend. – Really? I will go with you.
11. Jordan was choosing a book while his little sister was looking for a doll in the supermarket.
12. The cleaner is constantly making a mess with the documents. I am sick and tired of it.
13. The boys will have painted the fence by the time their mother comes.
14. She does not know when her husband will come, but she will call us when he comes.
15. I did not see you in the theatre. – I have not been there for a year.
16. Mr. Brown did not cross the street until all the cars had passed.
17. The little girl cried until she saw her mother.
18. This author has written five novels already. She is much spoken about.
19. Agatha Kristy wrote hundreds of novels. Many people enjoy them a lot.
20. Mr. White came home wrote a long business letter and immediately went to bed.
21. They came home emptied the baskets and started to cook the vegetable they had bought at the market.
22. When

Granddad came I had been doing homework for three hours. 23. They will be tidying up their flat when you come. 24. Why aren't you listening? – I am listening but hear nothing. 25. Why are breathing hard? – I have been running.

**Exercise 2. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the tense form of the verb.**

1. Коли я вийшов з дому учора, було холодно та йшов сильний дощ.  
 2. Скільки часу ви витрачаєте, щоб дістатися до роботи? 3. Хто буде зустрічати делегацію з Гааги у вівторок? 4. Спитайте його, коли він відремонтує пральну машину. 5. Ми не розмовляємо з сусідами з тих пір, як живемо тут. 6. На дворі йде дощ. – Тоді я візьму парасольку. 7. Вона зачинилася у своїй кімнаті й відмовляється виходити. – Нехай батьки з нею поговорять. 8. Коли ви переклали статтю? – Ми її ще не переклали. Ми її саме зараз перекладаємо. 9. Марія зараз живе у бабусі, тому що її батьки роблять ремонт у квартирі. 10. Учора він прийшов додому, повечеряв та відразу ліг спати. Він дуже багато попрацював. 11. Вона знають один одного. Вони разом працюють вже двадцять років. 12. Поки діти будуть гратися на дворі, їх матуся буде прибирати у домі. 13. Він виніс речі на вулицю, та стояв та курил. 14. Коли ми увійшли у клас, урок вже розпочався, і вчитель стояв біля дошки. 15. Нову лікарню побудують до першого травня. 16. Він вивчив німецьку до того, як поїхав працювати у Німеччину. 17. Коли я йому подзвонив, він сказав, що захворів і лежить у ліжку. 18. Вона постійно оскаржить на своїх батьків. Це не добре. 19. Катерина спитала, коли народився цей письменник. 20. Хто приніс ці тістечка? Вони такі смачні.

**Exercise 3. Choose the correct word in brackets.**

1. Simon has not done (some, any none) homework today. 2. John is (lazier, more lazy) than Sheila. 3. Has she graduated from university (still, yet, already)? 4. Where can I buy (some, any) apples? 5. Helen hasn't passed the test. Her friend hasn't passed it (too, either, neither). 5. Can (some, any) of you speak Spanish? 6. (Both, either) Peter and Jane are likely to take part in the competition. 7. Jorge has many friends, but I have (few, little). 8. The famous traveler will tell the students about (many of, a lot of) his adventures. 9. Sarah did not like the game, and (so, neither) did her little brother. 10. The weather is not fine. – (Yes, it is. Yes, it isn't). 11. The British are nice people. I am right, (aren't I, amn't I)? 12. Either William or his father (have, has) visited Basil before. 13. Is Fiona at the blackboard or (Kate, is Kate)? 14. (Say, tell) your parents about your need. 15. (There is, there are) a table and four chairs in the room. 16. Put the book (in, into) your bag and go home. 17. His car is nice, but (her, hers) is nicer. 18. All children (must, should) go to school. 19. (It is, there is) hot in the room. 20. We saw the stranger (to come, come) into the post office.

**Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps with appropriate articles and comment on their use.**

Mr. Hungerton, her father, really was ... most tactless person upon earth ... fluffy, feathery, untidy cockatoo of ... man, perfectly good-natured, but absolutely centred upon his own silly self. If anything could have driven me from Gladys, it would have been ... thought of such ... father-in-law. I am convinced that he really believed in his heart that I came round three days ... week for ... pleasure of his company.

For ... hour or more that evening I listened to his ... monotonous chirrup. At last I was alone with ... Gladys, and ... moment of ... fate had come! She sat with that proud, delicate profile of hers outlined against ... red curtain. How beautiful she was! And yet how aloof! We had been friends, quite good friends. but never could I get beyond ... same comradeship which I might have established with one of my fellow-reporters perfectly frank, perfectly kindly. My instincts are all against ... woman being too frank and at her ease with me. It is no ... compliment to ... man. Where the real sex feeling begins, ... timidity and ... distrust are its companions, heritage from old wicked days when ... love and ... violence went often ... hand in ... hand. ... bent head, ... averted eye, ... faltering voice these, and not ... unshrinking gaze and frank reply, are ... true signals of passion. Even in my short life I had learned as much as that or had inherited it in that ... race-memory which we call ... instinct.

**Exercise 5. Fill in the gaps with appropriate prepositions.**

1. There is a new roof ... the cottage. 2. Mike lives in the house ... the road ... ours. 3. Tom dived ... the water. 4. The people ... the bus were singing. 5. They walked ... the footpath until they came ... a small bridge. 6. ...the door was a sigh saying, "Mind your head". 7. Tom fell ... the floor. 8. She hid the presents ... the blanket. 9. A face appeared ... the mirror. 10. She held the diamond ... the thumb and forefinger. 11. He stood ... his friends in the room and felt very happy. 12. He was standing ... his brother. 13. Tom went ... the door. 14. He felt torn ... his family and his friends. 15. He jumped ... the ditch. 16. Take the book ... Jane and go to the board. 17. The ball rolled ... the grass. 18. They ran ... the corner and disappeared. 19. John hid ... the bushes. 20. We used to go to France ... the summer. 21. Fred is still ... school. He is going ... university next year. 22. He lay ... the sun until midday. 23. She ran ... the house laughing loudly.

**Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Давайте повечеряємо у ресторані, добре? 2. Не говори про такі речі, інакше з тебе будуть сміятися. 3. Цей комп'ютер дорожчий за той, що купила Марія? – Ні, він дешевший. Він дешевший у два рази. 4. Що більше вона буде заробляти, то краще зможе відпочити влітку. 5. Твоя парасолька

зламана? Візьми її, вона не проти. 6. У вітальні були два столи та п'ять стільців, а у спальні був тільки письмовий стіл та крісло. 7. Ні мої батьки, ні бабуся не ходять на батьківські збори до школи. Вони вчать мене вирішувати проблеми самотужки. 8. Коли я продивився матеріали декілька разів, я зрозумів, що в них не було важливої інформації. 9. Брауни не очікували, що їх син стане таким популярним актором. 10. Пояснюючи студентам граматичне правило, викладач звернув увагу на прийменник, який вживається з цим дієсловом. 11. Хто дозволив вам взяти цю книгу? 12. Цікаво, чи велика у вас квартира? 13. Коли ми приїхали до міста, будівлю вже реконструювали. 14. Припини скаржитись, добре? 15. І тато, і мама дозволяли мені ходити до моря. 16. Через негоду ми не можемо відкрити дістатися до найближчого магазину вже три дні. 17. До того часу як ми дістанемось готелю, він вже буде зачинений. І що ми будемо робити? 18. Ніхто з моєї групи не знає коли почнеться практика. 19. Вона кожен день з ранку до ночі готується до іспитів. А я готуюся вже три тижні поспіль. 20. Яка чудова погода! Днями ми поїдемо у відпустку. 21. Мати сказала, що вони поїдуть на дачу, як тільки закінчиться дощ. 22. Вони не можуть купити квитки на поїзд вже два дні. Якщо вони не куплять їх у найближчі години, то не встигнуть на конференцію. 23. Марта не побачила, як її подруга увійшла до кімнати. 24. Секретарка сказала нам не зачиняти вікна, бо у кабінеті було дуже задушливо. 25. Усі пристрої були відремонтовані. Експедиція могла вирушати. 26. Вам допомогти? – Ні, не треба. Я зможу перевезти речі завтра. 27. Дітям зараз показують фотографії природи Південної Америки. 28. Що вона робила увесь вечір учора? – Коли я увійшов, вона читала. 29. Я давно його знаю, але ми один з одним не розмовляли, з тих пір як живемо по сусідству. 30. Вона не сказала батькам, коли прийде. Але ні матір, ні батько також не спитали її про це. 31. Вона надрукує на принтері усі документи, до того часу як прийде директор. 32. Ніхто не міг змусити Пітера піти до лікаря. А в нього вже три дні була висока температура. 33. Гелена така ж красива, як і її сестра, але не така розумна. 34. Якщо хто-небудь подзвонить, скажи, що повернуся увечері. 35. Сполучені Штати Америки знаходяться у Північній Америці, та є наймогутнішою світовою державою. 36. Весна, а на дворі йде сніг. 37. Сукня Мері красивіша, ніж її. А мені подобається ось ця. 38. У той час, як ви будете купатися у морі, ми будемо готуватися до іспитів. 39. Нам не пояснили як туди дістатися, тому ми заблукали. 40. Усі прийшли, чи не так? – Ні, і ніхто не знає коли розпочнуться збори.



# GRAMMAR COMMENTARY

## LESSON 1

### IMPERATIVE SENTENCES

Imperative sentences are like infinitives without *to*. We use them, for example, to tell people what to do, to give them advice, or to give them friendly invitations, *e. g. Turn left at the next crossroads. Always hold the tennis racket like this. (NOT Hold always...)* *Pay here. Try again. Come and have dinner with us. Have some more meat.*

Negative imperatives begin **do not**, **don't** or **never**, *e. g. Please do not park here. Don't listen to him. Never tell her that she is wrong. (NOT Tell her never...)*

We don't use the imperative just for "giving orders". We can use it *e. g.* for:

- Offering: Have another sandwich.
- Directing: Take the next turning left.
- Prohibiting: Do not walk on the grass.
- Warning: Look out! A bus is coming!

We can make an imperative more polite or more urgent with *Do*. Compare:

- Ordinary imperative: Help yourself!
- Polite imperative: Do help yourself!
- Negative imperative: Don't help yourself!

We use the imperative to address particular people, when we say *e. g. Wait here!* we might be addressing one person or several. We are really saying "You (singular or plural) wait here!"

If we are talking to groups of people, we can use the imperative with:

- everybody: Everybody keep quiet. Keep quiet, everybody.
- somebody/nobody: Somebody answer the phone! Nobody say a word!

We can make a request by adding a "tag" like **will you?** to an imperative. We add *will you?/won't you?/can't you?* to express annoyance: *e. g. Stop shouting, will you?* We add *would you?/ could/can you?* for neutral requests: *e. g. Post this for me, would you?* We add *will you?/ won't you?* for friendly offers: *e. g. Take a seat, will you?* We show our feelings not just by adding a tag, but through stress and intonation.

We use the imperative form **Let's** (= Let us) + bare infinitive for making suggestions: *e. g. Let's take a taxi! Let's take a taxi, shall we?* Do let's take a taxi.

The negative is: *Let's not take a taxi!* or *Don't let's take a taxi.*

## THE OBJECT

Object can be a noun, pronoun, or noun phrase that receives the action of the verb. Only transitive verbs take objects. The meaning of an English sentence depends on the word order. We put the subject before the verb and the object after the verb: *e. g. The cook | burnt | the dinner*. Adverbials (*How?*, *Where?*, *When*) usually come after the verb or after the subject: *e. g. He read the note **quickly**. (How?) I waited **at the corner** (Where?) **till 11.30**. (When?)*

We always have to use an object after some verbs: *e. g. beat, contain, enjoy, hit, need*. We call these **transitive verbs**. We have to say: *Arsenal beat Liverpool*. But we can't say "Arsenal beat."

Some verbs never take an object: *e. g. arche, arrive, come, faint, go, sit down, sleep, snow*. We call these **intransitive verbs**. We have to say: *e. g. We arrived at 11*. But we can't say "We arrived the station at 11."

Some verbs can be used **transitively** or **intransitively**: *e. g. begin, drop, hurt, open, ring, win*. We can say: *e. g. Arsenal won the match. (transitive) or Arsenal won. (intransitive)*

We can use two objects after verbs like *give* and *buy*.

Instead of: **Give the book to me**, we can say: **Give me the book**.

Instead of: **Buy the book for me**, we can say: **Buy me the book**.

Some verbs combine with TO: *bring, give, lend, pay, post, sell, send, show, tell, write*: *e. g. Bring that book to me. → Bring me that book.*

Other verbs combine with FOR: *buy, choose, cook, cut, do, fetch, find, get, make, order*: *e. g. Please order a meal for me. → Please order me a meal.*

We can put *it* and *them* after the verb: *Give it to me. Buy them for me. Do it for me*. With *e. g. give* and *buy*, we can say: *Give me it. Buy me them*. (But not "Do me it"). We say: *e. g. Give it to John. Buy them for John*. (Not "Give John it" "Buy John them").

## THE ATTRIBUTE

When an adjective comes before a noun, it is attributive: *e. g. She is **an intelligent young** woman. I love **strong** cheese*. When an adjective is separated from the noun and comes after the verb, it is predicative. An adjective can follow verbs like *be, become, get, seem, appear, feel, smell, look, sound, taste, make (+ person), keep, stay, grow, turn*. It is a complement of the verb and not an object: *e. g. The exam was very **difficult**. She seems **worried**. Hilary made me very **angry**.*

A few adjectives can be used only as attributive adjectives or only as predicative adjectives. Only predicative:

- Some adjectives relating to health, including *ill, poorly, well/unwell, fine*, *e. g. She is very ill.*

- Adjectives beginning with -a: including *asleep, awake, afraid, alive, alone, e. g. Do you feel afraid?*
- Some adjectives describing feelings, including *content, glad, pleased, sorry, upset, e. g. He seems glad.*

Only attributive: *adjectives which qualify the noun including chief, main, only, particular, principal, e. g. You're my **only** friend.*

When there is more than one adjective preceding a noun, they are generally placed in the following order:

<i>What is it like?</i>	<i>How big?</i>	<i>How old?</i>	<i>What shape?</i>	<i>What colour?</i>	<i>Where was it made?</i>	<i>What is it made from? (type)</i>	<i>Noun</i>
				red	Chinese	silk	shirt
beautiful		Old					house
old-fashioned						hand-made	doll
	small		square				envelope
	heavy		oval	brown		antique	table

## LESSON 2

### THE INFINITIVE

The infinitive is the base form of a verb that usually goes after “to”. The form can be either the **to-infinitive** (e. g. *to sing, to eat*) or the **bare infinitive** (e. g. *sing, eat*).

The most common use of the bare infinitive is after modal verbs (e. g. *He may/can sing, eat*).

Forms of the infinitive:

	<b>active</b>	<b>passive</b>
<b>present infinitive</b>	(not) (to) ask	(not) (to) be asked
<b>present progressive infinitive</b>	(not) (to) be asking	
<b>perfect (or past) infinitive</b>	(not) (to) have asked	(not) (to) have been asked
<b>perfect (or past) progressive infinitive</b>	(not) (to) have been asking	

Infinitives can function as nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and complements. When infinitives function as nouns, they can be in subject or object position. The following chart illustrates the different functions of infinitives:

	<b>Function</b>
<i>To find a good job</i> is an important goal	<b>subject</b> of the verb <i>is</i>
Most people want <i>to find a good job</i>	<b>object</b> of the verb <i>want</i>
The teacher has a lot of work <i>to do</i>	<b>adjective</b> modifying <i>work</i>
The teacher is leaving now <i>to get to her class</i>	<b>adverb</b> modifying <i>now</i>
Here class is difficult <i>to teach</i>	<b>adjective complement</b> modifying <i>difficult</i>

We use infinitives after modals without *to*. After other verbs we use infinitives with *to*: e. g. Can I use your phone? (**NOT** ~~Can I to use...~~). Joe can't swim. I may be out tonight. **BUT** I want **to** use her phone. I'd like **to** go home. Joe seems **to** have a cold.

## THE PRESENT INDEFINITE

We use the infinitive to make the present indefinite (simple), e. g. *I work. We know. They wash.*

To make *he/she/it* forms most verbs add -s, e. g. *work* → *works*, *know* → *knows*, *rain* → *rains*. If a verb ends with -s, -sh, -ch, -x we change it, e. g. *pass* → *passes*, *wash* → *washes*, *teach* → *teaches* etc. There are though some exceptions: e. g. *go* → *goes*, *do* → *does*, *have* → *has*.

We pronounce -s as /s/ after these sounds: /f/ *laughs*. /p/ *drops*. /k/ *kicks*. /t/ *lets*. We pronounce -s as /ɪz/ after: /z/ *loses*. /dʒ/ *manages*. /s/ *passes*. /ʃ/ *pushes*. // *stitches*, and /ks/ *mixes*. We pronounce -s as /z/ after all other sounds: /b/ *robs*. /d/ *adds*. /g/ *digs*. /l/ *fills*. /m/ *dreams*. /n/ *runs*. /ŋ/ *rings*. after vowels: *sees*. after vowel + w or r: *draws*, *stirs*.

As to spelling, add -s to most verbs: *work/works*, *drive/drives*. Add -es to verbs ending in -o: *do/does*. -s: *misses*. -x: *mixes* etc.

### The use of the Present Indefinite

1. We use the present indefinite with verbs describing states or situations that are always true or continue indefinitely: e. g. *Tree grow more quickly in summer than in winter. Summer follows spring. The Sun rises in the East.* The present simple says that something was true in the past, is true in the present and will be true in the future. It expresses general statements of fact and timeless truths: e. g. *Water consists of hydrogen and oxygen. The average person breathes 21 600 times a day.*

2. We use the present indefinite with states or situations (thoughts, feelings) that exist at the present moment, *e. g. This cake tastes wonderful. Where did you buy it?*

Such verbs usually include *agree, appreciate, attract, doubt, expect, hate, hope, love, like, believe, consider, feel, find, imagine, know, think, understand, hear, see, sound, smell, taste, have, look, own* etc. The verbs ***feel, smell, taste, look, sound*** are used intransitively with the idea of using one of the “five senses”, *e. g. The soup smells delicious. A baby’s skin feels soft.*

3. We use the present indefinite to talk about habits or regular events or actions, *e. g. Do you go to Turkey every year for your holidays? I get up at 7. I sometimes stay up till midnight.*

4. We use the present indefinite to talk about future events that are part of some official arrangement such as a timetable or a programme. A time expression is usually used with the present simple for the future (... *at 3.15*) unless the time referred to is already clear from the context, *e. g. The next train to Newcastle leaves at 3.15. The concert begins at 7.30 next Friday evening.*

5. We use the present indefinite for observation and declaration, *e. g. I hope so. It says here that... I love you. I hate him.*

6. We use the present indefinite to narrate stories and events, *e. g. “She gets up, turns on the oven, leaves the room and the next thing you know there is smoke coming out of the kitchen”*

7. We often use this tense with words that tell you how often: *e. g. always, never, often, sometimes, usually, twice a week, once a day, every year, all the time*, *e. g. She always forgets his birthday. We play basketball twice a week.*

## LESSON 3

### THE MAIN MEANINGS OF THE ARTICLE

#### 1. Two basic rules

- To say “You know which I mean”, we put *the* before a noun.

*I have been to the doctor.* (You know which one: my doctor.)

*Have you fed the dogs?* (You know which ones I mean.)

*Could you pass the salt?* (You can see the salt that I want.)

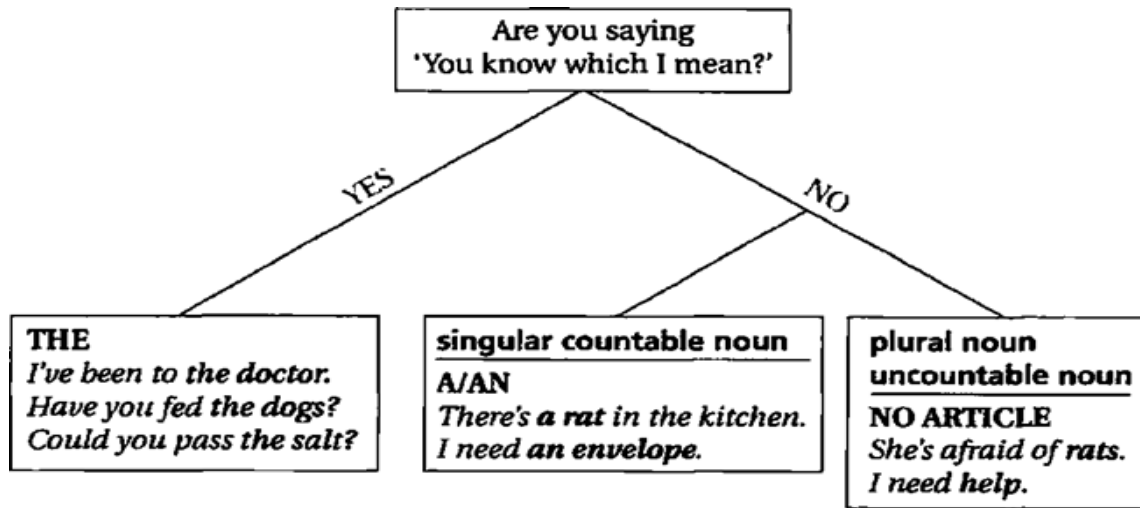
- When we can't say 'You know which I mean', we:

- put *a/an* before a singular countable noun.

*There's a rat in the kitchen! I need an envelope.*

- put no article with a plural or uncountable noun.

*She's afraid of rats. I need help.*



We use *the* before a noun (singular, plural or uncountable) when our listener/reader knows (or can easily see) which particular person(s), thing(s) etc we are talking about. Compare:

- *I'm going to the post office.* (The listener knows which: the usual one.)  
*Is there a post office near here?* (Any post office.)
- *I didn't like the film.* (The one that the speaker and listener saw.)  
*Let's go and see a film.* (The speaker doesn't say which one.)

Our listener/reader may know which one(s) we mean because:

a) we have mentioned it/them before.

*She's got two children: a boy and a girl. The boy's fourteen and the girl's eight.*  
*So what did you do then? ~ Gave the money straight back to the policeman.*  
(The listener has already heard about the money and the policeman.)

b) we say which one(s) we mean.

*Who are the girls over there with John?*  
*Tell Pat the story about John and Susie. I'll try the green shirt.*

c) it is clear from the situation which one(s) we mean *Could you close the door?* (Only one door is open.)

*Ann's in the kitchen.*                      *Could you feed the dogs?*

*Did you enjoy the party?*              *What's the time?*

### 1. *The* = 'the only one(s) around'

The listener may know which one we mean because there is no choice - there is only one (e. g. *the sun, the moon, the earth, the world, the universe, the future*) or there is only one in our part of the world (e. g. *the government*).

*I haven't seen the sun for days. Do you trust the government?*

*People used to think the earth was flat.*

### 2. Superlatives

We usually use *the* with superlatives because there is normally only one best, biggest etc individual or group (so it is clear which one(s) we are talking about). For the same reason, we usually use *the* with *first, next, last, same* and *only*.

*I'm the oldest in my family. Can I have the next pancake? We went to the same school.*

### **3. The meaning 'the well-known'**

After a name, an identifying expression with *the* is often used to make it clear that the person referred to is 'the well-known one'.

*She married Richard Burton, the actor.*

*I'd like you to meet Cathy Parker, the novelist.*

### **4. Possessives and demonstratives**

We do not use *the* with possessives or demonstratives

*This is my uncle*

*Is that Mary's car?*

*I like this beer.*

### **5. Proper nouns (names)**

We do not usually use *the* with singular proper nouns

*Mary lives in Switzerland.* But note the use of *the* (pronounced /6i:/) with a person's name to mean 'the well-known'.

*My name's James Bond.*

### **6. Things in general**

We usually use no article, not *the*, to talk about things in general – *the* does not mean 'all'.

*Books are expensive*

*Life is hard.*

## **Article a/an**

We normally use *a/an* only with singular countable nouns.

*A/an* does not add much to the meaning of a noun – it is like a weak form of 'one'. It has several common uses.

- We can use *a/an* when we talk about one person or thing.

*There's a police car outside.*

*My brother's married to a doctor. Andy lives in an old house.*

- We can use *a/an* when we talk about any one member of a class.

*A doctor must like people. (= any doctor)*

- We can use *a/an* when we classify or define people and things – when we say what they are, what job they do, or what they are used for.

*She's a doctor.*

*I'm looking forward to being a grandmother.*

*A glider is a plane with no engine.*

- *A/an* is common before nouns that are used in descriptions.

*She's a nice person. That was a lovely evening.*

*He's got a friendly face. It's an extremely hot day.*

### **When a/an cannot be left out**

We do not normally leave out *a/an* in negative expressions, after prepositions or after fractions.

*Lend me your pen. ~ haven't got a pen.*

*You mustn't go out without a coat.*

**When a/an is not used: adjectives alone. possessives**

*A/an cannot normally be used with an adjective alone (without a noun).*

Compare:

*It's a good car. It's good.*

### Present Continuous Tense

Form: **BE + present participle**

(I am doing. he/she/it is doing. we/you/they are doing).

**Meaning 1:** The action is going on at the present moment, at the moment of speaking.

**Adverbs of time:** now. right now. at the moment.

*You are reading this material now.*

*I'm drinking coffee at the moment.*

*Usually, he sits by the window, but now he is sitting near the front door.*

*Look! An eagle is flying.*

*Listen! Music is playing.*

**Meaning 2:** The action is going on at the present time but not necessarily at the moment of speaking.

**Adverbs of time:** now. at present. at the present time. at the moment. this year.

*He is writing a new novel now.*

*He is teaching at Redwood this year.*

*Her health is getting better.*

Verbs expressing **mental or emotional state**, mental or sense perception, possession, and other types of state or condition are generally not used in the continuous tenses. Such verbs are called **stative verbs** or nonprogressive verbs because they do not express any action or process of action. The simple present is used instead of the present continuous with stative verbs.

*I see a large dog in the yard.*

*I understand what you mean.*

*She prefers bright colors.*

*He wants to buy a new car.*

*This flower smells terrible.*

*This car costs a lot.*

*The house belongs to his mother.*

Some stative verbs, for example, "*look, think, see, feel, appear, smell, taste, have, weigh*", are also used as action verbs, which means that as action verbs they can be used in the continuous tenses, with a difference in meaning. Compare these sentences:



*I think he is a good writer* (stative verb) – *Quiet! I'm thinking* (action verb)

*He has a nice house near a large park* (stative verb) – *We are having dinner now* (action verb)

### **Meaning 3:** Preplanned actions

The present continuous is used instead of the simple future for future actions according to people's plans, i. e., preplanned or prearranged future actions. The phrase "be going to" is widely used in speech and writing to show a preplanned future action.

*She's leaving on Tuesday.* – *She's going to leave on Tuesday.*

*I'm having dinner with Tom tomorrow.* – *I'm going to have dinner with Tom tomorrow.*

*He is going to a concert this evening.* – *We are going to buy a summer house this year.*

The phrase "be going to" can be used in reference to events if the situation clearly indicates that they are going to happen.

*Look at those dark clouds. It is going to rain soon.*

*Watch out! That red car is going to turn right.*

## LESSON 4

### THERE IS \ THERE ARE

When we introduce a new person or thing into what we are saying – to say that this person or thing exists, happens or is to be found in a particular place – we can use a sentence beginning with **there + be**, e. g. *There is nothing to eat* (NOT *Nothing is to eat*.) *Is there anybody in here?* *There is a man at the door.*

We can also use there with auxiliary and modal verbs with be, e. g. *There must be some way of contacting her.* We also use there with different tenses, e. . *There haven't been many earthquakes in England.* *There will be a letter for me tomorrow.*

Because we use there to introduce topics the noun after **there + be** often has an indefinite or non-specific meaning. So we often use *a/an*, *zero article*, *any(one)* rather than *the*, *this*, *my*, *your*, e. g. *There's nobody here.* *There was something strange about her.* *There is a cat in the kitchen.*

When we use **there + be + the**, it often shows a change of topic. **The, that, etc + noun** indicates that the topic is already known to the listener or reader. e. g. *And then, there is the question of who is going to play.*

If the noun after **be** is singular or uncountable, the verb is singular. if the noun is plural, the verb is plural. e. g. *There is a very good shop near my house.* *There were many people in the cinema.*

If the noun phrase consists of two or more nouns, we use a singular verb if the first noun is singular or uncountable, and a plural verb if the noun is plural. *e. g. When I opened the fridge, there was only a bottle of milk, some eggs, and butter. When I opened the fridge, there were only some eggs, a bottle of milk, and butter.*

**There + be** is also used with nouns followed by a *that-*, *wh-*, *to-infinitive*, or *-ing* clause. *e. g. Is there a chance (that) Kim could arrive this afternoon? There's no reason (why) I can't see you tomorrow. There is a small stream which/that runs at the bottom of the garden. There was an attempt to resolve the problem at the factory. There as a taxi waiting outside the hotel.*

## PLURAL NOUNS

1. To make the plural form of most nouns we add *-s* to them. We pronounce *-s* as /s/ after these sounds: /f/ *chiefs*. /k/ *cakes*. /p/ *taps*. /t/ *pets*. /θ/ *months*. We pronounce *-s* as /z/ after these sounds: /b/ *verbs*. /d/ *friends*. /g/ *bags*. /l/ *bells*. /m/ *names*. /n/ *lessons*. /ŋ/ *songs*. vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) + s: *eyes*, or vowel sound + r: *chairs*.

2. We add *-es* after nouns ending in **-o**: *potato – potatoes, hero – heroes*. **-s**: *class – classes*. **-x**: *box – boxes*. **-ch**: *match – matches*. **-sh**: *dish – dishes*.

We do not pronounce e in plural like: *cakes, clothes, tables, names, eyes*. We pronounce the plural as /ɪz/ after these sounds: /z/ *noises*. /dʒ/ *oranges*. /s/ *buses*. /ʃ/ *dishes*. /ks/ *boxes*.

3. Consonant (**b, c, d**, etc) + *-y* becomes *-ies*: *country/countries, strawberry /strawberries*.

4. Vowel (**a, e, o, u**) + *-y* adds an *-s*: *days, keys, boys, guys*. Proper nouns ending in *-y* just an *-s*: *e. g. Have you met the Kennedys? The last four Januarys have been very cold.*

5. We change the ending *-f* or *-fe* into *-ves* in the plural with the following nouns: *calf/calves, half/halves, knife/knives, leaf/leaves, life/lives, loaf/loaves, self/selves, sheaf/sheaves, shelf/shelves, thief/thieves, wife/wives, wolf/wolves*.

6. We change the vowels of some nouns to form the plural: *foot – feet, goose – geese, man – men, mouse – mice, tooth – teeth, woman – women, child – children, ox – oxen*.

7. Some nouns have the same singular and plural forms: *aircraft, deer, salmon, trout, sheep*.

8. We can use singular or plural verbs with nouns like *committee, company, family, government and jury*: *e. g. What will you be doing while the family is (or are) on holiday?*

9. Nouns ending in *-ics* take a singular verb: *e. g. athletics, gymnastics, linguistics, mathematics, physics. Mathematics is not the most popular school subject.*

10. These nouns have a plural form only and are followed by a plural verb: *glasses, jeans, pants, pyjamas, scissors, shorts, trousers. His trousers are torn.*

## PRONOUNS

1. We use pronouns in places of nouns. They may be subject (*she*) or object (*her*). We call *I, you*, etc. personal pronouns because they refer to “grammatical persons”: 1<sup>st</sup> person: *I, we*. 2<sup>nd</sup> person: *you*. 3<sup>rd</sup> person: *he, she, it, one, they*.

2. In English we must express the subject of a sentence, so we use a pronoun or a noun:

*e. g. John (or He) is here. Tim and Pam (or They) have arrived.*

3. We do not have singular and plural forms of *you*. We can say “*You are right*” to someone we don’t know at all or to someone we know very well, to a child or to an adult.

4. We use *it* to say who someone is: *Who’s that? – It’s our new neighbour.*

5. We also use *it* when we don’t know the sex of a baby or child: *Is it a boy or a girl?*

## LESSON 5

### THE PAST SIMPLE

Most verbs add *-ed* to the base form to make the past simple tense. The past simple form is the same for all persons (except with the verb *be*).

Base forms ending in a single stressed vowel and a consonant (except *w, x* or *y*), double the consonant, *e. g. hug – hugged.*

In British English, but not US English, we often double final consonant : *e. g. label – labelled.*

Base forms ending in a consonant and *y*, change *y* to *i*, *e. g. copy – copied.*

Irregular verbs do not form the past tense with *-ed*, *e. g. go – went.*

We do not use the past form of the verb in questions and negatives. We use *did (not) + infinitive*. We usually use the contracted form *didn't* in speech and informal writing: *e. g. “Did you see anything suspicious?” “No, I didn't see anything.”*

### The use of the Past Simple

1. We use the past simple to describe single completed actions in the past: *e. g. Julius Caesar invaded Britain in 55 BC. Holland was occupied by the Germans in 1940.* If the context is clear, it is not necessary to give a past time reference: *e. g. Caesar's troops failed to defeat the indigenous tribes (in 55 BC).*

2. We use the past simple for actions which happened at the same time and also for repeated actions: *e. g. When we got to the junction I took the left turn while Micky took the right (two actions at the same time). My brother applied for a visa six times before he got one (repeated actions).*

3. We use the past simple for sequences of actions. Sometimes the actions follow immediately after each other, or one action causes a result: *e. g. The man*

*ran to the car, jumped in and raced off into the night* (sequence of actions).  
*Wall Street traders lost a fortune when the Asian markets collapsed.*  
 (= The markets collapsed with the result that the traders lost a fortune.)

4. We use the past simple to describe states in the past: e. g. *We lived just outside Oxford in the nineties, but we didn't have a car.*

5. We use the past simple to express an action going on at a given past moment in the following cases:

a) The use of the Past Simple is obligatory with stative verbs: e. g. *Suddenly I spotted a beautiful flower which smelled fantastic.*

b) The Past Simple may be used instead of the Past Continuous with certain durative verbs (to sit, to lie, to stand, to talk, to speak, to wear and others). In such cases the action as such is only named, and it is often the circumstances under which it takes place that are really important: e. g. *She walked along an alley and talked passionately to her friend.*

## PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are short words that usually stand in front of nouns (sometimes also in front of gerund verbs).

The following table contains rules for some of the most frequently used prepositions in English:

### Prepositions – Time

Preposition	Usage	Example
• on	▪ days of the week	▪ <i>on Monday</i>
• in	▪ months / seasons ▪ ▪ time of day ▪ year ▪ after a certain period of time	▪ <i>in August / in winter</i> ▪ <i>in the morning</i> ▪ <i>in 2006</i> ▪ <i>in an hour</i>
• at	▪ for night ▪ for weekend ▪ a certain point of time	▪ <i>at night</i> ▪ <i>at the weekend</i> ▪ <i>at half past nine</i>
• since	▪ from a certain point of time (past till now)	▪ <i>since 1980</i>
• for	▪ over a certain period of time (past till now)	▪ <i>for 2 years</i>
• ago	▪ a certain time in the past	▪ <i>2 years ago</i>
• before	▪ earlier than a certain point of time	▪ <i>before 2004</i>
• to	▪ telling the time	▪ <i>ten to six (5:50)</i>

• past	▪ telling the time	▪ <i>ten past six (6:10)</i>
• to / till / until	▪ marking the beginning and end of a period of time	▪ <i>from Monday to/till Friday</i>
• till / until	▪ in the sense of <i>how long something is going to last</i>	▪ <i>He is on holiday until Friday.</i>
• by	▪ in the sense of <i>at the latest</i> ▪ up to a certain time	▪ <i>I will be back by 6 o'clock.</i> ▪ <i>By 11 o'clock, I had read five pages.</i>

### Prepositions – Place (Position and Direction)

Preposition	Usage	Example
• in	▪ room, building, street, town, country ▪ book, paper etc. ▪ car, taxi ▪ ▪ picture, world	▪ <i>in the kitchen, in London</i> ▪ <i>in the book</i> ▪ <i>in the car, in a taxi</i> ▪ <i>in the picture, in the world</i>
• at	▪ meaning <i>next to, by an object</i> ▪ ▪ for table ▪ for events ▪ ▪ place where you are to do something typical (watch a film, study, work)	▪ <i>at the door, at the station</i> ▪ <i>at the table</i> ▪ <i>at a concert, at the party</i> ▪ <i>at the cinema, at school, at work</i>
• on	▪ attached ▪ ▪ for a place with a river ▪ ▪ being on a surface ▪ for a certain side (left, right) ▪ for a floor in a house ▪ for public transport ▪ ▪ for television, radio	▪ <i>on the wall</i> ▪ ▪ <i>London lies on the Thames.</i> ▪ <i>on the table</i> ▪ <i>on the left</i> ▪ <i>on the first floor</i> ▪ <i>on the bus, on a plane</i> ▪ <i>on TV, on the radio</i>
• by, next to, beside	▪ left or right of somebody or something	▪ <i>Jane is standing by/ next to/ beside the car</i>

• under	▪ on the ground, lower than (or covered by) something else	▪ <i>the bag is under the table</i>
• below	▪ lower than something else but above ground	▪ <i>the fish are below the surface</i>
• over	▪ covered by something else ▪ meaning <i>more than</i> ▪ getting to the other side (also <i>across</i> ) ▪ overcoming an obstacle	▪ <i>put a jacket over your shirt</i> ▪ <i>over 16 years of age</i> ▪ <i>walk over the bridge</i> ▪ <i>climb over the wall</i>
• above	▪ higher than something else, but not directly over it	▪ <i>a path above the lake</i>
• across	▪ getting to the other side (also <i>over</i> ) ▪ getting to the other side	▪ <i>walk across the bridge</i> ▪ <i>swim across the lake</i>
• through	▪ something with limits on top, bottom and the sides	▪ <i>drive through the tunnel</i>
• to	▪ movement to person or building ▪ movement to a place or country	▪ <i>go to the cinema</i> ▪ <i>go to London</i>
• into	▪ enter a room / a building	▪ <i>go into the kitchen / the house</i>
• towards	▪ movement in the direction of something (but not directly to it)	▪ <i>go 5 steps towards the house</i>
• onto	▪ movement to the top of something	▪ <i>jump onto the table</i>
• from	▪ in the sense of <i>where from</i>	▪ <i>a flower from the garden</i>

## LESSON 6

### THE FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE

The structure of the Future Indefinite tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary will	+	main verb
		will		Base

The auxiliary verb (will) is invariable: will

The main verb is invariable in base form: base

For negative sentences we insert **not** between the auxiliary verb and the main verb.

For question sentences, we exchange the subject and the auxiliary verb.

Look at these example sentences with the Future Indefinite tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		main verb	
+	I	will		Open	the door.
+	You	will		Finish	before me.
-	She	will	not	Be	at school tomorrow.
-	We	will	not	Leave	yet.
?	Will	you		Arrive	on time?
?	Will	they		Want	dinner?

### Contraction with Future Indefinite

When we use the Future Indefinite in speaking, we often contract the subject and the auxiliary verb. We also sometimes do this in informal writing.

I will	→	I'll
you will		you'll
he will she will it will		he'll she'll it'll
we will		we'll
they will		they'll

*She'll be happy to see you.*

*They'll be here next week.*

In negative sentences, we may contract with *won't*, like this:

*You won't like it.*

*I'm sure they won't give you the job.*

We sometimes use *shall* instead of *will*, especially for **I** and **we**.

Here we look at three cases in the use of the Future Indefinite:

- **no prior plan.**
- **predicting the future.**
- **main verb *be*.**

### **Future Indefinite with no plan**

We use the Future Indefinite tense when there is no plan or decision to do something before we speak. We make the decision spontaneously at the time of speaking. Look at these examples:

- *Hold on. I'll **get** a pen.*
- *We **will see** what we can do to help you.*
- *Maybe we'll **stay in** and **watch** television tonight.*

In these examples, we had no firm plan before speaking. The decision is made **at the time of speaking**.

We often use the Future Indefinite tense with the verb **to think** before it:

- *I **think** I'll go to the gym tomorrow.*
- *I **think** I will have a holiday next year.*
- *I don't **think** I'll buy that car.*

### **Future Indefinite for prediction**

We often use the Future Indefinite tense to make a prediction about the future. Again, there is no firm plan. We are saying **what we think will happen**. Here are some examples:

- *It **will rain** tomorrow.*
- *People **won't go** to Jupiter before the 22nd century.*
- *Who do you think **will get** the job?*

### **Future Indefinite with main verb *be***

When the main verb is **be**, we can use the Future Indefinite tense even if we have a firm plan or decision before speaking. Examples:

- *I'll **be** in London tomorrow.*
- *I'm going shopping. I **won't be** very long.*
- ***Will** you **be** at work tomorrow?*

Note that when we have a plan or intention to do something in the future, we usually use other tenses or expressions, such as the present continuous or going to.



## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

We use possessive adjectives to show who owns or "possesses" something. The **possessive adjectives** in English are as follows:

Subject	Possessive Adjective
I	My
You	Your
He	His
She	Her
It	Its
We	Our
You (pl)	Your
They	Their

The possessive adjective needs to agree with the possessor and not with the thing that is possessed.

*My car is very old.*

*Her boyfriend is very friendly.*

*Our dog is black.*

*Their homework is on the table.*

Like all adjectives in English, they are always located directly in front of the noun they refer to. (Possessive Adjective + Noun)

### Possessive Adjectives Are a Type of Pronoun

A pronoun is a word that replaces a noun. As possessive adjectives replace nouns, they are classified as pronouns. For this reason, they are also called possessive pronouns. The term *possessive pronoun* covers all the pronouns that demonstrate ownership. Look at these examples:

- *This is Sarah's hat. – This is her hat.*

(In this example, the possessive adjective *her* replaces *Sarah*. That's why it's classified as a pronoun as well as an adjective.)

- *This hat is hers.*

(In this example, the word *hers* replaces *Sarah's hat*. Therefore, *hers* is a possessive pronoun too. As it's one that can stand alone, it is known as an *absolute possessive pronoun*.)

**Be careful!** There is no apostrophe (') in the possessive adjective "its". We use an apostrophe to write the short form of "it is" or "it has". For example:

*it's raining = it is raining*

*it's finished = it has finished*

*I'm taking my dog to the vet. It's broken its leg.*

**Compare:****your** = possessive adjective

you're = you are

**its** = possessive adjectiveit's = it is *or* it has**their** = possessive adjective

they're = they are

there = adverb (I'm not going there / look over there / there is a car outside)

**whose** = possessive adjectivewho's = who is *or* who has**THE POSSESSIVE CASE**

The possessive case is predominantly used for showing possession but not always. Look at these examples (possessive case shaded):

- *I don't have a bank account, because I don't know my mother's maiden name.*

(These two are clearly about possession. They mean: *the mother of me* and *the maiden name of my mother.*)

- *You can tell a lot about a fellow's character by his way of eating jellybeans.*

(These two are clearly about possession. They mean: *character of a fellow* and *way of him.*)

- *Psychiatry enables us to correct our faults by confessing our parents' short comings.*

- *My theory of evolution is that Darwin was adopted.*

(Remember, a noun can be made possessive by preceding it with *of*. This is common when the possessor is not a person. In this example, the possessor is *evolution*, which "owns" *my theory*. You can see that the idea of possession (i. e., ownership) can be quite abstract.

- Hope is tomorrow's veneer over today's disappointment. (Here are two more examples of abstract possession. How can a time own something? This is common in temporal expressions such as *a day's pay* and *two weeks' holiday.*)
- Wagner's music is better than it sounds. (This is another example of abstract possession. Wagner does not own the music. It is music **by** Wagner. This happens in terms such *children's stories*, which are stories **for** children (not owned by them), and *Picasso's paintings*, which are paintings **by** Picasso (not owned by him).

Here are the basic rules for creating a possessive noun with an apostrophe:

Type	Example	Possessive Case
singular noun	Dog	dog's dinner
plural noun	Dogs	dogs' dinner
singular noun ending –s	Chris	Chris' hat or Chris's hat
plural noun not ending –s	People	People's rights

When using an apostrophe to show possession, the very first thing you have to think about is whether the possessor is singular or plural. This is important because it determines where your apostrophe goes. Look at these examples (the possessors are shown in bold):

- The **dog**'s kennel. (With one dog, the apostrophe goes before the *s*.)
- The **dogs**' kennel. (With more than one dog, the apostrophe goes after the *s*.)

Below are some more examples with singular and plural possessors.

#### **With a Singular Possessor, the Apostrophe Goes before the *s***

With one possessor, the apostrophe goes before the *s*. For example:

- *Take the **girl's** hand and place it on the cushion.* (hand belonging to one girl)
- *I had to remove **Peter's** label and replace it.* (label belonging to Peter, i. e., one person)
- *Wagner's music is better than it sounds.*
- *A foolish woman knows a foolish man's faults.*
- *A friend's eye is a good mirror.*
- *A guest should be blind in another man's house.*

#### **With a Plural Possessor, the Apostrophe Goes after the *s***

For example:

- *The **horses'** hay is damp.* (hay belonging to several horses)
- *The **ladies'** toilets are out of bounds.* (toilets belonging to all ladies, i. e., more than one)
- *The **fairies'** wings glistened in the moonlight.* (wings belonging to some fairies, i. e., more than one).

#### **An Exception to the Rule (Plural Nouns Not Ending *s*)**

Plural words which do not end in the letter *s* (e. g., *men*, *people*, *children*) take the apostrophe **before** the *s* when showing possession. Examples:

- *He is the **people's** poet.*
- *All television is **children's** television.*
- *Zeus does not bring all **men's** plans to fulfilment.*
- *My watch was stolen from the **men's** changing room.*

### Exception to the Rule (Singular Nouns Ending s)

Singular words which end in *s* (e. g., *Charles, Wales, Paris, Dickens*) can end in ' (i. e., just an apostrophe) or 's when showing possession. Examples:

- *It is Charles' birthday. It is Charles's birthday.* – (both correct)

### Exception to the Rule (Compound Nouns)

Some compound nouns (e. g., *sister-in-law*) do not form their plurals by adding *s* to the end. The *s* is appended to the principal word (i. e., the plural is *sisters-in-law*). With a noun like this, the possessive form is created by adding 's to the end, regardless of whether it is singular or plural.

Singular	Plural
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sister-in-law's pond</li> <li>• colonel-in-chief's arrival</li> <li>• maid of honour's bouquet</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sisters-in-law's husbands</li> <li>• colonels-in-chief's meeting</li> <li>• maids of honour's dresses</li> </ul>

### Apostrophes with Joint Ownership

Joint ownership is shown by making the last word in the series possessive. Individual ownership is shown by making both (or all) parts possessive. Example:

- *Andrew and Jacob's factory* (joint ownership)

(Note: only the last part is possessive)

- *Andrew's and Jacob's factories* (individual ownership) (Note: both parts are possessive). Without context, it will be assumed that Andrew has one factory and Jacob has one factory. Another construction is required if this is not the case: “Andrew's factories and Jacob's factories” is one option.
- *India and Pakistan's problems* (common to both).
- *India's and Pakistan's problems* (separate problems).

## ADVERB CLAUSES OF TIME AND CONDITION

An adverbial clause is dependent clause introduced by an adverbial subordinator. It is used to modify the verb of the independent clause and tells when (time), where (place), why (reason), for what purpose, how, how long, and how far. It is also used to show contrast and concession.

An adverbial clause can come either **before** or **after** the independent clause. **Example:**

*As he didn't understand, he asked the teacher to explain.*

*He asked the teacher to explain as he didn't understand.*

There are several different kinds of adverbial clauses. In addition, the subordinators can distinguish the different types of adverbial clauses.

### a) Adverb Clause of Time

We use adverb clause of time to modify verb in main clause and to tell the time that an action takes place.

**Subordinating Conjunctions:** *when, whenever, anytime, before, after, till, until, while, since, just as, as soon as, as often as, now that, as long as ...*

**Example:**

*She ran away while I was sleeping.*

*While I was sleeping, she ran away.*

**b) Adverb Clause of Condition**

We use adverb clause of condition to modify verb in main clause and to tell the condition that an action takes place or someone does something.

**Subordinating Conjunctions:** *if, whether, if ... not, unless, supposing that, provided that, in the condition that, as long as that.*

**Example:**

*I will commit suicide **unless** you love me.*

***Unless** you love me, I will commit suicide.*

**If you are talking about something that is yet to happen in the future, use a *present tense* in the adverb clause of time and condition and a *future tense* in the main clause:**

*I will start **when** I am ready.*

*I will not go **until** I get my money back.*

***If he calls**, tell him the truth.*

*I will talk to him **if** I see him.*

*I won't be able to go with you **unless** I finish this work soon enough.*

## LESSON 7

### THE PAST CONTINUOUS

We form the past continuous with **was** or **were** and the present participle of the main verb:

What **were** the children **doing** while all this **was going on**?

There are some verbs which we rarely use in the continuous tenses, including the past continuous.

**The use of the Past Continuous**

The past continuous describes an action in progress at a point of time in the past, i.e. the action began before this point of time and continued after it.

We didn't hear the intruder because we **were sleeping** on the top floor that night. At the time of our arrival the city **was going through** a period of rapid expansion.

We often use the past continuous to show that a past action was temporary, or was changing or developing: e. g. *During my training I was earning a lot less than my wife* (a temporary situation). *His symptoms were becoming more pronounced each day* (a changing situation).

We can use the past continuous to describe an ongoing action which forms the background or setting to past events. We often use the past simple for an action that happened against this background: e. g. *Darkness was descending over the hushed city as James staggered back to college* (*darkness was descending* = background. *James staggered* = action).

We can use the past continuous for two actions in progress at the same time: e. g. *We were watching the sky and listening for the first sounds of the dawn chorus*. We usually use the past continuous for repeated actions in the past if we want to emphasise that the repeated actions took place over a temporary and limited period of finished time: e. g. *For the first three months she was receiving chemotherapy on a weekly basis* (repeated action, but only for three months).

We use the past continuous to contrast an ongoing action with a single event which interrupts it. We use the past simple for the single event: *Elizabeth was hunting when messengers arrived with the news of Mary's plot. Seventy cars were crossing the bridge when the pier collapsed into the river*. If the background action finishes just before the event which interrupts it, we prefer to use the past perfect continuous

We can use the past continuous to describe past arrangements. The arranged events may or may not have taken place, e. g. *Nancy was taking the next flight to Paris so she had to cut short the interview*. (= Nancy had an existing arrangement to take a flight to Paris.)

We can make requests, suggestions and questions more tentative and polite by using the past continuous. We often use the verbs *think* and *wonder*, e. g. *We were wondering if you would like to join us*. (= Would you like to join us ...?) *Were you planning on going somewhere else later?* (= Are you planning on ...?).

## THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS

The Future Continuous is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the Future Indefinite and the **ing-form** of the notional verb (e. g. *He will be seeing them often now*, etc).

In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject (e. g. *Will he be seeing them often now?*). In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the first auxiliary (e. g. *He will not be seeing them often now*).

In spoken English the contracted form *'ll* is used with all the persons in affirmative sentences and **shan't** and **won't** in negative sentences.

### The use of the Future Continuous

The Future Continuous is used in the following cases:

We use the Future Continuous to express an action in progress at a definite future moment. The precise time limits of the action are not specified

and the future moment at which the action takes place is usually indicated by an adverbial modifier or is clear from the context or situation: e. g. *The children will be sleeping when the clock strikes 12.*

We use the Future Continuous for future events we see as certain because they are part of a routine, especially when the event continues for a period of time, e. g. at the festival, a meeting: e. g. *Winston will be performing with his steel band every night of the music festival. We'll be having our weekly meeting tomorrow so I'll present your proposal then.* The focus in the last example is on the routine nature of the weekly meeting.

We also use the future continuous to talk about events that are a result of or part of an arrangement made in the past: e. g. *"How about joining us at the cottage this Sunday" – "Oh, we can't. We'll be coming back from Edinburgh on Sunday."*

There is, in fact, little difference between the Future Continuous and the use of the Present Continuous for arrangements. The use of the Future Continuous makes the arrangement more fixed and less open to change.

## ADJECTIVES

Adjectives are words which give extra information about nouns. Most adjectives are used in front of a noun, or after a linking verb: e. g. *We have just seen an exciting film. That film was exciting.*

We often use =*ing* and =*ed* participles as adjectives. We usually use them in the same positions as other adjectives, e. g. *These experiments produced a satisfying effect on the ecosystems.*

Note that if we have more than one adjective before a noun, the order in which they appear is not always fixed, although it tends to be in this order: opinion, quality/character, size, age, shape, colour, origin, material, purpose. e. g. *They offered Simon a pair of fantastic soft grey leather hunting boots.*

Many of the most common adjectives have no special endings. However, many common adjectives can be recognised as such by their endings. Here are some of the most common:

- al:** typical, special, international, industrial, mental, physical, general
- ant:** pleasant, significant, tolerant, deviant, conversant, variant, valiant
- ent:** different, violent, patient, sufficient, convenient, excellent, frequent
- ous:** serious, anxious, nervous, dangerous, obvious, famous, conscious
- ic:** terrific, horrific, democratic, domestic, scientific, platonic, sympathetic, basic
- y:** filthy, dirty, dusty, messy, noisy, sandy, stony, rocky, healthy, hungry, angry

<b>-ive:</b>	active, passive, secretive, attractive, expensive, sensitive, native
<b>-able:</b>	comfortable, regrettable, probable, enjoyable, fashionable
<b>-ible:</b>	possible, horrible, terrible, sensible, susceptible
<b>-ful:</b>	useful, careful, beautiful, skilful, grateful, faithful
<b>-less:</b>	useless, careless, pointless, breathless, tireless, toothless
<b>-ed:</b>	interested, bored, tired, surprised, worried, confused, excited
<b>-ing:</b>	interesting, boring, tiring, surprising, worrying, confusing, exciting

## ADVERBS

Adverbs are words which modify or give extra information about verbs, adjectives, other words or whole clauses.

### Formation

Some adverbs are not derived from other words, while others are formed by suffixes (e. g. *-ly*) to other words, or are formed from groups of words. These are common examples of adverbs (note spelling):

- not formed from other words (*just, well, soon, too, quite, still*).
- fixed phrases (*kind of, of course, at last*).
- formed from other words: *adjective + ly* (*easy – easily*).
- compounds: *some + times* (*sometimes*).

In some cases adverbs have the same forms as adjectives. In other cases two adverbs are derived from the same adjective:

- Adverbs which have the same form as adjectives (*short, straight, wide, wrong, right*).
- There are a few adjectives which look like adverbs, e. g. *friendly, lonely, cowardly*.

## NUMERALS

A numeral is a figure, a letter, a word (or their combinations) representing a number. Cardinal numerals indicate number, quantity or amount and are used in counting. Ordinal numerals indicate order, that is, the order of things in a series. Numerals can be written in figures or words (2 or two. 25 or twenty-five. 17th or seventeenth).

Numerals function as nouns and adjectives. In a sentence, a numeral can serve as a subject, attribute, object, predicative complement, or adverbial modifier.

It is interesting to note that the numeral is not a part of speech in English. The word "numerals" in English sources refers mostly to figures (not words). Words like "three, six, twenty, forty-five, hundred, third, sixth, twentieth, forty-fifth, hundredth" are nouns and adjectives in English.



**Table of Cardinal Numbers****Cardinal numbers from 1 through 1,000,000**

1	one	11	eleven	21	twenty-one	31	thirty-one
2	two	12	twelve	22	twenty-two	40	forty
3	three	13	thirteen	23	twenty-three	50	fifty
4	four	14	fourteen	24	twenty-four	60	sixty
5	five	15	fifteen	25	twenty-five	70	seventy
6	six	16	sixteen	26	twenty-six	80	eighty
7	seven	17	seventeen	27	twenty-seven	90	ninety
8	eight	18	eighteen	28	twenty-eight	100	a/one hundred
9	nine	19	nineteen	29	twenty-nine	1,000	a/one thousand
10	ten	20	twenty	30	thirty	1,000,000	a/one million

**Table of Ordinal Numbers****Ordinal Numbers from 1 through 1,000,000**

1	st	first	11th	Eleventh	21st	twenty-first	31	st	thirty-first
2	nd	second	12th	Twelfth	22nd	twenty-second	40	th	fortieth
3	rd	third	13th	Thirteenth	23rd	twenty-third	50	th	fiftieth
4	th	fourth	14th	fourteenth	24th	twenty-fourth	60	th	sixtieth
5	th	fifth	15th	Fifteenth	25th	twenty-fifth	70	th	seventieth
6	th	sixth	16th	Sixteenth	26th	twenty-sixth	80	th	eightieth
7	th	seventh	17th	seventeenth	27th	twenty-seventh	90	th	ninetieth
8	th	eighth	18th	eighteenth	28th	twenty-eighth	100	th	one hundredth
9	th	ninth	19th	nineteenth	29th	twenty-ninth	1,000	th	one thousandth
10	th	tenth	20th	Twentieth	30th	Thirtieth	1,000,000	th	one millionth

***Separation between hundreds and tens***

Hundreds and tens are usually separated by “and” (in American English “and” is not necessary).

110 – one hundred *and* ten

1,250 – one thousand, two hundred *and* fifty

2,001 – two thousand *and* one

***Hundreds***

Use 100 always with 'a' or 'one'

100 – *a* hundred / *one* hundred

'a' can only stand at the beginning of a number

100 – *a* hundred / *one* hundred

2,100 – two thousand, *one* hundred

### ***Thousands and Millions***

Use 1,000 and 1,000,000 always with “a” or “one”

1,000 – *a* thousand / *one* thousand

201,000 - two hundred and *one* thousand

Use commas as a separator.

57,458,302

### ***Singular or Plural?***

Numbers are usually written in singular.

Two hundred Euros several thousand light years.

The plural is only used with *dozen*, *hundred*, *thousand*, *million*, *billion*, if they are not modified by another number or expression (e. g. a few / several) hundreds of Euros, thousands of light years.

### **Fractions**

The numerator of the fraction is expressed by a cardinal numeral, and the denominator is expressed by an ordinal numeral. The suffixes "rd, th, ths" are not written in the denominator of the fractions written in figures (1/3. 1/5. 3/7), but such fractions are pronounced in the same way as fractions written in words (one-third. one-fifth. three-sevenths).

Examples of spelling:

1/2 – one-half / a half	1/3 – one-third
1/4 – one-fourth / a quarter	1/5 – one-fifth
1/8 – one-eighth	1/9 – one-ninth
1/10 – one-tenth	1/20 – one twentieth
1/100 – one-hundredth	1/1000 – one-thousandth
2/3 – two-thirds	4/5 – four-fifths
33/100 – thirty-three hundredths	65/1000 – sixty-five thousandths
3/4 – three-fourths / three-quarters	3/4 – three-fourths / three-quarters
1 1/2 – one and a half	1 1/4 – one and a quarter
3 2/5 – three and two-fifths	6 3/7 – six and three-sevenths

### ***Decimal fractions***

The decimal point (not a comma) separates the whole from the fraction in decimal fractions in English. Decimals are written in figures.

The digits to the left of the decimal point are usually read as a cardinal number, and the digits to the right of the decimal point are usually read as separate digits. For example, 546.132 can be read as “five hundred forty-six point one-three-two”.

Examples of spelling and pronunciation:

0.2 (pronounced “zero-point-two”)	0.001 (zero-point-zero-zero-one)
1.3 (pronounced “one-point-three”)	2.5 (two-point-five)
6.57 (pronounced “six-point-five-seven”)	8.024 (eight-point-zero-two-four)

If the whole before the decimal point equals zero, the zero is sometimes omitted in writing and not pronounced: 0.5 or .5 (“zero-point-five” or “point-five”).

## PRONOUNS

### Personal and reflexive pronouns

I	Myself
you	Yourself
he	Himself
she	Herself
it	Itself
we	Ourselves
you	Yourselves
they	Themselves

Reflexive pronouns are formed with *self/selves*. We usually use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object are the same person or thing, e. g. *He shaved himself in a hurry.*

After prepositions we use an object pronoun to refer to the subject when it is clear who or what it refers to. otherwise we use a reflexive pronoun. Compare:

*Jim emerged from the underground station and looked around him (him = Jim). Jane was upset. Alexa was really annoyed with her (her = Jane). Jane was upset. Alexa was really annoyed with herself (herself = Alexa).* We use reflexive pronouns to refer to the subject after verbs with dependent prepositions.

Some verbs take the reflexive in English where it may not seem logical, and where similar verbs in other languages may not take the reflexive, e. g. *enjoy yourself, help yourself, acquaint yourself (with), behave yourself, e. g. Did the children behave themselves while we were out? (= behave well). Help yourself to the food, won't you? (= take as much food as you want).*

There are many verbs which take a reflexive in other languages but do not usually so in English, e. g. *wash, dress, feel, remember, hurry, e. g. I don't feel very well today.*

We can use reflexive pronouns to emphasise the subject or object of a sentence. The pronoun can come after the subject, after the auxiliary (if there is one) or verb, after the object or at the end of the sentence, e. g. *I myself don't believe him.*

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Like all pronouns, an indefinite pronoun is a substitute for a noun. An indefinite pronoun refers to a non-specific person or thing.

The most common ones are: *all, any, anyone, anything, each, everybody, everyone, everything, few, many, nobody, none, one, several, some, somebody, and someone.*

When we wish to express general feelings and opinions (i.e. not necessarily those of the speaker), we can use *you, we* or *they*, e. g. *You can wear whatever you like to go to the theatre these days.* If we wish to include ourselves, it is better to use *we*. *We can wear whatever we like to go to the theatre these days.*

We use *one* in formal language to mean people generally including ourselves, e. g. *One can sympathise with the sentiments behind the actions of the strikers.*

*Any, some, every* and *no* combine with nouns or adverbs to form pronouns (or adverbs).

We use *-one* and *-body* interchangeably.

**Anyhow** is informal and is similar to **anyway**.

We usually write *no one* as two words, we write *nobody* as one word. These pronouns and adverbs do not refer to a specific person, place, etc., e. g. *They were miles from anywhere – no one would hear her scream.* We use *some* compounds when we are thinking of a particular unspecified person, place or thing, but we use *any* compounds when we are thinking of people, places or things in general, e. g. “*What would you like for your birthday?*” “*Oh, anything.*” (= no particular present)

“*Well, there's something I would like ...*” (= a particular present).

## LESSON 8

### THE PRESENT PERFECT

We form the present perfect simple with **has/have** and a past participle: e. g. *There has been a serious decline in the number of people qualifying as teachers. Have the printers finished the new brochure yet?* We usually contract *has/have* in speech and informal writing: e. g. *The film's already started – we'd better hurry.* In negative sentences, we usually contract **not** in speech and informal writing: e. g. *I've been to the shops today and they haven't started the summer sales yet. I've never been to Madame Tussaud's.*

## The use of the Present Perfect

We use the present perfect simple to talk about states that started in the past and are still continuing in the present: e. g. *The manor house has stood on this spot for over two hundred years* (It is still here.) We often use the prepositions **for** (+ period of time) and **since** (+ point in time): e. g. The centre of the island *has not been* inhabited **since** the earthquake of 1952.

We also use the present perfect to talk about actions which happened in the past but may happen again in the future. The period of time in which the action took place is unfinished, so it may be repeated: e. g. *I've only been to Hong Kong once, but I'd love to go again* (My life is still continuing, so I may go to Hong Kong again). Sometimes we know the time is not 'finished' because of the time phrases we use: e. g. *This channel has shown about four wildlife documentaries **this week!*** Compare these two sentences: *John Grisham **has written** some of the most successful legal thrillers. Agatha Christie **wrote** a huge number of thrillers.* In the first example the author is still alive and is able to write more successful books. In the second the author is dead and therefore can't write any more books.

We use the present perfect after **superlatives**, e. g. *the best/worst, the greatest*, **ordinal numbers**, e. g. *the first (second, third)*, **the only**, often followed by *ever*: e. g. *It's **the worst** sports programme I **have ever seen** and **the first** I **have ever written** to complain about!*

We can use the present perfect to talk about an action completed in the past which has some relevance to the present, i.e. there is a present result of the action: e. g. *The avalanche has devastated the skiing industry in the area* (result = the skiing industry is still having big problems).

We can use the present perfect when the time is indefinite, i.e. when no time is stated, especially when the past action has some relevance to the present: e. g. *Ms Brown has arrived. She's in the staff room and is ready to see you now.*

As the present perfect simple expresses relevance to the present, news broadcasts and reports often use it to introduce a story, before moving into past tenses. Similarly, we often use it to introduce a new topic of conversation: e. g. *I've heard from Maurice – he's been in Australia for the last two months.*

5. In time clauses (e. g. *after, when, as soon as*) we use the present perfect with future reference to emphasise the completion of the action: e. g. *We'll make a move as soon as the rain has stopped.*

## THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

We form the present perfect continuous with **has/have + been** + a present participle (-**ing** form): e. g. *Bob Snowdon **has been doing** a lot of work for charities since the mid-eighties.*

The use of the Present Perfect Continuous.

We use the present perfect continuous to talk about an ongoing state or action which began in the past and is still continuing or has just finished: e. g. *Women have been speaking out on this issue for some time, with mixed results.* “Where have you been?” “I’ve been talking to Jenny.” It is common to use **since** or **for** with this use of the present perfect continuous: e. g. *I’ve been looking into the possibility of early retirement since the reorganisation.*

The simple form of the present perfect often focuses on the fact that an action is completed, while the continuous focuses on the fact that it is still ongoing:

- Simple: *I’ve learnt how to play chess.* (= I can play chess now.)
- Continuous: *I’ve been learning how to play chess.* (= I’m still learning.)

**Note:**

We use the continuous to focus on the duration of an action so we do not mention the number of times that we have done the action. With repeated actions we use the present perfect simple: e. g. *I’ve called you five times this morning. Where have you been?*

With the adverbs *lately* or *recently*, we use the present perfect continuous to talk about new developments which may be temporary: e. g. *Helen’s been spending a lot of time at the club lately.* (= She didn’t use to.)

We use the present perfect continuous + *for*, not the present continuous, to specify the duration of an activity: e. g. *I have been learning how to play chess for three years now.*

**Note:** We do not usually use the present perfect continuous in the passive.

We can use the present perfect continuous to explain a present result. The focus is on the activity rather than the result. In this case, we don’t usually use a time adverb: e. g. *I’m sorry the hall is in such a mess. We’ve been decorating.*

## ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Possessive pronouns show ownership. The term possessive pronoun covers possessive adjectives and absolute possessive pronouns.

The absolute possessive pronouns are *mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, and theirs*. They are also known as **absolute possessives** because they stand alone and do not modify nouns.

The correspondence between possessive adjectives and absolute possessive pronouns:

<u>Possessive Adjectives</u>	<u>Absolute Possessive Pronouns</u>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• my</li> <li>• your</li> <li>• his</li> <li>• her</li> <li>• its</li> <li>• our</li> <li>• their</li> <li>• whose</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mine</li> <li>• yours</li> <li>• his</li> <li>• hers</li> <li>• ours</li> <li>• theirs</li> </ul>

Absolute possessive pronouns function as nouns, e. g. *My car is outside, but theirs is in the garage. Mr Brown's house is bigger than ours.*

## LESSON 9

### MODAL VERBS

- The main “modal verbs” (or ‘modals’) are: *can, may, must, should*.
- *Have to* and *need* are also used as modal verbs, but they have other uses as well.
- Modals are followed by the infinitive. The infinitive has the following forms:

	<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>
Indefinite	to ask	to be asked
Continuous	to be asking	–
Perfect	to have asked	to have been asked
Perfect Continuous	to have been asking	–

Modals have several meanings, so you need to think about the meaning of the sentence as a whole to be sure that your choice of the modal expresses exactly what you want to say. The main ideas that modals are used to express are shown in the following sections.

<b>Modal verbs and substitutes</b>	<b>Present and Future: Examples</b>	<b>Past: Examples</b>
<b>CAN</b>		
1) ability: affirmative and negative statements and questions	She can drive. Can he play the piano? I can do it tomorrow.	She couldn't drive when she was 15. Could she drive when she was 18?
2) informal request: affirmative questions	Can you open the window, please? Can I use your phone, please?	—
3) informal permission: affirmative and negative statements and affirmative questions	Can I leave now? Can I use your phone, please? Yes, you can. No, you can't.	—
4) impossibility: negative statements	Your story can't be true!	His story can't have been true!
<b>MUST</b>		
1) strong necessity (obligation): affirmative statements	I must go to the bank now. He must finish this report by Friday.	substitute: HAD TO
2) prohibition: negative statements	You must not leave the house. You must not enter this room.	—
3) strong probability: affirmative and negative statements, present and past	His bag is on the table. He must be here. The light is off. He must be sleeping. She is his friend. She must know his address.	His bag was on the table. He must have been there. The light was off. He must have been sleeping. She didn't call me. She must not have read my message.
<b>HAVE TO</b>		
1) necessity: affirmative statements and questions	I have to go to the bank now. We will have to sell the car soon. Does he have to finish this report by Friday?	He had to go to the bank yesterday. We had to sell our car. Did he have to finish that report yesterday?



2) no necessity: negative statements	You don't have to go to work today and tomorrow. We are on vacation!	He have to go to work yesterday. Yesterday was his day off.
<b>NEED</b>		
1) necessity: affirmative statements and questions	I need to study before the test. Does he need to go there?	I needed to study before the test, so I stayed home. Did he need to go there?
2) no necessity: negative statements	You don't need to go to work today and tomorrow. We are on vacation! You needn't worry. He will be all right.	He didn't need to go to work yesterday. Yesterday was his day off.
<b>SHOULD</b>		
1) advice: affirmative and negative statements and questions	You look ill. You should see a doctor. You shouldn't argue with your boss. Should I ask Tom about it?	You should have seen a doctor a week ago. You shouldn't have argued with your boss.
2) strong expectation (strong probability): affirmative and negative statements, future and past	This story should be interesting. This task shouldn't be difficult for you.	Why doesn't he call? He should have arrived in Rome two hours ago.
<b>MAY</b>		
1) polite request: affirmative questions	May I use your telephone, please? May I speak to Mr Brown, please?	—
2) formal permission: affirmative and negative statements and affirmative questions	You may stay here only for three days. May I come in? Yes, you may. No, you may not.	—
3) possibility: affirmative and negative statements	I'm not sure, but he may be at the library now. He may not be home yet.	He may have seen Anna yesterday. He may not have talked with the doctor yet.

## LESSON 10

### THE PAST PERFECT

1. To make the past perfect form we put **had** with **the past participle**:  
*e. g. She didn't call Alan because she had lost his number. It was a film that I hadn't seen before. Had you seen this film before you went to the cinema?*

### The use of the Past Perfect

1. When we give an account of a sequence of past events we usually put these events in chronological order using the past simple and we are not obliged to use the past perfect. If we want to refer to an event out of order – that is, an event which happened before the last event in the sequence we have written or spoken about – we can use the past perfect.:  
*e. g. After I finished work, I went home* (past simple + past simple). But we often need the past perfect for the event that happened first to avoid ambiguity:

*e. g. When I arrived, Ann left.* (i. e. at that moment)

*e. g. When I arrived, Ann had left.* (i. e. before I got there)

We use the past perfect to refer to “an earlier past”, that is to describe the first of two or more actions: *e. g. When I got to the station, the train had left. When he had read the letter, he started to cry. After we had passed our exams, we went to celebrate.*

2. We often introduce the past perfect with conjunctions like *when, after, as soon as, by the time that*. We use adverbs like *already, ever, never... before*:  
*e. g. By 10 o'clock most people had gone home. When he went into the bathroom, he found that the bath had overflowed. As soon as he had told her the truth, he regretted it.*

3. If the order of past events is clear from the context, we can often use either the past perfect or the past simple:

- *After Ivan had finished reading, he put out the light. (or ...Ivan finished...)*

- *They were given help and advice before they had made the decision. (or ...they made...)*

- *The two leaders agreed to meet, even though earlier talks had failed to reach an agreement. (or ...talks failed...).*

4. The past perfect is often used in reporting what was originally said or thought in the present perfect or past simple.

Talking about a past event	Reporting this past event
“I have met him before.”	I was sure that I had met him before (NOT ...I met him)
“The village hasn’t changed much.”	On my last visit to Wixton I found that the village hadn’t changed much. (NOT...the village didn’t change)
“Smithers drowned in the recent floods.”	Police were convinced Smithers had drowned in the recent floods.

5. It is often used as the equivalent of the present perfect, as the present perfect looks back from the past. Compare:

Ann and Michael have just got married.

It was June 1991. Ann and Michael *had just got married*.

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON

### ADJECTIVES

1. We add *-er* and *-est* to form the comparative and superlative of most one-syllable adjectives: *e. g. clean – cleaner – the cleanest, cold – colder – the coldest*.

2. Adjectives like hot (big, fat, sad, wet) double the consonant: *hot – hotter – the hottest*.

3. Adjectives like nice (fine, large, late, safe) add *-r, -st*: *nice – nicer – the nicest*.

4. With adjectives like busy we use *-i* in place of *-y*: *busy – busier – the busiest*.

5. We use the **comparative** when comparing one person or thing with another.

6. We use the **superlative** when comparing one person or thing with more than one another.

7. Some two-syllable adjectives ending *-y, -ow, -er* like *happy, clever, narrow and common, pleasant, quiet, simple, stupid* have two comparative or superlative forms:

- either with *-er/-est*: She’s **cleverer** than you. She’s the **cleverest** person I know.
- or with *more/the most* with most two-syllable adjectives: *careless, correct, famous*.

8. We use *more/the most* with three-syllable adjectives: *more beautiful, the most beautiful*.

9. *Further* and *farther* refer to distance: London is *five miles further/farther*. *Further* (NOT “farther”) can mean “in addition”: *There is no further information*.

10. We use *elder/eldest* before a noun only with reference to people in a family: *e. g. my elder brother/son, the eldest child, he’s the eldest* (but not “He is elder

than me”). We use *older/oldest* for people and things: e. g. *He is older than I am. This book is older.*

11. Irregular comparisons: *good/well – better – the best. bad – worse – the worst. much/many – more – the most. little – less – the least.*

*Lesser* is formed from *less* but is not a true comparative. We cannot use *than* after it. *Lesser* means “not so great” and we use it in fixed phrases like *the lesser of two evils*.

12. *Latest/last*: e. g. *I bought **the latest** (i.e. most recent) edition of today’s paper. O bought **the last** (i.e. final) edition of today’s paper.*

13. With comparatives we can say ...*than I am / than you are / than John is* etc. But in informal spoken English we usually prefer ...*than me / you / him / her / us / them*.

14. We use *as + adjective/adverb + as (not as/so...as)* to say that something or somebody is like something or something else, or that one situation is like another: e. g. *Was the film as funny as his last one? I came round as quickly as I could. The gap between the sides is not as/so wide as it was. I can speak as well as you can.*

## ADVERBS

Only gradable adverbs, that is adverbs that can be modified, can have comparative and superlative forms. We cannot modify adverbs such as *sometimes, never, now, almost*. Adverbs ending in *-ly* and a few other adverbs can be put in comparative and superlative forms.

	Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
Adverbs ending in <i>-ly</i>	carefully quickly	more carefully more quickly	most carefully most quickly
Adverbs with same form as adjectives	fast hard early	faster harder earlier	fastest hardest earliest
Irregulars	badly well little much	worse better less more	worst best least most

*He drives **more carefully** than she does. I think Sarah works **the hardest** of us all. He helps me **less** than he used to. Can you speak **more quietly**, please? I got to the station **earlier** than Jane. In order to earn more money work **harder**.*

## LESSON 11

### THE FUTURE PERFECT

We can make the future perfect form by using *will have + past participle*: e. g. *I will have finished.*

#### The use of the Future Perfect

We use the future perfect to say that something will be ended, completed, or achieved by a particular point in the future. It is the equivalent of the present perfect with the reference point in the future. We often use ***by/not...till/until + time reference***: e. g. *By the time you get home I will have cleaned the house from top to bottom. I'm sure his awful behaviour will soon have been forgotten (passive form). I will have told him the news by the time you get here.*

***By the time*** introduces a time clause, the present simple is used in a time clause: e. g. *a. I will graduate in June. I will see you in July. By the time I see you, I will have graduated. b. I will have finished my homework by the time I go out on a date tonight.*

### THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

We can make the future perfect continuous form by using *will have been + present participle*: e. g. *I will have been working.*

#### The use of the Future Perfect

The future perfect continuous emphasizes the duration of an activity that will be in progress before another time or event in the future: e. g. *I will go to bed at 10 P.M. Ed will get home at midnight. At midnight I will be sleeping. I will have been sleeping for two hours by the time Ed gets home.*

Sometimes the future perfect and the future perfect continuous have the same meaning: e. g. *a. When Professor Jones retires next month, he will have taught for 45 years. b. When Professor Jones retires next month, he will have been teaching for 45 years.*

We often use the future perfect continuous with verbs like *learn, lie, live, rain, sit, wait, work* which naturally suggest continuity to say that what is in progress now will be in progress in the future: e. g. *By this time next week, I will have been working on this book for a year.*

### NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

In negative questions the word order of the full form is different from the short form:

- full form: *Did he not explain the situation to you?*
- short form: *Didn't he explain the situation to you?*

We normally use the short form in conversation and the full form only for emphasis.

Depending on the stress and intonation we use, we can:

- express disbelief, surprise: *Can't you really ride a bicycle?*
- invite the answer "Yes": *Don't you remember our holiday in Spain?*
- persuade: *Won't you please help me?*
- express annoyance: *Can't you ever shut the door behind you?*
- make exclamations: *Isn't it hot here!*

## TAG QUESTIONS

A tag question is a short question (have you?/Haven't you?) that follows a statement. We form tag questions with auxiliaries (*be, have, can, may* etc.) and *do, does, did*.

They affirmative – negative: *John was annoyed, wasn't he? You like fish, don't you?* or negative – affirmative: *John wasn't annoyed, was he? You don't like fish, do you?*

If our voice goes up on the tag, we are asking a real question which needs an answer: e. g. *You left the gas on, didn't you? – Yes, I did. You didn't leave the gas on, did you? – No, I didn't.*

Tag question can also be affirmative – affirmative. If our voice goes up on the tag, we mean "Tell me more" etc.: *She's getting married, is she?* (= I'd like to know more about it)

## LESSON 12

### The Passive Voice

We use the Passive forms for reasons of style and of clarity, as well as of meaning. We use it to show that the person or thing denoted by the subject of the sentence is not the agent (the doer) of the action expressed by the predicate verb but the object of this action. We often don't mention the agent in the passive, but if we do it is introduced with *by*, e. g. *She was woken from her sleep by his singing. The news will be announced after dinner.*

The Passive Voice is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the required finite form and the participle of the notional verb:

the Present Indefinite — **is (am, are) done**

the Past Indefinite — **was (were) done**

the Future Indefinite — **will (shall) be done**

the Present Continuous — **is (am, are) being done**

the Past Continuous — **was (were) being done**

the Present Perfect — **has (have) been done**

the Past Perfect — **had been done**

the Future Perfect — **will (shall) have been done**

The interrogative form is built up by placing the (first) auxiliary verb before the subject of the sentence (e. g. *Has the work been done?*). The negative form is built up by placing the particle **not** after the (first) auxiliary (e. g. *The work has not done yesterday*).

**Note.** The Passive Voice may also be formed by means of the auxiliary verb **to get** and the participle of the notional verb. But this use is infrequent and restricted to certain contexts: e. g. *How much do they get paid?*

## REPORTING ORDERS AND REQUESTS

When we want to report an order or request, we can use a verb like “*tell*” with a *to*-clause: e. g. *He told me to go away*. The pattern is **verb + indirect object + to-clause**. The indirect object is the person spoken to. Other verbs used to report orders and requests in this way are: **command, order, warn, ask, advise, invite, beg, teach, and forbid**.

Direct speech	Indirect speech
The doctor said to me, “Stop smoking!”	The doctor <b>told me to stop smoking</b> .
“Get out of the car!” said the policeman.	The policeman <b>ordered him to get out</b> of the car.
“Could you please be quiet,” she said.	She <b>asked me to be quiet</b> .
The man with the gun said to us, “Don't move!”	The man with the gun <b>warned us not to move</b> .

## LESSON 13

### USE OF ARTICLES WITH PROPER NOUNS

“Proper” nouns are a small subset of nouns in general. They have to begin with a capital letter regardless of where in a sentence they are placed. They are recognizable by their meanings, except in a few special. In addition, some need “*The*” (with a capital) and some do not, the choice depending on the particular type of meaning they have.

#### Articles with personal names

Personal names are used without any article!

*“Do you know Turner?” said Burton as I nodded a greeting.*

**Note.** Some common names (*mother, father, aunt, uncle, nurse, cook, sister, brother, cousin, baby*) are treated as proper nouns and, therefore, take no article when they are used by members of the family or by close friends (i.e. when they mean “our father”, “our nurse”, etc.):

*“Father wants us to move into a smaller place,” Mike said.*

*“What have you done to Baby?” Mother asked.*

Note that these nouns are spelled with a capital letter, which shows that they are regarded as proper nouns.

However, under certain conditions personal names are used with the definite or the indefinite article.

**The definite article with personal names is found in the following cases:**

1. The definite article is used when a personal name has the plural form to indicate a whole family.

*One June evening I went to dine with the Macdmalds.*

*The Granges were the only people I knew in the town.*

2. Personal nouns modified by adjectives take the definite article.

*"I am the celebrated Mortimer Ellis," he said.*

*"The late Mrs. Jones was a very nice person," he said in a low voice.*

It is important to stress that a personal noun with the definite article modified by an adjective is never the rheme of the sentence (it is never the focus of communication). Occasionally a noun modified by an adjective is the rheme of the sentence and conveys the most important part of the communication. then it is used with the indefinite article. The adjective usually denotes the mood of the "person described:

*The dinner was served by a silent Mrs. Keats.*

*I saw an infuriated Jennifer, who started shouting at me the moment I opened the door.*

However, there is no article before personal names modified by the adjectives **old, young, dear, poor, little, tiny, honest:**

*Little Lynette wanted to play with the cat and I left her in the garden.*

*When young Rockwell entered the library, the old man looked at him with a kindly grimness.*

*Old Anthony met us at the station.*

3. The definite article is found with personal nouns modified by limiting attributes (mostly postpositional phrases).

*It was the Jane I had known before, perfectly simple, homely and unaffected.*

*She was not the Mary of our youth.*

**The indefinite article occurs in the following cases:**

1. A personal name is used with the indefinite article to indicate a) a member of a family, b) one resembling somebody:

a) *"The boy is a Benbow!" he replied hotly.*

b) *His face always reminded Michael of a Lincoln grown old.*

2. A personal name has the indefinite article if it is modified by the adjective **"certain"**.

*Last night I found a gentleman waiting to see me when I returned home – a certain George Reed (i. e. someone who called himself George Reed).*

**Note.** If a personal name is preceded by a title (Mr, Miss, Colonel, Sir, etc), the indefinite article before it is equivalent to "certain"

*He was engaged to be married to a Miss Smith.*



“A Mr. Drake phoned in the morning, but he didn’t leave any message,” Lydia said. Sometimes the indefinite article before a personal name without a title may mean “certain”.

“Did a woman see you some time today? A Nelly Conway?” he asked anxiously. Personal names turn into common nouns when they denote things associated with the names of certain persons. Such nouns follow the general rules of the use of articles for common nouns

“Has the museum a Millais?” I asked.

Every morning he drove out in a rickety old Ford.

### Articles with geographic names

The following geographic names are used without any article:

1. Names of continents: Africa, Antarctica, America, Asia, Australia, Europe.

**Note.** The Arctic and the Antarctic are used with the definite article as they denote the regions (the land and the sea) round the north and south poles.

2. Names of counties, provinces, states: France, Italy, Texas, Wisconsin, Devonshire, Scotland.

**Note 1.** Some names of countries, counties, etc. require the definite article. Some other names can be used with or without the definite article: the Argentine (but: Argentina), (the) Congo, (the) Lebanon, (the) Senegal, the Ruhr, the Saar, the Ukraine, the Crimea.

**Note 2.** Names of states consisting of word groups are used with the definite article: the Soviet Union, the United States of America (the USA).

3. Names of cities, towns or villages: London, New York, Stockport, Stratford-on-Avon.

**Note.** The only exception *the Hague*.

4. Names of a) mountains and b) islands (but not names of mountain chains and groups of islands):

a) *Elbrus, Mount Everest, Etna.*

b) *Cyprus, Man, Jersey, Java.*

5. Names of lakes: *Lake Michigan, Lake Baikal, Silver Lake.*

6. Names of waterfalls: *Niagara Falls, Victoria Falls*

7. Names of bays: *Hudson Bay.*

8. Names of peninsulas and capes: *Hindustan, Labrador, Cape Horn Note.*

If the noun peninsula is added, the definite article is used: *the Hindustan peninsula, the Balkan peninsula.*

**Other geographic names take the definite article.** These are:

1. Names of seas, oceans, rivers, straits, canals: *the Atlantic (ocean), the Mediterranean (Sea), the North Sea, the Thames, the Mississippi, the Dardanelles, the Bering Strait, the Suez Canal, the English Channel*

2. Names of mountain chains and groups of islands: a) *the Pennine Range (the Pennines), the Alps, the Rocky Mountains* b) *the Canary Islands (the Canaries), the Hawaii, the Bermudas*

3. Names of deserts: *the Sahara, the Gobi*.

4. Names of mountain passes: *the Saint Gotthard Pass*.

5. Geographic names having the plural form: *the Midlands, the Netherlands, the Yorkshire Forests*. Geographic names that are used with the zero article may take the definite or the indefinite article under the following conditions:

1) if a limiting article is used a geographic name takes the definite article: *It was not the France of his youth*.

2) if a descriptive article is used a geographic name has the indefinite article: *It was a different Paris, unknown to him*.

3) the definite article is used in the following patterns containing the preposition **of**: *the Bay of Biscay, the City of New York, the Mount of Olives, the Isle of Man, the Gulf of Mexico, the Strait of Dover*.

#### **Articles with other semantic groups of proper names.**

Proper names of the following semantic groups take no article:

1. Names of streets, squares, parks: *Broadway, Fleet Street, Wall Street, Piccadilly, Trafalgar Square, Central Park, Hyde Park*.

**Note.** The exceptions are *the Strand (in London), the High Street, the Main Street (in the USA)*.

2. Names of airports and railway stations: *London Airport, Kennedy Airport, Waterloo Station, Victoria Station*

3. Names of universities and colleges: *Oxford University, Harvard University, Brasenose College, Hertford College*.

4. Names of magazines and journals: *National Geographic, Punch, Language*.

5. Names of days of the week and names of months: *Monday, Tuesday, April, July*.

6. Names of buildings, bridges: *Buckingham Palace, Westminster Abbey, Coliseum, St. Paul's Cathedral, Westminster Bridge, Tower Bridge*.

**Note.** Some names of buildings, however, are used with the definite article: *the White House, the Tower, the Old Bailey*.

**Nouns of some semantic groups require the definite article.** They are:

1. Names of hotels, clubs, museums, picture galleries, concert halls, theatres, cinemas, monuments: *The Hilton, the National Tennis Club, the National Gallery, the British Museum, the Louvre, the Carnegie Hall, the Albert Hall, the Old Vic, the Odeon, the Washington Monument, the Lincoln Memorial*.

2. Names of ships and boats: *The Titanic, the Queen Mary*.

3. Names of parties and institutions: *the Conservative Party, the Democratic Party, the London City Council, the House of Commons*

**Note.** Parliament (in Britain) is used without any article (but: the British Parliament). The definite article before congress (in the USA) may be dropped, but it is equally correct to use it.

4. Names of newspapers: *the Morning Star, the Daily World, the Economist, the Times*.

## IMPERSONAL SENTENCES

We can use impersonal pronouns to talk about people in general or for unspecified objects.

### **One, They, You, It**

We can use “**one**” to talk about people in general or for unspecified objects.

*One can't learn a language in six weeks.*

*If one (somebody, you) wishes to make oneself popular, one must work very hard for it.*

*One is knocking at the door* (not general, it is specified)

*Somebody is knocking at the door.*

### **Attention:**

If you begin your sentence with “**one**”, you should continue using “one, one's, oneself...” when referring to the same person.

*If one wants to be happy, one should not be greedy.*

*If one wants to succeed, one should study hard.*

In the sentence below however, we can substitute “he”, “he or she” or “they”.

*If someone wants to succeed, he or she should study hard.*

*If someone wants to succeed, they should study hard.*

Also use “**They**” or “**You**” in the same way

*They speak English in this part of the country.*

*They don't respect teachers in some schools.*

*You really can't find anything in this shop.* (I may be talking to myself)

*One really can't find anything in this shop.*

*If one gets ill, one should see a doctor. (Sb. he / she / they)*

*The newspapers that most men like are the ones with most sports pages.*

**They** is not so general as one or you. It refers to a particular group of people, but not a precise group.

*They are very nice in this city* (not everybody in the world, but everybody who lives here).

*I'm sure they will sell a new model of this phone next year.*

*They are building a new bridge over the river.*

*They are planting flowers in all the city parks.*

*You work to earn money and they take it away with taxes.*

We also use **they** to talk about one or more people when we don't know who they are (= somebody).

*They broke my window yesterday.*

*I went to buy a Keenix camera, but they had bought the last one.*

*Who made this? If I catch them I'll take them to the police.*

**Impersonal Pronoun It**

It is one of the most commonly used impersonal pronouns in English. It can refer to many unspecified subjects depending on the context.

*It is very cold today.*

*It is Saturday today.*

*It is 5 o'clock somewhere.*

*It is always snowy in Lake Tahoe.*

**Infinitive Subject**

*It is impossible to beat them* (to beat them is impossible).

*It is unbelievable!*

**To emphasize**

*It was George who saved your life!*

*It was me who wrote the essay.* (I did it!)

**LESSON 14****COMPLEX OBJECT****Subject + Predicate + Complex Object (Noun / Pronoun + Infinitive or Participle)**

The combination of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and an infinitive/participle used after the predicate forms a **complex object**.

The relation between the noun (pronoun) and the infinitive is that of subject and predicate. Examples:

- I saw the boy raise his hand.
- I heard him call my name.
- I want you to know that it doesn't matter.

The infinitive may be used as a part of a complex object after the following verbs:

- ✓ *to hear, to see, to watch, to feel, to let, to make.* After these verbs the infinitive has **no particle "to"**:

I heard *him describe* his new bedroom suite.

He makes *his children go* to bed early.

I saw *him whitewash* the fence.

- ✓ *to want, to expect, to know, to suppose, to consider, to believe.* After these verbs **the particle "to" is used** before the infinitive:

He wanted *me to help* him choose a new computer.

I consider *Bill to be* Jack of all trades.

I expected *him to paint* the walls green.

Similar to the Infinitive **Participle I** may form **part of a Complex Object** when combined with a noun (pronoun) to which it stands in predicate relation.

Compare:

*I saw **him run** along the street.* (Infinitive Complex Object) – *I saw **him running** along the street.* (Participle Complex Object)

Such complexes occur after verbs denoting physical perceptions – “to see”, “to hear”, “to feel”, “to watch”, “to find”, “to catch”.

– Participle I used as part of a Complex Object emphasizes the idea that **the action is in process**, whereas the Infinitive just names the action.

– Participle II is used as a part of a Complex Object after the verbs *to get*, *to have*, *to want*:

*He wants a new suit made.*

*I had my car repaired.*

*She wants her hair cut short.*

*I must get the house painted.*

*The boy had his tonsils removed.*

**Note.** The pattern ‘to have (to get, to want) something done’ denotes that the action expressed by the Participle II is performed for the person (not by the person!) denoted by the subject of the sentence.

### Use of articles with abstract and material nouns

Uncountable (or ‘mass’) nouns are the names of materials, liquids, abstract qualities, collections and other things which we see as masses without clear boundaries, and not as separate objects. We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns, and most are singular with no plurals.

Abstract nouns fall into two large categories: *count abstract nouns and non-count (mass) abstract nouns*. The line between count and mass nouns is not always easy to draw. Among abstract nouns there are many with dual class membership. They often have considerable difference in meaning: *Beauty is to be admired – She was **a beauty**. They walked **in silence**. He began to speak after **a long silence***. Count abstract nouns (e. g. *answer, belief, doubt, effort, fact, opinion, idea, job, lie, plan, question, visit*) can be used both in the singular and in the plural. The use of article with count abstract nouns is practically the same as with concrete count (class) nouns: *You could have **a very happy life** with her. He always has such **brilliant ideas!***

The use of articles with non-count abstract nouns (e. g. *anger, chemistry, impatience, jealousy, modesty, pride, relief, violence*) is presupposed by the following:

1. When non-count abstract nouns have generic reference they are used without any article. This is the case when a certain quality, state, action as such as meant:

*Experience is the power of wisdom.*

*Knowledge is power.*

*She has attached herself to **youth** and **hope** and **seriousness** and they had failed her more than **age** and **despair**.*

Abstract nouns with generic reference are often used in attributive and adverbial prepositional phrases after *of*, *with*, *in*:

*A slight feeling **of uneasiness** came over him.*

*She was fighting down the rising feeling **of panic**.*

*Four pairs of eyes were on him, black **with suspicion** and **accusation**.*

*He turned round **in annoyance** and then walked away.*

No article is used when the abstract noun is modified by a descriptive attribute:

*His mouth fell open and he stared at her **in startled amazement**.*

*His small clear voice was heavy **with passionate determination**.*

We find no article if the attribute qualifies the noun from the point of view of nationality and geography (*English literature, French poetry, Russian painting, Moscow time*), time (*modern physics, contemporary art, ancient sculpture*), degree and authenticity (*great value, perfect surprise, sheer delight, complete satisfaction, infinitive fatigue, real importance, genuine sorrow*):

*For once he showed **real irritation**.*

*It gives me **great pleasure**.*

*When I heard the news I felt **perfect relief**.*

Note the use of the definite article in combination with the limiting of-phrase: *the English literature of the 19th century, the French poetry of that period*, etc.

2. Non-count abstract nouns can be used with the indefinite article when they are modified by descriptive attributes which bring out a special aspect of a quality, feeling, state, etc. expressed by the noun. This use of the indefinite article may be called aspective:

*She looked several years younger and there was **a new dignity** about her.*

*Then the two women slided at each other with **a curious tenderness**.*

The use of the indefinite article in such cases seems to be optional and depends on the intention of the speaker to lay particular stress on the special aspect (“некий”, “какой-то”) expressed by the attribute modifying the noun.

The indefinite article seems to be obligatory which the abstract noun is modified by the adjective *certain*, *curious*, *peculiar* or by a descriptive attributive clause:

*You have **a curious influence** over me.*

*The girl interrupted him with **a certain impatience** in her voice.*

*He had **a patience** which amazed his friends.*

*His face had **a calmness** that was new to her.*

3. Abstract nouns in specific use take the definite article. Identification is based on the linguistic context or the situation of utterance. The specification can be provided:

a) by a limiting of-phrase:

*I was wrapped in **the security** of childhood.*

*I was torn between **the fear** of hurting a nice woman's feeling and **the fear** of being in the way.*

b) by a restrictive (particularizing) attributive clause:

*I couldn't help showing **the resentment** which flared up within me.*

*His apologetic laugh did not disguise **the pleasure** that he felt.*

c) Identification can result from the whole situation of utterance:

*"And how did you like **the music**?" – she asked.*

*"**The weather** is changing for the best" he said.*

4. Some abstract nouns are never used with the indefinite article: *weather, money, news, work, luck, fun, progress, luggage* and some others:

*It was **raw weather**.*

*What **bad news** we are having!*

*It was **weary, weary work**.*

*That's **hard luck**.*

*We hid his watch for **fun**.*

**Note.** The noun *work* can be used with the indefinite article in the meaning of 'thing made, a book or a piece of literary or musical composition, literary or other product: *Miss Tray says the portrait was the best thing she had ever done. That means it was **a really great work**.*

5. Some syntactic structures affect the use of articles. Such nouns as *pity, pleasure, comfort, relief, shame* and some others generally tend to be non-count, but in certain constructions they are regularly used with the indefinite article:

a) structures with the formal *it* as subject

*It's **a shame** to act like this.*

*It's **a pleasure** to see you.*

b) structures with the exclamatory *what*

*What **a pity**!*

*What **a relief**!*

### Material nouns

Most material nouns do not have plural forms and are never used with the indefinite article. Yet the English language makes it possible to look upon some object from the point of view of both count and material.

There are many nouns with dual class membership which often have considerable difference in meaning in the two classes: *to read an evening paper - to wrap up a present in brown paper, to press clothes with an iron - to use tools made of iron.*

1. When material nouns have generic reference they are used without any article. This is the case with mass nouns referring to the whole class:

*This is **lead**, not **silver**.*

***Blood** is thicker than **water**.*

*It was not built of **brick** or **lofty stone**, but of **wood** and **plaster**.*

*On the travel he drank **tea**, but in the cabin it was **thick coffee** with sugar and **tinned milk**.*

Material nouns take **no article** when they are modified by descriptive attributes:

*He sat there for a long time, drinking cup after cup of strong **black tea**.*

*The men moved heavily as though they were walking in **thick mud**.*

Names of material can change their meaning and become count nouns when:

a) Various sorts of materials and food products are meant:

*They are now giving you **bad teas** at the club.*

*“And now,” announced Vernier, “the king of **wines**”.*

*There never was **a better wine** than Chambertin, and there never was **a better Chambertin** than nineteen-eleven.”*

b) A portion of food or drink is meant:

*If you want to please the boy, buy him **an ice**.*

*“I would rather have **a whisky**.”*

2. In specific use, i. e. when a definite part of the substance is meant, material nouns take the definite article. Identification is based on the *linguistic context* or *situation of utterance*.

*Linguistic context:*

a) Reference backwards: identification is made by something already said (by prior mention):

*She brought him milk to drink, and food: he couldn't touch **the food**, but he drank **the milk** greedily.*

b) Reference forwards: identification is made by something about to be said when names of material are modified by a particularizing attribute:

***The water** in this glass has now turned pink.*

***The wine** on the table was served in pretty glasses.*

*He poured **the fragrant golden wine** that accompanied the lobster.*

*Situation of utterance.*

*Pass me **the salt**, please.*

*Let's start our breakfast. **The coffee** will be cold.*



## LESSON 15

**THE PARTICIPLE**  
**The Forms of the Participle**

	<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>
<b>Indefinite</b>	Writing	being written
<b>Perfect</b>	having written	having been written

**Note.** Those are the forms of Participle I which is formed by adding the suffix *-ing* to the stem of the verb (*to go – going, to read – reading, etc.*).

**Indefinite Participle** denotes an action simultaneous with what expressed by the finite verb.

**Perfect Participle** denotes an action prior to that expressed by the finite verb.

Examples:

*While **tramping** the country he got to know it very well.*

***Being locked** in the Red room Jane Eyre began to cry.*

***Having written** the letter she went out to post it.*

***Having been written** many centuries ago the manuscript is almost illegible.*

**Functions of the Participle in Sentences**

**Participle I** is used in the function of a **predicative**, an **attribute** and an **adverbial modifier**.

1. The effect of his words was **surprising**. (*predicative*)
2. The house **overlooking** the garden was very old. (*attribute*)
3. We all looked at the **laughing** boy. (*attribute*)
4. **Approaching** the station we heard the hooting of the engine. (*adverbial modifier of time*)
5. While (when) **waiting** for him in the park I looked through the newspaper. (*adverbial modifier of cause*)
6. **Having posted** the letter she took a short cut home. (*adverbial modifier of time*)
7. **Being** very tired he went to bed early. (*adverbial modifier of cause*)
8. **Having** a good command in English he could work as an interpreter. (*adverbial modifier of cause*)
9. She went down the stairs **making** two steps at time. (*adverbial modifier of manner*)

**Note 1.** When used in the function of an adverbial modifier of time, Participle I is often preceded by the conjunctions 'when' or 'while'.

**Note 2.** Participle I of the verb 'to be' is always used as an adverbial modifier of cause (not time).

**Note 3.** An attribute expressed by Participle I can only denote simultaneousness as the perfect form of Participle I is not used attributively.

Compare:

*The boy **answering** at the blackboard knew his lesson well.*

*The boy **who answered** at the blackboard yesterday is writing a composition.*

### Participle 1, 2

Participles have some qualities of verbs and are used in the formation of the continuous, perfect and perfect continuous tenses (he is typing. he has written a letter). Participles have some qualities of adjectives and are used as attributes in a sentence (a smiling girl. surprised faces). Participles are also used in the function of adverbial modifiers (he opened the door, smiling. surprised, he didn't know what to say). Participles are also used in the function of adverbial modifiers (he opened the door, smiling. surprised, he didn't know what to say). Participles are often used in participle constructions (participial constructions), which are usually called "participial phrases" in English. Participial constructions can function as attributes (the girl sitting at the table) or as adverbial modifiers (standing by the window, she watched the birds).

### Formation of participles

**Present participle.** The present participle is formed by adding "ing" to the base form of the verb: *flying, playing, running, sleeping, working*. The present participle expresses active meaning.

**Past participle.** Regular verbs form the past participle by adding "ed" to the base form of the verb: *moved, played, stopped, typed*.

Irregular verbs form the past participle mostly by changing the root of the word: *broken, flown, read, slept, sold, taken, written*. The past participle expresses passive meaning: *done, moved, played, read*.

**Formation of tenses.** The main function of participles is their use in the formation of certain tenses. The simple forms of participles (writing, written) are used in the formation of tenses.

The present participle (of the main verb) is used in the formation of the continuous and perfect continuous tenses. Examples: *He is working now. We were sleeping when he called. She will be writing letters at four o'clock.*

Perfect continuous tenses: *He has been working since early morning. She had been sleeping before you called. By six o'clock, she will have been writing letters for two hours.*

The past participle (of the main verb) is used in the formation of the perfect tenses in the active voice and of all of the tenses in the passive voice. Examples: *We have already written three stories. She had typed two reports by ten o'clock yesterday. She will have typed the next report by six o'clock.*

Tenses in the passive: *Three stories have already been written. Five reports were typed last week. Two reports had been typed by ten o'clock yesterday. This report will be typed tomorrow.*

Participles are used in the formation of certain tenses as well as in the function of adjectives. The difference between these functions of participles is clear and does not lead to mistakes in understanding. But in some cases, especially in those cases where a participle stands after the verb BE, it may be difficult to understand the difference. Compare these sentences:

*This situation is humiliating.* (the participle “humiliating” as an adjective)

*Stop it! You are humiliating him.* (“are humiliating” – the present continuous tense)

*Two chairs are broken.* (the participle “broken” as an adjective)

*Two chairs were broken by some customers yesterday.* (“were broken” – the simple past in the passive).

In the function of attributes, present participles express active meaning, and past participles express passive meaning.

*His attitude is annoying. – She looks annoyed.*

*It was surprising that he went there. – I was surprised that he went there.*

*It was a boring party. – Everyone was bored.*

### **Correlative conjunctions: neither...nor, either...or, both...and. All.**

Correlative conjunctions are pairs such as *neither . . . nor, either . . . or, both . . . and*. These conjunctions connect two balanced clauses, phrases, or words.

The two elements that correlative conjunctions connect are usually similar in length and grammatical structure.

If we only talk about two people or things, we use *both*. Both = this AND that.

*Either* is used when you are making a comparison between two ideas, and only one of the ideas will come to pass. Either = this OR that.

*Neither* indicates that the two ideas are linked together. It's kind of like a negative conjunction. But if you use *neither*, then make sure your sentence does not have any other negatives preceding it. If you prefer to use a negative, then you want to use *either*. Neither = NOT this and NOT that.

Here are a few example sentences containing correlative conjunctions:

- **either . . . or**

*We can go to **either** Greece **or** Spain for our holiday.*

*It's my final offer – you can **either** take it **or** leave it.*

- **both . . . and**

***Both** rugby **and** football are popular in France.*

***Both** English **and** Welsh are spoken in Wales.*

- **neither . . . nor**

***Neither** Norway **nor** Switzerland is in the European Union.*

*Marriage is **neither** heaven **nor** hell, it is simply purgatory.*

The distributive determiner *all* is used to talk about a whole group, with a special emphasis on the fact that nothing has been left out. *All* can be used as a distributive in several different patterns.

*All* can be used with uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns preceded by *the* or a possessive pronoun. In this case, the meaning is shifted towards referring to a concrete, physical group rather than the group as a concept. In these uses, the word *of* can be added just after *all* with no change in meaning:

- **All the people** in the room were silent.
- **All of the birds** flew away.

*All* can be used with plural pronouns preceded by *of*:

- All of us are going.
- He scolded all of you.

*All* can be used in questions and exclamations with uncountable nouns preceded by *this* or *that*. In these uses, the word *of* can be added just after *all* with no change in meaning:

- Who has left **all this paper** on my desk?
- Look at **all this snow**!
- Why is **all of that sugar** on the floor?
- Where did **all of this confetti** come from?

*All* can be used in questions and exclamations with countable nouns preceded by *these* or *those*. In these uses, the word *of* can be added just after *all* with no change in meaning:

- Look at **all those balloons**!
- Where did **all of those books** come from?
- Why are **all these children** crying?

## LESSON 16

### THE GERUND

We add – *ing* to the base form of the verb to create gerunds: e. g. *Now I enjoy reading more than anything else*. Gerunds have the same form as the present participles of verbs, but they are used as nouns: e. g. *Reading is the key to knowledge*.

A gerund is the – *ing* form of a verb used as a noun. A gerund used in the same ways as nouns, i.e. as a subject or as an object: e. g. *I like swimming* (the act of swimming).

Study these examples:

- “*Playing tennis is fun*” – where **playing** is a gerund. It is used as a subject of the sentence. **Playing tennis** is a gerund phrase.

- “*We enjoy playing tennis*” – where **playing** is a gerund used as the object of the verb *enjoy*.
- “*He is excited about playing tennis*” – where **plying** is a gerund used as the object of the preposition *about*.

We can use gerunds (verb + *-ing*) and negative gerunds (not + verb + *-ing*) after verbs and prepositions. We can also use gerunds as subjects: e. g. *I don't mind waiting. Paul enjoys not having a job. She watches TV instead of working. Studying makes me sleepy. My doctor says that swimming is the best exercise.* Gerunds are also called “*-ing forms*”. They are often used after NO in signs: e. g. *No Parking*.

We can use gerunds in clauses with objects, prepositional phrases and adverbs. Before gerunds, we can use nouns (*Tom*) or object pronouns (*them*), but possessive nouns and determiners (*Tom's, their*) can also be used, typically in formal situations: e. g. *He denied taking money. They recommend washing silk shirts gently in cold water. I can't recall Tom/Tom's visiting us. We listened to them/their arguing all night.*

After ***begin, continue, start***, we can usually use either infinitives or gerunds with little difference in meaning: e. g. *Josh started to drink / drinking the soup, but it was very spicy, He began to cough / coughing.* But with stop the difference in meaning is significant. Compare:

*He stopped laughing and looked at her seriously* – Він перестав сміятися і подивився на неї серйозним поглядом.

*While jogging she often stops to drink some water.* – Під час бігу вона часто зупиняється, щоб випити води.

Gerunds are used as the objects of certain verbs: e. g. *I enjoy playing tennis.* **Enjoy** is followed by a gerund (*playing*). **Enjoy** is not followed by an infinitive (NOT ~~*I enjoy to play tennis*~~). Common verbs that are followed by gerunds are ***enjoy, mind (запевчувати, бути прому), give up, avoid, hate, like, suggest, admit, regret, deny***: e. g. *Avoid eating cakes and sweets. We enjoy travelling by train. Do you mind waiting outside? Have you given up exercising already? I don't mind waiting for you. Do you mind my smoking here?*

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Бармина Л. А. Практикум по английскому языку: артикли : учебное пособие для вузов / Л. А. Бармина, И. П. Верховская. – 2-е изд., испр. – М. : Астрель АСТ, 2004. – 190 с.
2. Байбекова Л. О. A practical course in modal verbs : навчальний посібник з модальних дієслів для студентів факультету іноземних мов / Л. О. Байбекова, О. І. Гридасова, М. В. Рябих, Л. М. Рябих. – Х. : ХНУ імені В. Н. Каразіна, 2016. – 79 с.
3. About the weather [Electronic Resource]. – Way of access : <http://www.wikipage.com.ua/1x1769.html>.
4. Bank Holidays [Electronic Resource]. – Way of access : [http://www.officeholidays.com/countries/global/bank\\_holidays.php](http://www.officeholidays.com/countries/global/bank_holidays.php).
5. Basic Grammar in Use. R. Murphy, W. Smalzer. – Cambridge, 2011. – 3rd edition. – 312 p.
6. Books [Electronic Resource]. – Way of access : <http://lenglish.com/texts/text-138.html>.
7. Cambridge Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs. – Cambridge : University Press, 1997. – 381 с.
8. Education in Great Britain [Electronic Resource]. – Way of access : <http://lingualeo.com/ru/jungle/education-in-great-britain>.
9. English cookery and meals // English topics: Найкращі 1000 усних тем з паралельним перекладом для учнів 5–11 класів та абітурієнтів. Ч.1 / укл. О. П. Фіщенко, Г. В. Ярцева та ін. – Х. : Веста, 2010. – 640 с.
10. Essential Grammar in Use / R. Murphy // A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English. With Answers. – Cambridge University Press : Fourth Edition, 2015. – 319 p.
11. Holidays in the UK [Electronic Resource]. – Way of access : [http://licey.net/free/5-angliiskii\\_yazyk/14-](http://licey.net/free/5-angliiskii_yazyk/14-).
12. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English. – Harlow : Longman, 2003. – 1949 p.
13. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English. – 5th edition. – Pearson Longman, 2009. – 2082 pp.
14. Merriam Webster's Collegiate Dictionary. – Springfield : Merriam-Webster, Incorporated, 1993. – 1557 p.
15. Oxford Guide to English Grammar. John Eastwood Oxford University Press, 2002. – 453 p.
16. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary. – Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005. – 1715 p.

17. Practical English Usage / M. Swan. – 3rd ed. – Oxford University Press, 2005. – 688 p.
18. Sports // Microsoft Encarta Encyclopedia [Електронний ресурс]. – 700 MB. – 1993-2008 Microsoft Corporation. – 1 електрон. опт. диск (CD-ROM); 12 см. – Систем. вимоги: Pentium; 32 MBRAM; Windows 98/2000/NT/XP. – Назва з контейнера.
19. United Kingdom Travel Information [Electronic Resource]. – Way of access : <https://united-kingdom.travisa.com/CountryPage.aspx?CountryID=GB>.
20. Webster's New Dictionary of synonym. – Springfield : Merriam-Webster, Incorporated, 1984. – 940 p.

Навчальне видання

**Рябих** Микола Володимирович  
**Дудоладова** Альона Василівна  
**Гридасова** Олена Ігорівна

## **АНГЛІЙСЬКА МОВА**

Підручник для студентів  
першого та другого курсів факультетів іноземних мов

Коректор *Ю. В. Леонтієва*  
Комп'ютерне верстання *В. В. Савінкова*  
Макет обкладинки *І. М. Дончик*

Формат 60x84/16. Ум. друк. арк. 18,99. Тираж 150 пр. Зам. № 9/16.

Видавець і виготовлювач  
Харківський національний університет імені В. Н. Каразіна,  
61022, м. Харків, майдан Свободи, 4.  
Свідоцтво суб'єкта видавничої справи ДК № 3367 від 13.01.2009

Видавництво ХНУ імені В. Н. Каразіна  
Тел.. 705-24-32